

# Securing Web Transactions

## TLS Server Certificate Management

---

Volume D:  
How-To Guides

**Murugiah Souppaya**  
NIST

**Mehwish Akram**  
**Brandon Everhart**  
**Brian Johnson**  
**Brett Pleasant**  
**Susan Symington**  
The MITRE Corporation

**William C. Barker**  
Dakota Consulting

**Paul Turner**  
Venafi

**Clint Wilson**  
DigiCert

**Dung Lam**  
F5

**Alexandros Kapsouris**  
Symantec

**Rob Clatterbuck**  
**Jane Gilbert**  
SafeNet Assured Technologies

July 2019

DRAFT

This publication is available free of charge from:  
<https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/projects/building-blocks/tls-server-certificate-management>

## DISCLAIMER

Certain commercial entities, equipment, products, or materials may be identified by name or company logo or other insignia in order to acknowledge their participation in this collaboration or to describe an experimental procedure or concept adequately. Such identification is not intended to imply special status or relationship with NIST or recommendation or endorsement by NIST or NCCoE; neither is it intended to imply that the entities, equipment, products, or materials are necessarily the best available for the purpose.

National Institute of Standards and Technology Special Publication 1800-16D Natl. Inst. Stand. Technol. Spec. Publ. 1800-16D, 217 pages, (July 2019), CODEN: NSPUE2

## FEEDBACK

You can improve this guide by contributing feedback. As you review and adopt this solution for your own organization, we ask you and your colleagues to share your experience and advice with us.

Comments on this publication may be submitted to: [tls-cert-mgmt-nccoe@nist.gov](mailto:tls-cert-mgmt-nccoe@nist.gov).

Public comment period: July 17, 2019 through September 13, 2019

All comments are subject to release under the Freedom of Information Act.

National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence  
National Institute of Standards and Technology  
100 Bureau Drive  
Mailstop 2002  
Gaithersburg, MD 20899  
Email: [nccoe@nist.gov](mailto:nccoe@nist.gov)

## 1 **NATIONAL CYBERSECURITY CENTER OF EXCELLENCE**

2 The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE), a part of the National Institute of Standards  
3 and Technology (NIST), is a collaborative hub where industry organizations, government agencies, and  
4 academic institutions work together to address businesses' most pressing cybersecurity issues. This  
5 public-private partnership enables the creation of practical cybersecurity solutions for specific  
6 industries, as well as for broad, cross-sector technology challenges. Through consortia under  
7 Cooperative Research and Development Agreements (CRADAs), including technology partners—from  
8 Fortune 50 market leaders to smaller companies specializing in information technology security—the  
9 NCCoE applies standards and best practices to develop modular, easily adaptable example cybersecurity  
10 solutions using commercially available technology. The NCCoE documents these example solutions in  
11 the NIST Special Publication 1800 series, which maps capabilities to the NIST Cybersecurity Framework  
12 and details the steps needed for another entity to re-create the example solution. The NCCoE was  
13 established in 2012 by NIST in partnership with the State of Maryland and Montgomery County,  
14 Maryland.

15 To learn more about the NCCoE, visit <https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/>. To learn more about NIST, visit  
16 <https://www.nist.gov>.

## 17 **NIST CYBERSECURITY PRACTICE GUIDES**

18 NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guides (Special Publication 1800 series) target specific cybersecurity  
19 challenges in the public and private sectors. They are practical, user-friendly guides that facilitate the  
20 adoption of standards-based approaches to cybersecurity. They show members of the information  
21 security community how to implement example solutions that help them align more easily with relevant  
22 standards and best practices, and provide users with the materials lists, configuration files, and other  
23 information they need to implement a similar approach.

24 The documents in this series describe example implementations of cybersecurity practices that  
25 businesses and other organizations may voluntarily adopt. These documents do not describe regulations  
26 or mandatory practices, nor do they carry statutory authority.

## 27 **ABSTRACT**

28 Transport Layer Security (TLS) server certificates are critical to the security of both internet-facing and  
29 private web services. A large- or medium-scale enterprise may have thousands or even tens of  
30 thousands of such certificates, each identifying a specific server in its environment. Despite the critical  
31 importance of these certificates, many organizations lack a formal TLS certificate management program,  
32 and the ability to centrally monitor and manage their certificates. Instead, certificate management tends  
33 to be spread across each of the different groups responsible for the various servers and systems in an  
34 organization. Central security teams struggle to ensure certificates are being properly managed by each  
35 of these disparate groups. Where there is no central certificate management service, the organization is

36 at risk, because once certificates are deployed, current inventories must be maintained to support  
37 regular monitoring and certificate maintenance. Organizations that do not properly manage their  
38 certificates face significant risks to their core operations, including:

- 39     ▪ application outages caused by expired TLS server certificates
- 40     ▪ hidden intrusion, exfiltration, disclosure of sensitive data, or other attacks resulting from  
41 encrypted threats or server impersonation
- 42     ▪ disaster-recovery risk that requires rapid replacement of large numbers of certificates and  
43 private keys in response to either certificate authority compromise or discovery of  
44 vulnerabilities in cryptographic algorithms or libraries

45 Despite the mission-critical nature of TLS server certificates, many organizations have not defined the  
46 clear policies, processes, roles, and responsibilities needed for effective certificate management.  
47 Moreover, many organizations do not leverage available automation tools to support effective  
48 management of the ever-growing numbers of certificates. The consequence is continuing susceptibility  
49 to security incidents.

50 This NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide shows large and medium enterprises how to employ a formal TLS  
51 certificate management program to address certificate-based risks and challenges. It describes the TLS  
52 certificate management challenges faced by organizations; provides recommended best practices for  
53 large-scale TLS server certificate management; describes an automated proof-of-concept  
54 implementation that demonstrates how to prevent, detect, and recover from certificate-related  
55 incidents; and provides a mapping of the demonstrated capabilities to the recommended best practices  
56 and to NIST security guidelines and frameworks.

57 The solutions and architectures presented in this practice guide are built upon standards-based,  
58 commercially available, and open-source products. These solutions can be used by any organization  
59 managing TLS server certificates. Interoperable solutions are provided that are available from different  
60 types of sources (e.g., both commercial and open-source products).

## 61 **KEYWORDS**

62 *Authentication; certificate; cryptography; identity; key; key management; PKI; private key; public key;*  
63 *public key infrastructure; server; signature; TLS; Transport Layer Security*

## 64 **DOCUMENT CONVENTIONS**

65 The terms “shall” and “shall not” indicate requirements to be followed strictly in order to conform to the  
66 publication and from which no deviation is permitted.

67 The terms “should” and “should not” indicate that among several possibilities, one is recommended as  
68 particularly suitable, without mentioning or excluding others, or that a certain course of action is

69 preferred but not necessarily required, or that (in the negative form) a certain possibility or course of  
70 action is discouraged but not prohibited.

71 The terms “may” and “need not” indicate a course of action permissible within the limits of the  
72 publication.

73 The terms “can” and “cannot” indicate a possibility and capability, whether material, physical, or causal.

## 74 **CALL FOR PATENT CLAIMS**

75 This public review includes a call for information on essential patent claims (claims whose use would be  
76 required for compliance with the guidance or requirements in this Information Technology Laboratory  
77 [ITL] draft publication). Such guidance and/or requirements may be directly stated in this ITL Publication  
78 or by reference to another publication. This call also includes disclosure, where known, of the existence  
79 of pending U.S. or foreign patent applications relating to this ITL draft publication and of any relevant  
80 unexpired U.S. or foreign patents.

81 ITL may require from the patent holder, or a party authorized to make assurances on its behalf, in  
82 written or electronic form, either:

83 a) assurance in the form of a general disclaimer to the effect that such party does not hold and  
84 does not currently intend holding any essential patent claim(s); or

85 b) assurance that a license to such essential patent claim(s) will be made available to applicants  
86 desiring to utilize the license for the purpose of complying with the guidance or requirements in  
87 this ITL draft publication either:

88 i) under reasonable terms and conditions that are demonstrably free of any unfair  
89 discrimination; or

90 ii) without compensation and under reasonable terms and conditions that are  
91 demonstrably free of any unfair discrimination.

92 Such assurance shall indicate that the patent holder (or third party authorized to make assurances on its  
93 behalf) will include in any documents transferring ownership of patents subject to the assurance,  
94 provisions sufficient to ensure that the commitments in the assurance are binding on the transferee,  
95 and that the transferee will similarly include appropriate provisions in the event of future transfers with  
96 the goal of binding each successor-in-interest.

97 The assurance shall also indicate that it is intended to be binding on successors-in-interest regardless of  
98 whether such provisions are included in the relevant transfer documents.

99 Such statements should be addressed to [tls-cert-mgmt-nccoe@nist.gov](mailto:tls-cert-mgmt-nccoe@nist.gov).

100 **ACKNOWLEDGMENTS**

We are grateful to the following individuals for their generous contributions of expertise and time.

Name	Organization
Dean Coclin	DigiCert
Tim Hollebeek	DigiCert
Robert Smith	F5
Nancy Correll	The MITRE Corporation
Mary Raguso	The MITRE Corporation
Aaron Aubrecht	Venafi
Justin Hansen	Venafi

101 The Technology Partners/Collaborators who participated in this build submitted their capabilities in  
 102 response to a notice in the Federal Register. Respondents with relevant capabilities or product  
 103 components were invited to sign a Cooperative Research and Development Agreement (CRADA) with  
 104 NIST, allowing them to participate in a consortium to build this example solution. We worked with:

Technology Partner/Collaborator	Build Involvement
DigiCert	External Certificate Authority and CertCentral console
F5	BIG-IP Local Traffic Manager load balancer
SafeNet Assured Technologies	Luna SA 1700 Hardware Security Module
Symantec	SSL Visibility Appliance for TLS interception and inspection

Technology Partner/Collaborator	Build Involvement
Venafi	Trust Protection Platform (TLS certificate manager, log server, and scanning tool)

106 **Contents**

107 **1 Introduction ..... 1**

108 1.1 Practice Guide Structure ..... 1

109 1.2 Build Overview ..... 3

110 1.2.1 Usage Scenarios ..... 3

111 1.2.2 Logical Architecture ..... 5

112 1.3 Build Architecture Summary ..... 8

113 1.4 Typographic Conventions ..... 11

114 1.5 Supporting Infrastructure ..... 11

115 1.5.1 Lab Backbone ..... 12

116 1.5.2 Supporting Infrastructure Operating Systems ..... 13

117 1.5.3 Supporting Infrastructure Component Services ..... 17

118 1.5.4 Database Services ..... 27

119 1.5.5 TLS Web Services ..... 29

120 1.5.6 DevOps Services ..... 39

121 **2 Product Installation and Configuration Guides ..... 40**

122 2.1 Product Installation Sequence (Example Build) ..... 41

123 2.2 SafeNet AT Luna SA 1700 Hardware Security Module ..... 42

124 2.2.1 Day 0: Product Installation and Standard Configuration ..... 42

125 2.2.2 Day 1: Product Integration Configuration ..... 54

126 2.2.3 Day N: Ongoing Security Management and Maintenance ..... 88

127 2.3 DigiCert Certificate Authority ..... 90

128 2.3.1 Day 0: Installation and Standard Configuration ..... 90

129 2.3.2 Day 1: Integration Configuration ..... 96

130 2.3.3 Day N: Ongoing Security Management and Maintenance ..... 100

131 2.4 F5 BIG-IP Local Traffic Manager (LTM) ..... 106

132 2.4.1 Day 0: Installation and Standard Configuration ..... 106

133 2.4.2 Day 1: Product Integration Configuration ..... 118

134 2.4.3 Day N: Ongoing Security Management and Maintenance ..... 122

135	2.5	Symantec SSL Visibility Appliance .....	131
136	2.5.1	Day-0: Install and Standard Configuration.....	131
137	2.5.2	Day 1: Product Integration Configuration.....	141
138	2.5.3	Day N: Ongoing Security Management and Maintenance .....	149
139	2.6	Venafi Trust Protection Platform (TPP).....	150
140	2.6.1	Prerequisites .....	150
141	2.6.2	Installation .....	150
142	2.6.3	CA Integration .....	158
143	2.6.4	Folder Creation .....	159
144	2.6.5	Custom Fields.....	160
145	2.6.6	Assigning Certificate Owners .....	161
146	2.6.7	Setting Policies.....	162
147	2.6.8	Domain Whitelisting .....	164
148	2.6.9	Workflow – RA Reviews.....	165
149	2.6.10	CA Import.....	166
150	2.6.11	Network Discovery.....	168
151	2.6.12	Identify Certificate Risks/Vulnerabilities.....	168
152	2.6.13	Automate Management .....	169
153	2.6.14	Continuous Monitoring.....	187
154		<b>Appendix A Passive Inspection .....</b>	<b>192</b>
155		<b>Appendix B Hardening Guidance.....</b>	<b>194</b>
156		<b>Appendix C Venafi Underlying Concepts .....</b>	<b>196</b>
157	C.1	Venafi TPP Object Model .....	198
158	C.2	Certificate Metadata in Venafi TPP .....	199
159	C.3	Custom Fields .....	201
160	C.3.1	Organizing Certificate Inventory.....	201
161	C.3.2	Policy Enforcement .....	202
162	C.4	Domain Whitelisting.....	202
163	C.4.1	Certificate Owner Assignment .....	202
164	C.4.2	Permissions .....	202

165	C.4.3	Contacts .....	203
166	<b>Appendix D</b>	<b>List of Acronyms .....</b>	<b>204</b>
167	<b>Appendix E</b>	<b>Glossary .....</b>	<b>208</b>
168	<b>Appendix F</b>	<b>References .....</b>	<b>216</b>
169	<b>Appendix G</b>	<b>Supplemental Architecture Configurations.....</b>	<b>217</b>
170	G.1	Mail Server Configuration Files .....	217

## 171 **List of Figures**

172	<b>Figure 1-1</b>	<b>TLS Server Certificate Management Example Implementation: Logical Architecture.....</b>	<b>6</b>
173	<b>Figure 1-2</b>	<b>TLS Server Certificate Management Example Implementation: Laboratory Configuration ....</b>	<b>9</b>
174	<b>Figure 1-3</b>	<b>TLS Lab Logging Infrastructure .....</b>	<b>38</b>
175	<b>Figure 2-1</b>	<b>Overview of Dependencies Among Components Deployed for the Example Build .....</b>	<b>41</b>
176	<b>Figure 2-2</b>	<b>Venafi Dashboard Expiration Widget showing the Certificate Expiration Profile.....</b>	<b>169</b>

## 177 **List of Tables**

178	<b>Table 1-1</b>	<b>Naming and Addressing Information for all Microsoft Windows Servers .....</b>	<b>14</b>
179	<b>Table 1-2</b>	<b>Naming and Addressing Information for all Microsoft Windows 10 Workstations .....</b>	<b>15</b>
180	<b>Table 1-3</b>	<b>Naming and Addressing Information for All Fedora-Based Systems .....</b>	<b>16</b>
181	<b>Table 1-4</b>	<b>Naming and Addressing Information for All CentOS Servers .....</b>	<b>17</b>

## 182 1 Introduction

183 Organizations that improperly manage their Transport Layer Security (TLS) server certificates risk system  
184 outages and security breaches, which can result in revenue loss, harm to reputation, and exposure of  
185 confidential data to attackers. TLS is the most widely used protocol for securing web transactions and  
186 other communications on internal networks and the internet. TLS certificates are central to the  
187 operation and security of internet-facing and private web services. Some organizations have tens of  
188 thousands of TLS certificates and keys requiring ongoing maintenance and management.

189 The National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (NCCoE) at the National Institute of Standards and  
190 Technology (NIST) built a laboratory environment to demonstrate how large and medium enterprises  
191 can better manage TLS server certificates in the following ways:

- 192     ▪ defining operational and security policies and identifying roles and responsibilities
- 193     ▪ establishing comprehensive certificate inventories and ownership tracking
- 194     ▪ conducting continuous monitoring of the certificate operation and security status
- 195     ▪ automating certificate management to minimize human error and maximize efficiency on a large  
196     scale
- 197     ▪ enabling rapid migration to new certificates and keys as needed in response to certificate  
198     authority (CA) compromise or discovery of vulnerabilities in cryptographic algorithms or libraries

199 The following volumes of this guide show information technology (IT) professionals and security  
200 engineers how we implemented this example solution. We cover all the products employed in this  
201 reference design. We do not re-create the product manufacturers' documentation, which is presumed  
202 to be widely available. Rather, these volumes show how we incorporated the products together in our  
203 environment.

204 *Note: These are not comprehensive tutorials. There are many possible service and security configurations*  
205 *for these products that are out of scope for this reference design.*

### 206 1.1 Practice Guide Structure

207 This National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) Cybersecurity Practice Guide demonstrates a  
208 standards-based reference design and provides users with the information they need to replicate  
209 automated management of TLS server certificates. This reference design is modular and can be  
210 deployed in whole or in part.

211 This guide contains four volumes:

- 212     ▪ NIST SP 1800-16A: *Executive Summary*
- 213     ▪ NIST SP 1800-16B: *Security Risks and Recommended Best Practices*
- 214     ▪ NIST SP 1800-16C: *Approach, Architecture, and Security Characteristics*—what we built and why

215       ▪ NIST SP 1800-16D: *How-To Guides*—instructions for building the example solution (**you are**  
216       **here**)

217 Depending on your role in your organization, you might use this guide in different ways:

218 **Business decision makers, including chief security and technology officers**, will be interested in the  
219 *Executive Summary*, NIST SP 1800-16A, which describes the following topics:

- 220       ▪ recommendations for TLS server certificate management
- 221       ▪ challenges that enterprises face in proper deployment, management, and use of TLS
- 222       ▪ example solution built at the NCCoE

223 You might share the *Executive Summary*, NIST SP 1800-16A, with your leadership team members to help  
224 them understand the importance of adopting standards-based TLS server certificate management.

225 **Senior information technology and security officers** will be informed by NIST SP 1800-16B, which  
226 describes the:

- 227       ▪ TLS server certificate infrastructure and management processes
- 228       ▪ risks associated with mismanagement of certificates
- 229       ▪ organizational challenges associated with server certificate management
- 230       ▪ recommended best practices for server certificate management
- 231       ▪ recommendations for implementing a successful certificate management program
- 232       ▪ mapping of best practices for TLS server certificate management to the NIST Framework for  
233       Improving Critical Infrastructure Cybersecurity (Cybersecurity Framework)
- 234       ▪ application of specific controls defined within NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-53 to the TLS  
235       server certificate management recommended best practices

236 **Technology or security program managers** who are concerned with how to identify, understand, assess,  
237 and mitigate risk will be interested in NIST SP 1800-16C, which describes what we did and why. The  
238 following sections will be of particular interest:

- 239       ▪ Section 3.4.1, Threats, Vulnerabilities and Risks, provides a description of the risk analysis we  
240       performed.
- 241       ▪ Section 3.4.2, Security Categorization and SP 800-53 Controls, lists the security controls assigned  
242       to address TLS server certificate risks.
- 243       ▪ Section 3.4.3, Security Control Map, maps the security characteristics of this example solution to  
244       cybersecurity standards and best practices.

245 **IT professionals** who want to implement such an approach will find this whole practice guide useful. You  
246 can use this How-To portion of the guide, NIST SP 1800-16D, to replicate all or parts of the build created  
247 in our lab. This How-To portion of the guide provides specific product installation, configuration, and

248 integration instructions for implementing the example solution. We do not re-create the product  
249 manufacturers' documentation, which is generally widely available. Rather, we show how we  
250 incorporated the products together in our environment to create an example solution.

251 This guide assumes that IT professionals have experience implementing security products within the  
252 enterprise. While we have used a suite of commercial and open source products to address this  
253 challenge, this guide does not endorse these particular products. Your organization can adopt this  
254 solution or one that adheres to these guidelines in whole, or you can use this guide as a starting point  
255 for tailoring and implementing parts of providing automation support for TLS server certificate  
256 management. Your organization's security experts should identify the products that will best integrate  
257 with your existing tools and IT system infrastructure. We hope that you will seek products that are  
258 congruent with applicable standards and best practices. Section 1.4.2, Technologies, lists the products  
259 that we used and maps them to the cybersecurity controls provided by this reference solution.

260 A NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide does not describe "the" solution, but a possible solution. This is a  
261 draft guide. We seek feedback on its contents and welcome your input. Comments, suggestions, and  
262 success stories will improve subsequent versions of this guide. Please contribute your thoughts to [tls-](mailto:tls-cert-mgmt-nccoe@nist.gov)  
263 [cert-mgmt-nccoe@nist.gov](mailto:tls-cert-mgmt-nccoe@nist.gov).

## 264 1.2 Build Overview

265 This NIST Cybersecurity Practice Guide addresses the use of commercially available technologies to  
266 develop an example implementation for managing TLS server certificates. This project focuses on  
267 certificate management in medium and large enterprises that rely on TLS to secure customer-facing and  
268 internal applications. The example implementation developed in this project demonstrates how to  
269 manage TLS server certificates to reduce outages, improve security, and enable disaster recovery  
270 activities. It shows how to establish, assign, change, and track an inventory of TLS certificates; automate  
271 management of TLS certificates; perform continuous monitoring of TLS certificates; perform large-scale  
272 replacement of certificates that are not trusted; log all certificate and private-key management  
273 operations; manage certificates and keys on proxy servers, load balancers, and inspection appliances;  
274 and use a Hardware Security Module (HSM). The HSM can securely generate, store, manage, and use  
275 private keys corresponding to TLS server certificates, the signing keys of internal certificate authorities  
276 (CAs), and symmetric keys that must be kept secret.

### 277 1.2.1 Usage Scenarios

278 The example implementation fulfills the following use cases:

- 279     ▪ building and maintaining inventory of the enterprise's deployed TLS server certificates
- 280     ▪ automating management of those certificates, including use of an external CA and protection of  
281 private keys and other secrets by using an HSM

- 282       ▪ continuously monitoring the certificates for validity
- 283       ▪ supporting disaster recovery by quickly replacing a large number of certificates
- 284       ▪ logging all certificate and private-key management operations
- 285       ▪ for those enterprises with a policy to perform passive inspection, copying private keys from
- 286       several different TLS servers to the TLS inspection appliance

#### 287   1.2.1.1 Building the Inventory

288   The example implementation demonstrates the ability to establish and maintain a systematized  
289   inventory of certificates (and keys) in use on the network. It enables a user to discover certificates not  
290   currently being managed by the inventory, efficiently enroll and provision new certificates (and keys),  
291   store relevant information with those certificates, and discover the absence of an expected certificate  
292   from a machine where it should be installed. It also enables certificates to be revoked and to change the  
293   owner associated with a certificate, as needed.

#### 294   1.2.1.2 Automation

295   The example implementation demonstrates the ability to automatically enroll and provision a new  
296   certificate and can replace a certificate approaching expiration. Automated certificate management is  
297   demonstrated on various enterprise systems, including load balancers acting as TLS proxies that use  
298   remote agentless management, web servers with remote agentless management, web servers using the  
299   Automatic Certificate Management Environment (ACME) protocol, and servers that are deployed via  
300   development operations (DevOps) technologies by using a certificate management plug-in to the  
301   DevOps framework. In conjunction with the demonstration of ACME, HSM is used to securely generate,  
302   store, manage, and process the cryptographic key pairs for one TLS server. Remote agentless  
303   management was used to automate management of the certificates and keys for this system.

#### 304   1.2.1.3 Continuous Monitoring

305   The example implementation demonstrates the ability to continuously monitor TLS certificates (and  
306   keys) managed by the inventory system and can act upon the status of any certificate (e.g., report the  
307   status of or replace a certificate that has expired, is about to expire, or does not conform to policy). It  
308   can send periodic expiration reports to certificate owners to show which of their certificates are nearing  
309   expiration, and a variety of notifications and escalating alerts if a certificate's expiration date  
310   approaches. Continuous monitoring also includes periodic network scans to ensure any unaccounted-for  
311   certificates are discovered and added to the inventory.

#### 312   1.2.1.4 Disaster Recovery

313   The example implementation demonstrates how to quickly replace large numbers of certificates that are  
314   located across multiple networks and that are on a variety of server types, because the certificates are  
315   no longer trusted. It can replace certificates that:

- 316       ▪ were issued by a given CA (which would require replacement if the issuing-CA were either  
317       compromised or untrusted)
- 318       ▪ have associated keys dependent on a specific cryptographic algorithm (which would need  
319       replacement, e.g., if the algorithm they depend on is no longer considered secure)
- 320       ▪ have associated keys generated by a specific cryptographic library after a specific date (which  
321       would need replacement, e.g., if a bug invaded a library on that date)

322 The example implementation can also track and report on replacement of large numbers of certificates,  
323 so the progress of the large-scale certificate replacement effort can be monitored.

### 324 1.2.1.5 Logging

325 The example implementation demonstrates how to log all certificate and private-key management  
326 operations, including certificate creation, installation and revocation key pair generation, certificate  
327 requests and request approvals, certificate and key copying, and certificate and key replacement.

### 328 1.2.1.6 Passive Inspection

329 The example implementation demonstrates how to perform passive inspection of encrypted TLS  
330 connections. The decision to perform this inspection is complex, because it involves important trade-offs  
331 between traffic security and traffic visibility that each organization should weigh for itself. Some  
332 organizations have determined that the security risks posed by inspection of internal TLS traffic are not  
333 worth the potential benefits of visibility into the encrypted traffic. Other organizations have concluded  
334 that the visibility into their internal traffic provided by TLS inspection is worth the trade-off of the  
335 weaker encryption and other risks that come with such inspection. For these organizations, TLS  
336 inspection may be considered standard practice and may represent a critical component of their threat  
337 detection and service assurance strategies.

338 Organizations that perform TLS traffic inspections can use the example implementation to securely copy  
339 private keys from several different TLS servers to the TLS inspection appliance, securely replace expiring  
340 keys on servers, and immediately copy those keys to the inspection appliance before expiration—  
341 manually and via standardized automated certificate installation. See Appendix A for more detail on  
342 passive inspection, including a scenario.

## 343 1.2.2 Logical Architecture

344 Figure 1-1 depicts the example implementation’s logical architecture, which provides a network  
345 structure and components that enable various types of TLS server certificate management operations to  
346 function. Figure 1-1 illustrates the logical architecture of the TLS server certificate management example  
347 implementation—consisting of an external and an internal portion. The external portion contains an  
348 external CA that is used to issue TLS certificates for some TLS servers in the example implementation.  
349 The internal portion of the network is logically organized into three zones that roughly model a defense-

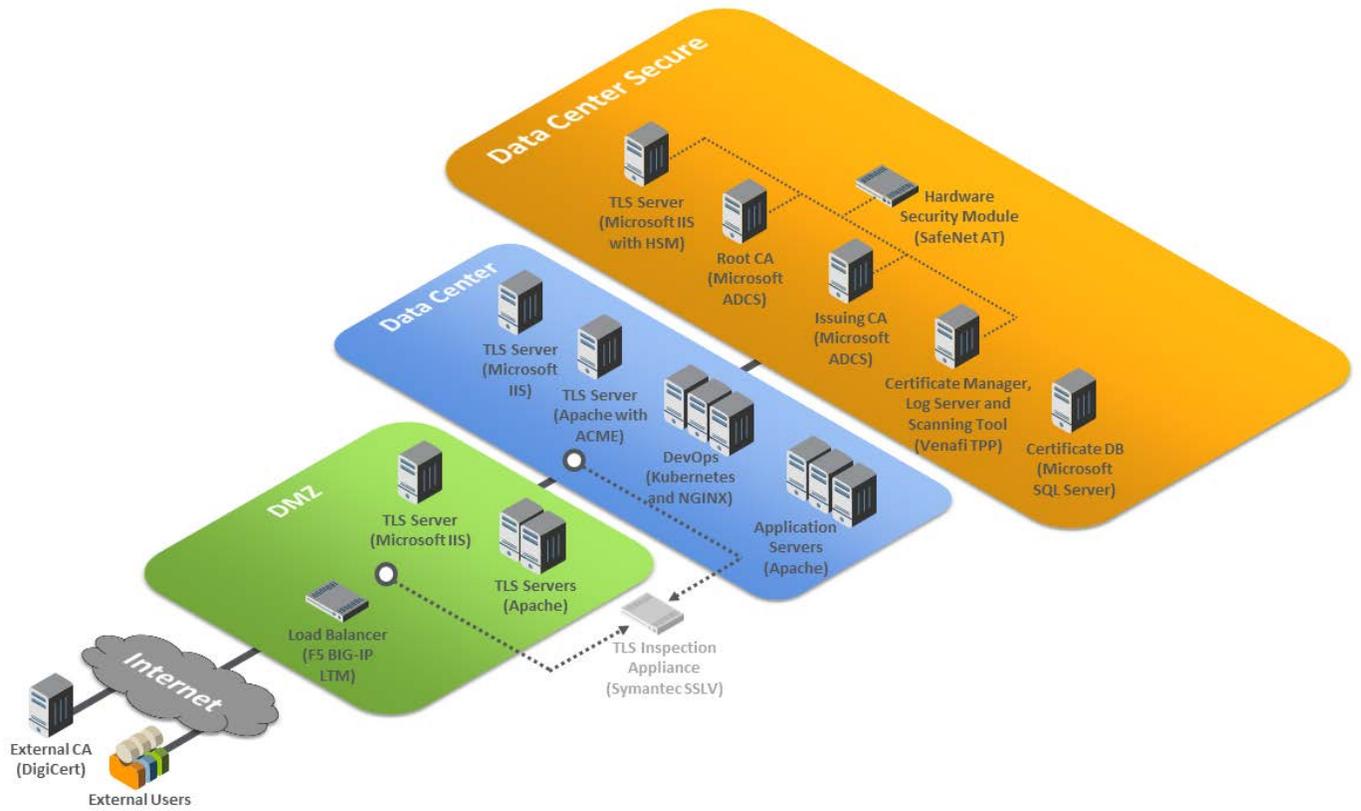
350 in-depth strategy of grouping components on subnetworks that require increasing levels of security as  
351 one moves inward from the perimeter of the organization. The zones comprise a demilitarized zone  
352 (DMZ) that sits between the internet and the rest of the enterprise; a data center hosting applications  
353 and services widely used across the enterprise; and a more secure data center hosting critical security  
354 and infrastructure components, including certificate management components.

355 At the ingress from the internet within the DMZ, a load balancer acts as a TLS proxy and distributes the  
356 traffic it receives from external users across three TLS servers behind it—all serving up the same  
357 application: two Apache servers and one Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS) server. (Note: To  
358 maintain the diagram’s simplicity in depicting this network, the connections between individual  
359 components are not shown. In the actual network architecture, the load balancer’s network connection  
360 to all three TLS servers is shown behind it.) TLS certificate management demonstrates how to enroll and  
361 provision new certificates to the load balancer and servers in the DMZ and how to perform overall  
362 certificate management on these devices, including automatically replacing a certificate that is nearing  
363 expiration.

364 Within the data center zone of the logical architecture sit various types of web servers, application  
365 servers, and a DevOps framework—all act as TLS servers. These components demonstrate the ability to  
366 automatically enroll and provision a new certificate and can automatically replace a certificate that is  
367 nearing expiration on these different systems. Various types of certificate management are also  
368 demonstrated, including remote agentless management, the ACME protocol, and the DevOps certificate  
369 management plug-in.

370 Within the DMZ and the data center zones, taps (depicted as white dots) are used on the network  
371 connections between the load balancer and the servers behind it, and on the network connections  
372 between the DMZ servers and the second-tier servers in the data center behind them. Taps enable all  
373 traffic on the encrypted TLS connections to travel to a TLS inspection appliance for passive decryption.  
374 Figure 1-1 depicts this TLS inspection appliance as a faded icon to convey that some organizations, as a  
375 matter of policy, may not want to include it as part of their network architecture. However,  
376 organizations that consider passive inspection as part of their security assurance strategy can use the  
377 certificate manager depicted in the architecture to securely copy private keys from several different TLS  
378 servers to the TLS inspection appliance, and to securely replace expiring keys on those servers and  
379 immediately copy those keys to the decryption device before expiration—manually and via standardized  
380 automated certificate installation.

381 **Figure 1-1 TLS Server Certificate Management Example Implementation: Logical Architecture**



382

383 Within the data center secure zone of the logical architecture sit the components that perform TLS  
384 server certificate management. These components include internal root and issuing CAs, a certificate  
385 manager, a certificate log server, a certificate network scanning tool, a certificate database, and an HSM.  
386 For demonstration purposes, a TLS server connected to an HSM is also present in this zone.

387 The certificate manager can be used in conjunction with the certificate database and the various types  
388 of servers in the architecture to demonstrate how to establish and maintain a systematized inventory of  
389 certificates (and keys) used on the network. The certificate manager can also continuously monitor TLS  
390 certificates (and keys) managed by the inventory system and act upon the status of any certificate (e.g.,  
391 report a certificate that is expired, about to expire, or does not conform to policy, or it can replace an  
392 expired certificate). It can also send expiration reports and notifications to certificate owners and can  
393 support disaster recovery by quickly replacing a large number of certificates located throughout the  
394 network architecture.

395 The certificate manager can be used in conjunction with the CAs to enroll and provision certificates (and  
396 keys), store attributes with those certificates, and discover the absence of an expected certificate from a  
397 machine where it should be installed. The certificate manager can revoke certificates and change the  
398 owner associated with that certificate.

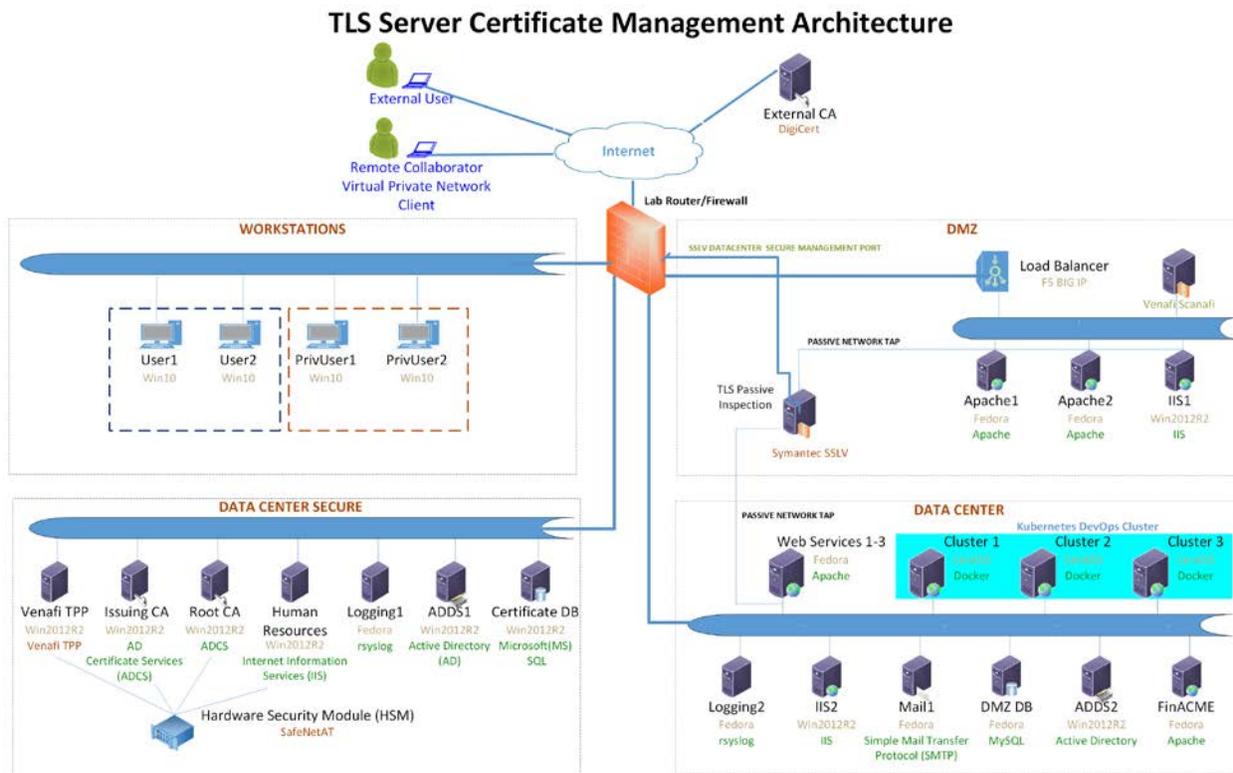
399 The certificate network scanning tool can discover certificates not being managed by the inventory. The  
400 certificate log server can record all certificate and private-key management operations, including  
401 certificate creation, installation, and revocation; key pair generation; certificate requests and request  
402 approvals; certificate and key copying; and certificate and key replacement.

403 All components in this portion of the architecture—except for the certificate database—are configured  
404 to use the HSM, which can securely generate, store, manage, and process the private key corresponding  
405 to the TLS server’s certificate. The HSM is capable of storing and protecting the symmetric keys that  
406 secure sensitive data in the certificate database, and can generate, store, manage, and process internal  
407 CAs’ signing keys.

### 408 **1.3 Build Architecture Summary**

409 Figure 1-2 depicts the physical architecture of the example implementation deployed in the NCCoE  
410 laboratory.

411 Figure 1-2 TLS Server Certificate Management Example Implementation: Laboratory Configuration



412 The NCCoE laboratory environment provided the following supporting infrastructure for the example  
 413 implementation:

- 414 ■ firewall-protected connection to the internet where an external CA resides
- 415 ■ Windows 2012 server with remote desktop manager, which acts as a jump box to facilitate  
 416 installation, deployment, and management of server software for collaborative projects
- 417 ■ segmented laboratory network backbone that models the separation typically existent between  
 418 subnetworks belonging to different parts of a medium-to-large-scale enterprise—for example, a  
 419 DMZ, a data center hosting widely used applications and services, a more secure data center  
 420 hosting critical security infrastructure components, and a segment containing user workstations
- 421 ■ virtual machine and network infrastructure
- 422 ■ Windows 2012 server serving as a Microsoft Active Directory (AD) primary domain controller
- 423 ■ the Windows 2012 server running AD Certificate Services, including  
 424 ■ an internal Root CA that can issue and self-sign its own TLS certificate

- 425
  - an internal issuing CA that:
    - 426
      - issues TLS certificates to servers that request them (issue CAs are subordinate to and
      - 427 certified by the root CA)
      - 428
        - manages the life cycle of certificates (including request, issuance, enrollment,
        - 429 publication, maintenance, revocation, and expiration)
  - 430
    - Microsoft structured query language (SQL) Server hosting the database of TLS certificates and
    - 431 keys, and corresponding configuration data
  - 432
    - DevOps automation framework, including Kubernetes, Docker, and Jetstack, that demonstrates
    - 433 automated certificate management when performing open-source container orchestration
  - 434
    - Apache, Microsoft IIS, and NGINX servers, which demonstrate various ways of managing TLS
    - 435 server certificates, including remote agentless certificate management, management via the
    - 436 ACME protocol (via the Certbot utility), and management via DevOps
  - 437
    - Apache servers used to demonstrate certificate management on second-tier internal application
    - 438 servers

439 The following collaborator-supplied components were integrated into the above supporting  
440 infrastructure to yield the TLS server certificate management example implementation:

- 441
  - Venafi Trust Protection Platform (TPP), which maintains the certificate inventory, performs
  - 442 automated TLS server certificate and private-key management, including monitoring,
  - 443 remediation, and rapid replacement of TLS certificates and keys; TLS certificate and key policy
  - 444 enforcement; automated certificate requests and renewals; automated network scanning for
  - 445 TLS certificates; and logging of certificate and private-key management operations
- 446
  - Symantec SSL Visibility (SSLV), a visibility appliance used to inspect intercepted traffic on
  - 447 encrypted TLS connections
- 448
  - SafeNet Assured Technologies (SafeNet AT) Luna SA 1700 HSM, used to securely generate, store,
  - 449 manage, and process the cryptographic key pair; also uses it to sign TLS certificates within a
  - 450 hardened, tamper-resistant physical appliance. It is also used to store other keys, such as the
  - 451 database encryption key and the TLS certificate keys for the key manager component (Venafi
  - 452 TPP) and the CAs
- 453
  - DigiCert external CA, which issues and renews TLS certificates
- 454
  - F5 Networks BIG-IP Local Traffic Manager load balancer, which acts as a TLS proxy and
  - 455 distributes received traffic across a number of other TLS servers

456 The remainder of this volume describes in detail the installation, configuration, and integration of the  
457 above supporting infrastructure and collaborator components.

## 458 1.4 Typographic Conventions

459 The following table presents typographic conventions used in this volume.

Typeface/Symbol	Meaning	Example
<i>Italics</i>	file names and path names; references to documents that are not hyperlinks; new terms; and placeholders	For detailed definitions of terms, see the <i>NCCoE Glossary</i> .
<b>Bold</b>	names of menus, options, command buttons, and fields	Choose <b>File &gt; Edit</b> .
Monospace	command-line input, onscreen computer output, sample code examples, and status codes	<code>mkdir</code>
<b>Monospace Bold</b>	command-line user input contrasted with computer output	<b><code>service sshd start</code></b>
<a href="#">blue text</a>	link to other parts of the document, a web URL, or an email address	All publications from NIST’s NCCoE are available at <a href="https://www.nccoe.nist.gov">https://www.nccoe.nist.gov</a> .

## 460 1.5 Supporting Infrastructure

461 This section is the first in a series of how-to guidance offered in this guide. It contains step-by-step  
462 instructions and points to specific, well-known, and trusted information for installing, configuring, and  
463 securely maintaining the supporting infrastructure components outlined in previous sections of this  
464 document.

465 All supporting infrastructure components in the following how-to subsections are high-level examples of  
466 services and functions that may reside on any network. For example, the Microsoft suite of AD, CA  
467 services, domain name server (DNS), web, and database services would typically reside on most  
468 organizational networks. Each section follows the other in building the prerequisites. This section on  
469 supporting infrastructure is the basis for the subsequent how-to sections on collaborator capabilities.

470 The lab backbone is the fundamental component of the architecture and forms the basis to develop the  
471 implementers’ understanding of the simulated build experience. Guidance is provided for each  
472 operating system (OS) installation, with specific instructions on the necessary security and system

473 configurations. Finally, specific ancillary services, installation and security configurations for database  
474 services, web services, etc. are provided.

### 475 1.5.1 Lab Backbone

476 The NCCoE has a specific implementation of its supporting lab network infrastructure or lab backbone.  
477 Although implementors using this document may possess some or most of the components in the TLS  
478 lab backbone, they may encounter slight but significant differences in their lab build. These differences  
479 are attributed to how we configured our lab backbone to suit the needs of the TLS lab and the larger  
480 multitiered lab community within the NCCoE.

481 The components and configuration approaches listed below may help clarify what basic capabilities are  
482 needed at a minimum to simulate the TLS lab infrastructure backbone.

- 483     ▪ network topology—designed to provide strict separation of system and workstation duties:
  - 484         • Data Center Secure Network—provides physical and logically secure separation of critical  
485             security services from nonprivileged or privileged users without specific security  
486             responsibilities
  - 487         • Data Center Network—provides less privileged users with access to security maintenance  
488             services that do not require special access to critical security management services
  - 489         • Workstations Network—provides secure, controlled, and monitored access to nonprivileged  
490             authorized users to perform organizational business
  - 491         • DMZ—provides secure separation and mitigation of risk to the rest of the critical network  
492             services from public access to public-facing services
- 493     ▪ multiple virtual local area networks (VLANs) and separate subnets—customized naming  
494         convention for VLAN names and subnets can be used, or follow the TLS lab approach below:
  - 495         • VLAN 2198 services the Data Center Secure Network 192.168.1.0/24
  - 496         • VLAN 2199 services the Data Center Network 192.168.3.0/24
  - 497         • VLAN 2200 services the Workstations Network 192.168.2.0/24
  - 498         • VLAN 2197 services the DMZ Network 192.168.4.0/24
  - 499         • VLAN 2196 services connections between the F5 load balancer and lab firewall  
500             192.168.5.0/24
  - 501         • VLAN 2202 services wide area network connections between the internet and the firewall;  
502             the address used here should mirror whatever is currently used for what the internet  
503             provider gave in a subnet address
- 504     ▪ One or more managed layer three switches must be capable of:

- 505 • traffic separation for six VLANs with multiple devices on each VLAN (see the architecture  
506 diagram for more)
- 507 • switched port analyzer (SPAN) or port mirroring functions
- 508 • VLAN trunk ports when using multiple switches
- 509 ▪ One or more manageable advanced firewalls:
  - 510 • must be capable of accepting at least six Ethernet port connections for all VLANs if using one  
511 firewall
  - 512 • must be capable of network address translation (NAT) (port forwarding, hide NAT, and static  
513 NAT)
  - 514 • should at least be stateful
  - 515 • should support deep packet inspection for every possible subnet where feasible and  
516 financially practical

## 517 1.5.2 Supporting Infrastructure Operating Systems

### 518 1.5.2.1 Microsoft Windows

519 Microsoft Windows and Windows Server are within a group of OSs designed by Microsoft to efficiently  
520 manage enterprise needs for data storage, applications, networking, and communications. In addition to  
521 the standard OSs used, additional ancillary Microsoft services were installed. These are native  
522 components of the OS and critical to the TLS lab design. Guidance on configuration of these ancillary  
523 services will be discussed later in this document in the Supporting Infrastructure Component Services  
524 section.

- 525 ▪ AD Services
- 526 ▪ DNS Services
- 527 ▪ CA Services

#### 528 1.5.2.1.1 Microsoft Windows and Server Prerequisites

529 Both Microsoft Windows servers and workstations have minimal hardware prerequisites, listed directly  
530 below this paragraph. In addition, TLS lab host configuration information is provided in Table 1-1 and  
531 Table 1-2 below. While it is not imperative that an implementer uses the TLS lab host naming  
532 convention and internet protocol (IP) addressing schemes, the tables below may prove useful with  
533 informing an organization of the servers and workstations needed should there be customizations to the  
534 TLS lab approach.

535 While the hardware requirements listed below represent the minimum, most business applications of  
536 this effort may have higher but differing requirements. All the applications in this TLS build will greatly

537 benefit from adding more than the minimum resources that Microsoft requires, as shown below, in a  
538 production environment.

539 Microsoft's Minimum Hardware Requirements:

- 540     ▪ Microsoft Windows Servers 2012
  - 541         • 1 gigahertz (GHz) 64-bit processor
  - 542         • 512 megabyte (MB) random access memory (RAM)
  - 543         • 32 gigabytes (GB) disk space
- 544     ▪ Microsoft Windows Workstations 2010
  - 545         • 1 GHz 64-bit processor
  - 546         • 2 GB RAM
  - 547         • 20 GB disk space

#### 548 1.5.2.1.2 Microsoft Windows Server 2012 Installation

- 549     ▪ For instructions regarding downloading the Microsoft Windows Server 2012, refer to the  
550         download and deployment guidance at: [https://www.microsoft.com/en-](https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/evalcenter/evaluate-windows-server-2012-r2)  
551         [us/evalcenter/evaluate-windows-server-2012-r2](https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/evalcenter/evaluate-windows-server-2012-r2).

552 Given that AD and domain services are critical to the adds1 and adds2 installation process, refer to the  
553 **Microsoft Active Directory and Domain Services Installation and Configuration** section, [1.5.3.1](#), of this  
554 document for full instructions after initial basic installation of the OS.

555 Please use the table below to name and assign IP addresses to all Microsoft Windows Servers used in  
556 the TLS lab build. The Windows Server version used in most cases is Windows 2012 version R2.

557 **Table 1-1 Naming and Addressing Information for all Microsoft Windows Servers**

Host Name	IP Address	Subnet	Gateway	Software Selection
iis1.ext-nccoe.org	192.168.4.4	255.255.255.0	192.168.4.1	Win2012 R2
adds1.int-nccoe.org	192.168.1.6	255.255.255.0	192.168.1.1	Win2012 R2
HSMrootca.int-nccoe.org	192.168.1.10	255.255.255.0	192.168.1.1	Win2012 R2
BaseSubCA.int-nccoe.org	192.168.1.41	255.255.255.0	192.168.1.1	Win2012 R2
HRhsm	192.168.1.16	255.255.255.0	192.168.1.1	Win2012 R2
Venafi1	192.168.1.81	255.255.255.0	192.168.1.1	Win2012 R2
VTPPTrustDB	192.168.1.89	255.255.255.0	192.168.1.1	Win2012 R2
iis2.int-nccoe.org	192.168.3.5	255.255.255.0	192.168.3.1	Win2012 R2

Host Name	IP Address	Subnet	Gateway	Software Selection
adds2.int-nccoe.org	192.168.3.7	255.255.255.0	192.168.3.1	Win2012 R2
dmzdc.ext-nccoe.org	192.168.3.8	255.255.255.0	192.168.3.1	Win2012 R2

558 **1.5.2.1.3 Microsoft Windows 10 Workstations Installation**

- 559     ▪ For instructions regarding download of the Microsoft Windows 10 workstation used in this TLS  
560 lab build, refer to the guidance at [https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/software-](https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/software-download/windows10)  
561 [download/windows10](https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/software-download/windows10).

562 Please use the table below to name and assign IP addresses to all Microsoft Windows 10 workstations  
563 used in the TLS lab build. The Windows 10 version used in most cases is Windows 10 Pro.

564 **Table 1-2 Naming and Addressing Information for all Microsoft Windows 10 Workstations**

Host Name	IP Address	Subnet	Gateway	Software Selection
win10-1.int-nccoe.org	192.168.2.11	255.255.255.0	192.168.2.1	Win10_Pro
win10-2.int-nccoe.org	192.168.2.2	255.255.255.0	192.168.2.1	Win10_Pro
privuser1.int-nccoe.org	192.168.2.3	255.255.255.0	192.168.2.1	Win10_Pro
privuser2.int-nccoe.org	192.168.2.4	255.255.255.0	192.168.2.1	Win10_Pro

565 **1.5.2.2 Linux**

566 Linux is a family of free and open-source OSs based on the Linux kernel, an OS kernel first released on  
567 September 17, 1991, by Linus Torvalds. Fedora Server is a Red Hat Corporation-supported, short life-  
568 cycle, and fully community-supported server OS. Fedora enables system administrators of any skill to  
569 freely (in most cases) make use of the very latest technologies available in the open-source community.

570 The CentOS Linux distribution is no different in its ability to allow mostly free use of world-class security  
571 and general IT capabilities. CentOS is a manageable and reproducible platform derived from the sources  
572 of Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) by an open-source community of volunteers.

573 **1.5.2.2.1 Linux Prerequisites**

574 Table 1-3 and Table 1-4 include the host names and IPs used in the TLS lab for all Linux machines. The  
575 recommended minimum hardware requirements for the default installations of Fedora and CentOS have  
576 been noted below. An organization’s requirements may differ. However, it is highly recommended that  
577 the maximum optimal configuration (in accordance with the organization’s available resources) for each  
578 system be applied, as all the applications used in this TLS lab build will benefit from more than the  
579 minimum resources in a production environment.

- 580       ▪ 1 GHz or faster processor
- 581       ▪ 1 GB system memory
- 582       ▪ 10 GB unallocated drive space
- 583       ▪ 1 VMXNET 3 network adapter

#### 584   1.5.2.2.2   Fedora and CentOS Installation

585   The OS installation process for the TLS lab Linux machines did not deviate from the standard installation  
 586   instructions that exist for each Linux distributor. The links below provide standard guidance for the  
 587   Fedora and CentOS installations.

588   When running through the installation process, in some cases, a standard Fedora installation for  
 589   software selection will not suffice. Should this occur, use Table 1-3. If the Software Selection column  
 590   includes Fedora Server/Basic Web Server, select Fedora Server for Base Environment, then select Basic  
 591   Web Server installation for add-ons, and when prompted, select software packages during the  
 592   installation.

593   The CentOS Software Selection column includes Basic Web Server—select this as the software package  
 594   to install when prompted during the installation process for CentOS.

- 595       ▪ <https://docs.fedoraproject.org/en-US/fedora/f28/install-guide/>
- 596       ▪ <https://docs.centos.org/en-US/centos/install-guide/>

597   Please use Table 1-3 for IP, host name, and other installation-specific options for all Fedora-based  
 598   systems in the TLS lab build.

599   **Table 1-3 Naming and Addressing Information for All Fedora-Based Systems**

Host Name	IP Address	Subnet	Gateway	Software Selection
syslog2.int-nccoe.org	192.168.3.12	255.255.255.0	192.168.3.1	Fedora Server
finacme.int-nccoe.org	192.168.3.61	255.255.255.0	192.168.3.1	Fedora Server/ Basic Web Server
mail1.int-nccoe.org	192.168.3.25	255.255.255.0	192.168.3.1	Fedora Server
dmzdb.ext-nccoe.org	192.168.3.6	255.255.255.0	192.168.3.1	Fedora Server
syslog1.int-nccoe.org	192.168.1.12	255.255.255.0	192.168.1.1	Fedora Server
apache1.ext-nccoe.org	192.168.4.2	255.255.255.0	192.168.4.1	Fedora Server/ Basic Web Server
apache2.ext-nccoe.org	192.168.4.3	255.255.255.0	192.168.4.1	Fedora Server/ Basic Web Server

Host Name	IP Address	Subnet	Gateway	Software Selection
ws1.int-nccoe.org	192.168.3.87	255.255.255.0	192.168.3.1	Fedora Server/ Basic Web Server
ws2.int-nccoe.org	192.168.3.88	255.255.255.0	192.168.3.1	Fedora Server/ Basic Web Server
ws3.int-nccoe.org	192.168.3.89	255.255.255.0	192.168.3.1	Fedora Server/ Basic Web Server

600 Please use Table 1-4 for IP, host name, and other installation-specific options for all CentOS servers used  
601 in the TLS lab build.

602 **Table 1-4 Naming and Addressing Information for All CentOS Servers**

Host Name	IP Address	Netmask	Gateway	Software Selection
scanafi.ext-nccoe.org	192.168.4.107	255.255.255.0	192.168.4.1	Infrastructure Server
cluster1.int-nccoe.org	192.168.3.103	255.255.255.0	192.168.3.1	Basic Web Server
cluster2.int-nccoe.org	192.168.3.104	255.255.255.0	192.168.3.1	Basic Web Server
cluster3.int-nccoe.org	192.168.3.105	255.255.255.0	192.168.3.1	Basic Web Server

### 603 1.5.3 Supporting Infrastructure Component Services

#### 604 1.5.3.1 Microsoft Active Directory and Domain Services Installation and Configuration

605 Active Directory Services (ADS) and DNS work together to store directory data and make those resources  
606 available to administrators and users. For example, ADS stores information about user accounts such as  
607 names and passwords. Security is integrated with ADS through log-on authentication and enforced  
608 access control for user, file, directory, and other system objects in the directory of services.

609 Administrators are able to manage directory data and organization roles across the enterprise. They can  
610 assign permissions to users, which allows users to access resources anywhere on the network. ADS  
611 authenticates and authorizes all users and computers in a Windows domain network. ADS works in  
612 conjunction with Group Policies Objects (GPOs) in assigning and enforcing security policies for all  
613 computers.

614 A DNS is a protocol for how computers translate domain names. It manages a database used to resolve  
615 domain names to IP addresses, allowing computers to identify each other on the network. DNS is the  
616 primary locator service for AD. ADS is highly dependent on the DNS in most cases, and as a result, most  
617 implementations—including the TLS lab—opt to install the DNS service on the same server as the ADS.

##### 618 1.5.3.1.1 ADS and DNS Prerequisites

619 Below are the minimum recommended tools, services, and configurations needed to install ADS and  
620 DNS.

- 621       ▪ The adds1 and adds2 hosts should be built with the Windows Server 2012 OS installed. As  
622       described in Section [1.5.2.1.2](#) of this document, there are two ADS and DNS servers. The TLS lab  
623       ADS and DNS server names used are adds1.int-nccoe.org and adds2.int-nccoe.org. (Note: The  
624       DNS server may be run locally on the same Active Directory Domain Services [ADDS] server.)
- 625       ▪ local network configurations—all of the local network VLANs, IP addresses, and proper routes
- 626       ▪ familiarity with Server Manager

627  
628   Server Manager is a Windows Server management console that allows administrators to install,  
629   configure, and manage server roles and features. Administrators can manage local and remote servers  
630   without having physical access to them. The ADS and DNS installation process is integrated with Server  
631   Manager, which can be used when installing other server roles.

### 632   1.5.3.2   ADS and DNS Installation

633   For instructions on deploying ADS and DNS on a Windows 2012 server, refer to the guidance at one of  
634   the links below:

- 635       ▪ **Graphical User Interface (GUI)-Based Installation:** <https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/windows-server/identity/ad-ds/deploy/ad-ds-installation-and-removal-wizard-page-descriptions>
- 637       ▪ **Command Line-Based Installation:** <https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/windows-server/identity/ad-ds/deploy/install-active-directory-domain-services--level-100->

### 639   1.5.3.3   Certificate Authority Services

640   In an organization where public key infrastructure (PKI) has been implemented, a CA is responsible for  
641   validating the identity of users and computers. The CA assigns a trusted credential for use in  
642   authenticating user and system identities, by issuing a digitally signed and trusted certificate. The CA can  
643   also assist in managing revocation and renewal of its signed certificates.

644   The first CA built and implemented in a PKI environment is often referred to as the root CA. As the  
645   originator and root of trust, the root CA authorizes all subsequent CAs, called subordinates or issuing  
646   CAs. Subordinate CAs can also designate their own subsidiaries as defined by the root CA, which results  
647   in a certificate hierarchy. The metadata supplied in all certificates issued to CAs lower in the hierarchy  
648   from the root CA contain a trace path back to the root.

649   A compromised root CA will cripple any organization that depends on the integrity of its issued PKI  
650   certificates, even in lightweight transactions. With full control or significant unauthorized access to the  
651   root CA, a malicious actor may fully infiltrate any transaction that relies on the integrity of the trust  
652   chain where that root CA presides as the anchor. It is recommended all organizations—size  
653   notwithstanding—implement an enterprise stand-alone offline root CA and separate issuing subordinate

654 CA(s) topology wherever possible. Doing so mitigates many of the risks associated with compromised  
655 root CAs.

656 The TLS lab followed Microsoft's guidance to develop a highly secure offline stand-alone root CA  
657 coupled with an enterprise online issuing CA. The following CA installation and configuration how-to  
658 guidance aligns with that goal.

#### 659 1.5.3.3.1 CA Prerequisites

660 The prerequisite steps to configure the CA(s) include:

- 661     ▪ Build HSMrootca.int-nccoe.org and BaseSubCA.int-nccoe.org in accordance with the OS  
662       installation and configuration instructions in Section 1.5.2.1.2.
- 663     ▪ Join BaseSubCA.int-nccoe.org to the already created int-nccoe.org domain.
- 664     ▪ HSMrootca.int-nccoe.org and BaseSubCA.int-nccoe.org should have network connections to all  
665       the TLS lab subnets needed for CA certificate issuance.

#### 666 1.5.3.3.2 Installation of Offline Root and Issuing CA

667 In this implementation scenario, the offline root CA is built, configured, and established as the root of  
668 the trust chain. The root CA is then configured to securely sign and issue certificates for all of its  
669 subordinates. Afterward, it is taken completely offline. Being taken offline includes complete power-  
670 down and highly secures physical storage of the root CA device (specifically the hard drive if possible).

671 Installation of the root CA through the Server Manager console can be done by installing Active  
672 Directory Certificate Services (ADCS). ADCS is used to create CAs and configure their role to issue and  
673 manage certificates. For instructions on installing ADCS on the root CA and issuing CA server, refer to the  
674 steps below:

- 675     1. In the **Server Manager**, select **Manage** > click on **Add Roles and Features**.
- 676     2. Follow the Add Roles and Features wizard > in **Select Installation Types**, select **Role-Based or**  
677       **feature installation**.
- 678     3. In **Select destination server**, confirm **Select a server from the server pool** is selected > select  
679       your local computer.
- 680     4. In **Select server roles** > under **Roles**, select **Active Directory Certificate Services** > click **Add**  
681       **Features**.
- 682     5. In **Select features** > click **Next**.
- 683     6. In **Active Directory Certificate Services** > click **Next**.
- 684     7. In **Select role services** > in **Roles**, select **Certification Authority**.
- 685     8. In **Confirm installation records** > click **Install**.
- 686     9. When installation is complete, click **Close**.

687 **1.5.3.3.3 Offline Root CA Configuration**

688 After installing ADCS, refer to the steps below to configure and specify cryptographic options for the  
689 root CA:

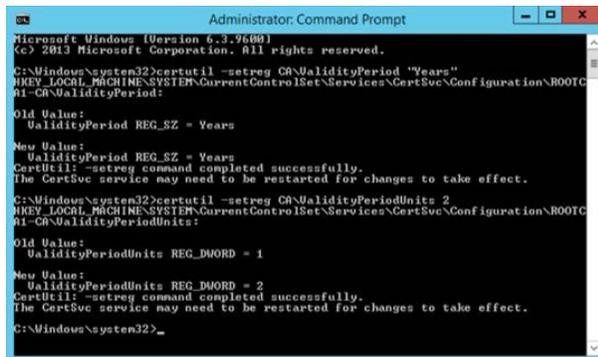
- 690 1. Run **Post-deployment Configuration** wizard > click on **Configure Active Directory Services** link.
- 691 2. In **Credentials**, read the credentials information. If needed, provide administrator credentials.
- 692 3. In **Role Services** > select **Certification Authority**.
- 693 4. In **Setup Type** > select **Standalone CA**.
- 694 5. In **CA Type** > select **Root CA**.
- 695 6. In **Private Key** > select **Create a new private key** to specify type of private key.
- 696 7. In **Cryptography for CA**:
  - 697 • Select a cryptographic provider: **RSA#SafeNet Key Storage Provider**.
  - 698 • Key Length = **2048**
  - 699 • Select the hash algorithm for signing certificates issued by this CA: **SHA256**.
- 700 8. In **CA Name** > specify the name of CA > **RootCA**.
- 701 9. For **Validity Period** > select **2 Years**.
- 702 10. Specify the database location > *C:\Window\system32\CertLog*.
- 703 11. Review the CA configuration and click **Configure**.
- 704 12. Click **Close** when the confirmation message appears.

705  
706 To configure the CRL Distribution Point (CDP) and Authority Information Access (AIA) extensions on the  
707 root CA, follow the steps below:

- 708 1. In **Server Manager**, go to **Tools** > select **Certification Authority**.
- 709 2. Right-click **RootCA** > click **Properties**.
- 710 3. Click the **Extensions** tab. Ensure **Select Extension** is set to **CDP**.
- 711 4. In the **Specify locations from which users can obtain a certificate revocation list (CRL)**, do the  
712 following:
  - 713 a. Select the entry  
714 *file://<ServerDNSName>/CertEnroll/<CaName><CRLNameSuffix><DeltaCRLAllowed>.c*  
715 *rl* and then click **Remove**. In **Confirm removal**, click **Yes**.
  - 716 b. Select the entry  
717 *http://<ServerDNSName>/CertEnroll/<CaName><CRLNameSuffix><DeltaCRLAllowed>*  
718 *cr* and then click **Remove**. In **Confirm removal**, click **Yes**.
- 719 5. In **Specify locations from which users can obtain a certificate revocation list (CRL)**, click **Add**.
- 720 6. In **Add Location**, in **Location**, type  
721 *http://BaseSubCA/CertEnroll/<CaName><CRLNameSuffix><DeltaCRLAllowed>.crl* and then click  
722 **OK**. This returns to the CA properties dialogue box.
- 723 7. On the **Extensions** tab, select the following checkboxes:
  - 724 • **Include in CRLs. Clients use this to find the Delta CRL locations.**
  - 725 • **Include in the CDP extension of issued certificates.**

- 726 8. In **Specify locations from which users can obtain a certificate revocation list (CRL)**, select the  
727 entry that starts with  
728 **ldap://CN=CATruncatedName>,CRLNameSuffix>,CN=<ServerShortName>**.
- 729 9. On the **Extensions** tab, select the following checkbox:  
730
  - 731 • **Include in all CRLs. Specifies where to publish in the Active Directory when publishing manually.**
  - 732 • **In Specify locations, users can obtain a certificate revocation list (CRL).** Select the entry  
733 **C:\\Windows\\system32\\CertSrv\\CertEnroll\\<CaName><CRLNameSuffix><DeltaCRLAll**  
734 **owed>.crl.**
- 735 10. On the **Extensions** tab, select the following checkboxes:  
736
  - 737 • **Publish CRLs to this location.**
  - 738 • **Publish Delta CRLs to this location.**
- 739 11. Change **Select extension** to **Authority Information Access (AIA)**.
- 740 12. In the **Specify locations, users can obtain a certificate revocation list (CRL)** do the following:  
741 a. Select the entry  
742 **http://<ServerDNSName>/CertEnroll/<ServerDNSName>\_<CaName><CertificateName>**  
743 **>.crt** and then click **Remove**. In **Confirm removal**, click **Yes**.  
744 b. Select the entry  
745 **file://<ServerDNSName>/CertEnroll/<ServerDNSName>\_<CaName><CertificateName>**  
746 **.crt** and then click **Remove**. In **Confirm removal**, click **Yes**.
- 747 13. In **Specify locations, users can obtain a CRL**, click **Add**.
- 748 14. In **Add Location**, in **Location**, type  
749 **http://BaseSubCA/CertEnroll/<ServerDNSName>\_<CaName><CertificateName>.crt** and then  
750 click **OK**. This returns to the CA properties dialogue box.
- 751 15. On the **Extensions** tab, select the following checkbox:  
752
  - 753 • **Include in the AIA of issued certificates.**
- 754 16. In **Specify locations from which users can obtain a certificate revocation list (CRL)**, select the  
755 entry that starts with **ldap://CN=CATruncatedName>,CN=AIA,CN=PublicKeyServices**.
- 756 17. On the **Extensions** tab, select the following checkbox:  
757
  - 758 • **Include in the AIA extension of issued certificates.**
- 759 18. In **Specify locations, users can obtain a certificate revocation list CRL**. Select the entry  
760 **C:\\Windows\\system32\\CertSrv\\CertEnroll\\<ServerDNSName>\_<CaName><CertificateName>**  
761 **.crt**.
- 762 19. On the **Extensions** tab, ensure **AIA extension of issued certificates** is not selected.
- 763 20. When prompted to restart Active Directory Certificate Services, click **No**. Restart that service  
764 later.
- 765 21. Go back to **RootCA** and expand folders to right-click on **Revoked Certificates** > select **All Tasks**  
766 > click **Publish**.
22. When prompted to Publish CRL, select **New CRL** > click **OK**.
23. To configure the Registry Settings, run cmd as an administrator and type the following  
commands:

767 certutil -setreg CA\ValidityPeriod "Years"  
768 certutil -setreg CA\ValidityPeriodUnits 2



```
Administrator: Command Prompt
Microsoft Windows [Version 6.3.9600]
(c) 2013 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

C:\Windows\system32>certutil -setreg CA\ValidityPeriod "Years"
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\CertSvc\Configuration\ROOTCA1-CA\ValidityPeriod:
Old Value:
    ValidityPeriod REG_SZ = Years
New Value:
    ValidityPeriod REG_SZ = Years
CertUtil: -setreg command completed successfully.
The CertSvc service may need to be restarted for changes to take effect.

C:\Windows\system32>certutil -setreg CA\ValidityPeriodUnits 2
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\CertSvc\Configuration\ROOTCA1-CA\ValidityPeriodUnits:
Old Value:
    ValidityPeriodUnits REG_DWORD = 1
New Value:
    ValidityPeriodUnits REG_DWORD = 2
CertUtil: -setreg command completed successfully.
The CertSvc service may need to be restarted for changes to take effect.

C:\Windows\system32>_
```

769

770 certutil -setreg CA\DSConfigDN "CN=Configuration,DC=int-nccoe,DC=org"

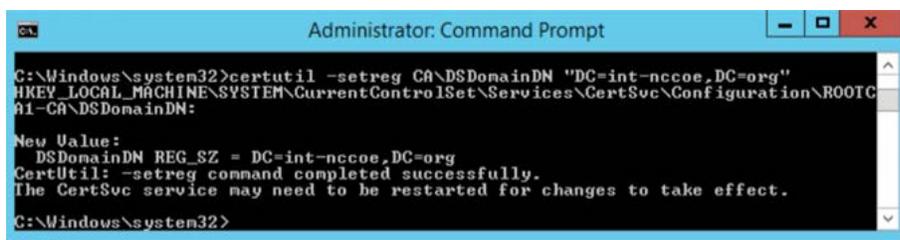


```
Administrator: Command Prompt

C:\Windows\system32>certutil -setreg CA\DSConfigDN "CN=Configuration,DC=int-nccoe,DC=org"
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\CertSvc\Configuration\ROOTCA1-CA\DSConfigDN:
New Value:
    DSConfigDN REG_SZ = CN=Configuration,DC=int-nccoe,DC=org
CertUtil: -setreg command completed successfully.
The CertSvc service may need to be restarted for changes to take effect.
```

771

772 cerutil -setreg CA\DSDomainDN "DC=int-nccoe,DC=org"



```
Administrator: Command Prompt

C:\Windows\system32>cerutil -setreg CA\DSDomainDN "DC=int-nccoe,DC=org"
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\CertSvc\Configuration\ROOTCA1-CA\DSDomainDN:
New Value:
    DSDomainDN REG_SZ = DC=int-nccoe,DC=org
CertUtil: -setreg command completed successfully.
The CertSvc service may need to be restarted for changes to take effect.

C:\Windows\system32>
```

773

774 24. For it to accept the new values, restart services > go to **Administrative Tools** > double-click  
775 **Certification Authority**.

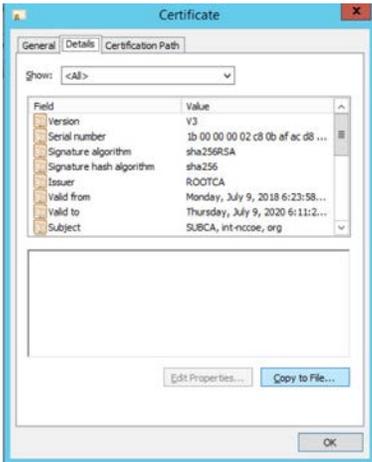
776 25. Select the **RootCA** > right-click to select **All Tasks** > click **Start Service**.

777 26. Go back to **RootCA** to expand folders > right-click on **Revoked Certificates** > select **All Tasks** >  
778 click **Publish** to publish revoked certificates.

#### 779 1.5.3.3.4 Enterprise Subordinate/Issuing CA Configuration

780 After installing ADCS, follow the steps below to configure and specify cryptographic options for the  
781 issuing CA:

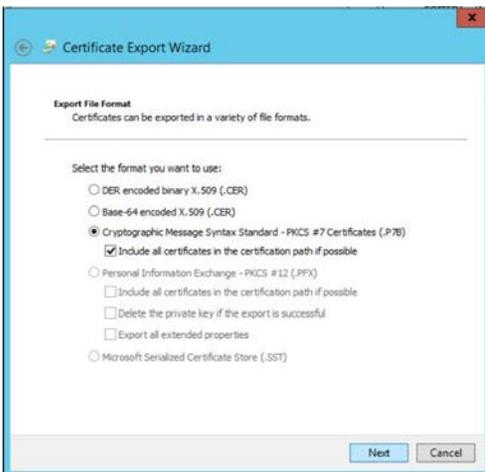
- 782 1. Run **Post-deployment Configuration** wizard > click on **Configure Active Directory Services** link.
- 783 2. In **Credentials**, read the credentials information. If needed, provide administrator credentials.
- 784 3. In **Role Services** > select **Certification Authority**.
- 785 4. In **Setup Type** > select **Enterprise CA**.
- 786 5. In **CA Type** > select **Subordinate CA**.
- 787 6. In **Private Key** > select **Create a new private key** to specify type of private key.
- 788 7. In **Cryptography for CA**:
- 789     • Select a cryptographic provider: **RSA#SafeNet Key Storage Provider**.
- 790     • Key Length = **2048**
- 791     • Select the hash algorithm for signing certificates issued by this CA: **SHA256**.
- 792 8. In **CA Name** > specify the name of the CA > **BaseSubCA**.
- 793 9. In **Certificate Request** > select **Save a certificate request to file on the target machine** > specify
- 794 folder location > *C:\BaseSubCA.int-nccoe.org\_int-nccoe-BASESUBCA-CA.req*.
- 795 10. In **CA Database** > specify the folder location for the certification database >
- 796 **C:\Windows\system32\CertLog**.
- 797 11. In **Confirmation** > confirm configurations and select **Configure** > click **Close**.
- 798 12. Copy the BaseSubCA request file from the BaseSubCA server to the RootCA server at
- 799 **C:\Windows\System32\CertServ\CertEnroll**.
- 800 13. Copy *rootCA.crl* and *rootCA.crt* to the BaseSubCA server at
- 801 **C:\Windows\System32\CertServ\CertEnroll**.
- 802 14. To issue a certificate to the BaseSubCA server from the RootCA server, go to **Administrative**
- 803 **Tools** > double-click **Certification Authority**.
- 804 15. Select **BaseSubCA** > right-click to select **All Tasks** > click **Submit new request**.
- 805 16. Select and open the request file in the dialog box.
- 806 17. Go back to the **Certification Authority** > select **BaseSubCA** and expand folders > click on
- 807 **Pending Requests**.
- 808 18. Right-click the pending certificate > right-click to select **All Tasks** > click **Issue**.
- 809 19. Go to **Issued Certificates** to view the issued certificate.
- 810 20. Double-click on the issued certificate.
- 811 21. Go to the **Details** tab > click **Copy to File**.



812

813

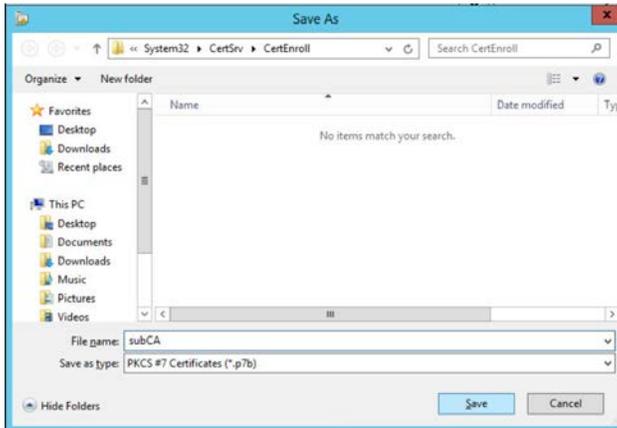
22. Follow the Certificate Export wizard and select the desired format:



814

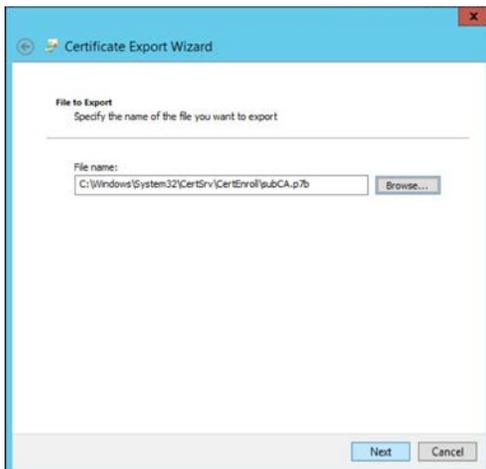
815

23. Save the file as **subCA** > file type is **PKCS #7 Certificates (\*.p7b)**.



816

817 24. Specify the file name to export:



818

- 819 25. Complete the Certificate Export Wizard by confirming settings > click **Finish**.
- 820 26. In **Export was successful** > click **OK**.
- 821 27. Copy **subCA.p7b** from the RootCA server at **C:\WindowSystem32\CerServ\CertEnroll** to the
- 822 BaseSubCA server at **C:\WindowSystem32\CerServ\CertEnroll**.
- 823 28. On the BaseSubCA server > shift right-click > open the command prompt.
- 824 29. Publish the CA Root certificate into Directory Services with the following command:

825  
826

```
certutil -dspublish -f (tab to rootCA.crt file) RootCA
```

```

Administrator: C:\Windows\system32\cmd.exe
C:\Windows\System32\CertSvc\CertEnroll>certutil -dsPublish -f rootCA_ROOTCA-CA.c
rt RootCA
ldap:///CN=ROOTCA-CA,CN=Certification Authorities,CN=Public Key Services,CN=Serv
ices,CN=Configuration,DC=int-nccoe,DC=org?cACertificate
Certificate added to DS store.
ldap:///CN=ROOTCA-CA,CN=ATA,CN=Public Key Services,CN=Services,CN=Configuration,
DC=int-nccoe,DC=org?cACertificate
Certificate added to DS store.
CertUtil: -dsPublish command completed successfully.
C:\Windows\System32\CertSvc\CertEnroll>

```

827

828 30. To publish the crl file, type the following command:  
 829 certutil -dsPublish -f (tab to .crl file)

```

Administrator: C:\Windows\system32\cmd.exe
C:\Windows\System32\CertSvc\CertEnroll>certutil -dsPublish -f rootCA_ROOTCA-CA.c
rt RootCA
ldap:///CN=ROOTCA-CA,CN=Certification Authorities,CN=Public Key Services,CN=Serv
ices,CN=Configuration,DC=int-nccoe,DC=org?cACertificate
Certificate added to DS store.
ldap:///CN=ROOTCA-CA,CN=ATA,CN=Public Key Services,CN=Services,CN=Configuration,
DC=int-nccoe,DC=org?cACertificate
Certificate added to DS store.
CertUtil: -dsPublish command completed successfully.
C:\Windows\System32\CertSvc\CertEnroll>certutil -dsPublish -f ROOTCA-CA.crl
ldap:///CN=ROOTCA-CA,CN=RootCA,CN=CRL,CN=Public Key Services,CN=Services,CN=Conf
iguration,DC=int-nccoe,DC=org?certificateRevocationList?base?objectClass=cRLDist
ributionList?certificateRevocationList
Base CRL added to DS store.
CertUtil: -dsPublish command completed successfully.
C:\Windows\System32\CertSvc\CertEnroll>

```

830

- 831 31. Set the **Domain Policy** to make the RootCA trusted by all domain computers.
- 832 32. Install the certificate in the subCA server > go to **Administrative Tools** > double-click
- 833 **Certification Authority**.
- 834 33. Select the CA > right-click to select **All Tasks** > click **Install CA Certificate**.
- 835 34. Select the *.p7b* file to complete the CA installation.
- 836 35. A warning message will be received that the revocation server is offline > click **OK** to ignore the
- 837 message.
- 838 36. Power down the RootCA server.
- 839 37. Go to **Administrative Tools** > right-click the CA > select **All Tasks** > click **Start Service** to start
- 840 services.
- 841 38. Install *.crt* files on the Default Domain Policy.
- 842 39. Go to the domain controller (DC).
- 843 40. Go to **Administrative Tools** > open **Group Policy Management** console.
- 844 41. Go to the organization's domain > right-click the **Default Domain Policy** folder > select **Edit**.
- 845 42. Navigate to **Computer Configuration**, go to **Policies** > **Window Settings** > **Security Settings** >
- 846 **Public Key Policies** > right-click **Intermediate Certification Authorities** > select **Import**.
- 847 43. Follow the **Certificate Import Wizard** > click **Next**.
- 848 44. Select the *subCA.crt* file to import > click **Next** to import file.
- 849 45. Confirm details > click **Finish**.
- 850 46. A dialogue box will pop up to confirm **The import was successful**.
- 851 47. Go to **Trusted Root Certification Authority** folder and right-click > select **Import**.

- 852 48. Follow the **Certificate Import Wizard** > click **Next**.  
853 49. Select the **rootCA.crt** file to import > click **Next** to import file.  
854 50. Confirm details > click **Finish**.  
855 51. A dialogue box will appear to confirm **The import was successful**.

## 856 1.5.4 Database Services

### 857 1.5.4.1 Microsoft SQL Database Services

858 Microsoft SQL (MSQL) Server is a relational database management system developed by Microsoft. As a  
859 database server and a software product, its primary function is to store and retrieve data as requested  
860 by other software applications. MSQL can operate on the same or another computer across a network.

#### 861 1.5.4.1.1 Prerequisites for MSQL Database Services

862 The information below is Microsoft's recommended minimum for default installation of MSQL. An  
863 organization's requirements may differ. However, all applications can benefit from more than the  
864 minimum resources in a production environment.

- 865 ▪ 1.4 GHz 64-bit processor
- 866 ▪ 1 GB RAM
- 867 ▪ 6 GB disk space
- 868 ▪ administration privileges (local installations must run Setup as an administrator)

869 One MSQL database was used for the TLS lab build to support the Venafi TPP server. This guide installs  
870 only the basic MSQL application on a server. This prepares the specific configurations that are discussed  
871 in the Venafi TPP How -To guidance section. As a prerequisite, see the OS installation instructions in  
872 Section [1.5.2.1.2](#) to build the VTPPTrustDB.int-nccoe.org server.

#### 873 1.5.4.1.2 Installation of MSQL Database Services

874 To install MSQL on a Windows 2016 Server, follow the Microsoft steps in the link below:

- 875 ▪ Download here: [https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/sql-server/sql-server-downloads?&OCID=AID739534\\_SEM\\_at7DarBF&MarinID=sat7DarBF\\_340829462634\\_microsoft%20sql%20download\\_e\\_c\\_68045082145\\_kwd-343189224165](https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/sql-server/sql-server-downloads?&OCID=AID739534_SEM_at7DarBF&MarinID=sat7DarBF_340829462634_microsoft%20sql%20download_e_c_68045082145_kwd-343189224165)
- 876  
877
- 878 ▪ Install and configure here: <https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/sql/database-engine/install-windows/install-sql-server-from-the-installation-wizard-setup?view=sql-server-2017>
- 879
- 880 ▪ Install MSQL as a stand-alone server.
- 881 ▪ Specify the Database Engineer Configuration in step 15 by selecting SQL Server Administrators.

## 882 1.5.4.2 MariaDB Database Services

883 The original inventors of MySQL developed the MariaDB server, which is highly compatible with MySQL.  
884 This allows a drop-in replacement capability with library binary parity and exact matching with MySQL's  
885 application programming interfaces and commands.

886 Like MySQL, the open-source version of MariaDB can scale and performs as well as most enterprise  
887 database servers. The TLS lab uses the MariaDB to serve its public-facing (DMZ) web-based TLS services  
888 described in this document.

### 889 1.5.4.2.1 Prerequisites for MariaDB Database Services

890 The host named dmzdb.ext-nccoe.org should have already been set up within the Fedora OS how-to  
891 guidance of Section [1.5.2.2.2](#). Complete this setup prior to installing the MariaDB server.

### 892 1.5.4.2.2 Installation of MariaDB Database Services

- 893 ▪ To download and install MariaDB, please refer to the [fedoraproject.org](https://fedoraproject.org/wiki/MariaDB) guidance at  
894 <https://fedoraproject.org/wiki/MariaDB>

### 895 1.5.4.2.3 Configuration of MariaDB Database Services

896 MariaDB is used to serve dynamic web content with the Drupal application. All three web servers used  
897 in the DMZ must be configured via Drupal to point to one database. As a result, the database must be  
898 configured to accept connections from the Drupal web servers. MariaDB can be configured by using the  
899 Fedora Linux command line. To start, first set up a secure password for the root and any other  
900 administrative accounts (see the MariaDB setup instructions on how to specify other accounts). Log in to  
901 the dmzdb.int-nccoe.org by using the local command line shell or secure remote administration client  
902 (ssh, putty, openssh). Once logged into the system, use the following command to launch MariaDB from  
903 the Fedora Linux:

```
904 [root@dmzdb ~]# mysql -p
```

905 Note: Although the root account is displayed here as the login account, configuring MariaDB  
906 with the root user in a production environment is not recommended.

907 Configure the database to allow remote connections from either the IP addresses or host names used in  
908 the TLS lab. If the IP addresses and host names were customized (apache1: 192.168.4.2, apache2:  
909 192.168.4.3, iis1: 192.168.4.4), please double-check and change the IP addresses in the database by  
910 using the commands below. If custom host names were used in place of the IP addresses, the database  
911 DNS or host resolution is set to properly resolve to the right IP addresses.

```
912 [root@dmzdb ~]# mysql -p
```

```
913 Enter password:
```

```
914 Welcome to the MariaDB monitor. Commands end with ; or \g.  
915 Your MariaDB connection id is 1012018
```

```

916      Server version: 10.2.16-MariaDB MariaDB Server
917
918      Copyright (c) 2000, 2018, Oracle, MariaDB Corporation Ab and others.
919      Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the current input statement.
920      MariaDB [(none)]> create database EXT_NCCOE_DB;
921      MariaDB [(none)]> grant all privileges on EXT_NCCOE_DB.* to
922      'EXTADMIN'@'192.168.4.2' IDENTIFIED BY 'YOUR PASSWORD';
923      MariaDB [(none)]> grant all privileges on EXT_NCCOE_DB.* to
924      'EXTADMIN'@'192.168.4.3' IDENTIFIED BY 'YOUR PASSWORD';
925      MariaDB [(none)]> grant all privileges on EXT_NCCOE_DB.* to
926      'EXTADMIN'@'192.168.4.4' IDENTIFIED BY 'YOUR PASSWORD';
927      MariaDB [(none)]> quit;

```

928 Add rules to the local Linux firewall to allow database traffic inbound. Please use the following  
929 commands to allow database traffic to inbound ports on the MariaDB server:

- 930     ▪ Type the following command to allow database connections to Apache:
- ```

931      iptables-I INPUT -p tcp -dport 3306 -mstate --state related, ESTABLISHED, new -
932      j ACCEPT

```

## 933 1.5.5 TLS Web Services

### 934 1.5.5.1 Microsoft Internet Information Services

935 The web server (IIS) role in Windows Server 2012 provides a means for hosting websites, services, and  
936 applications. IIS information can be shared with users on the internet, an intranet, or an extranet. IIS is a  
937 unified web platform that integrates IIS, ASP.NET, File Transfer Protocol services, Personal Home Page  
938 (PHP), and Windows Communication Foundation.

939 The TLS lab utilized the IIS server as a public-facing member of a load balance web cluster for public-  
940 facing internet services. It was also used as an intranet server to simulate an employee web-based  
941 knowledge management system that is internal to an organization.

#### 942 1.5.5.1.1 IIS Prerequisites

943 Complete the following prerequisite steps prior to installing and configuring IIS:

- 944     ▪ Server iis2.int-nccoe.org should ideally be a member of the domain for more streamlined TLS  
945       certificate management.
- 946     ▪ The IIS administrator must have Request Certificates permission on the issuing CA.
- 947     ▪ The iis1.int-nccoe.org and iis2.int-nccoe.org servers should be set up per Section [1.5.2.1.2](#).
- 948     ▪ Server iis1.int-nccoe.org should be used for the public-facing web-based cluster.

949       ▪ Server iis2.int-nccoe.org should be used as the internal intranet server.

### 950 1.5.5.2 IIS Installation

951 IIS is the topic of this section, however, the PHP is a key component of the IIS installation for the TLS lab  
952 implementation of the iis1.int-nccoe.org internet-facing server. PHP is a script language and interpreter  
953 and a server-side language that assists IIS and Drupal in serving dynamic web content.

954 Please follow the instructions in the link below to install IIS and PHP. The iis2.int-nccoe.org server can be  
955 set up without PHP installed. Please follow the same instructions below for the iis2 server—skip the PHP  
956 part of the installation process.

957       ▪ [https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/iis/application-frameworks/scenario-build-a-php-website-on-  
958 iis/configuring-step-1-install-iis-and-php](https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/iis/application-frameworks/scenario-build-a-php-website-on-iis/configuring-step-1-install-iis-and-php)

959 Windows 2012 Server provides several methods for enrolling certificates: two of these are the  
960 Certificate Enrollment Policy (CEP) and Certificate Enrollment Service (CES). The CEP web service enables  
961 users and computers to obtain certificate enrollment policy information. This information includes what  
962 types of certificates can be requested and what CAs can issue them. CES provides another web service  
963 that allows users and computers to perform certificate enrollment by using the hypertext transfer  
964 protocol secure (https). To separate traffic, the CES can be installed on a computer that is separate from  
965 the CA. Together with the CEP web service, CES enables policy-based certificate enrollment when the  
966 client computer is not a member of a domain or when a domain member is not connected to the  
967 domain. CEP/CES also enables cross-forest, policy-based certificate enrollment.

968 For the purpose of the lab, the IIS configuration option selected for authentication type for the CES is  
969 **Windows integrated authentication**. This option provides Kerberos authentication for devices  
970 connected to the internal network and joined to a domain. The service account selected is the **Use the  
971 built-in application pool identity**.

972 To configure the SSL protocol to encrypt network traffic, obtain a certificate for IIS, and configure https  
973 on the default website, please refer to the link below.

974       ▪ [https://social.technet.microsoft.com/wiki/contents/articles/12485.configure-sslhttps-on-a-website-  
975 site-in-the-domain-with-an-enterprise-ca.aspx](https://social.technet.microsoft.com/wiki/contents/articles/12485.configure-sslhttps-on-a-website-in-the-domain-with-an-enterprise-ca.aspx)

### 976 1.5.5.3 Apache Web Services

977 The Apache HTTP Server is a free and open-source cross-platform web server software, released under  
978 the terms of Apache License 2.0. Apache is developed and maintained by an open community of  
979 developers under the Apache Software Foundation.

### 980 1.5.5.3.1 Apache Web Services Prerequisites

981 The Apache web server was used extensively throughout the TLS lab architecture to demonstrate the  
982 various means of automated and manual management of TLS certificates. The following servers should  
983 be built in accordance with the instructions in Section [1.5.2.2.2](#).

984     ▪ *apache1.ext-nccoe.org*

985     ▪ *apache2.ext-nccoe.org*

986     ▪ *ws1.int-nccoe.org*

987     ▪ *ws2.int-nccoe.org*

988     ▪ *ws3.int-nccoe.org*

### 989 1.5.5.3.2 Apache Installation

990 PHP is a key component of the Apache installation for the TLS lab implementation of all of the above  
991 web servers. PHP assists Apache and Drupal in serving dynamic web content. Please follow the  
992 instructions below for installing Apache and PHP.

993 For the Apache web server installation, please refer to this guidance: [https://docs.fedoraproject.org/en-](https://docs.fedoraproject.org/en-US/fedora/f28/system-administrators-guide/servers/Web_Servers/)  
994 [US/fedora/f28/system-administrators-guide/servers/Web\\_Servers/](https://docs.fedoraproject.org/en-US/fedora/f28/system-administrators-guide/servers/Web_Servers/)

995 All Drupal installations have dependencies on the base PHP application and its supplemental modules. In  
996 addition to the base PHP installation, also install the additional modules by using the following  
997 command.

```
998     ▪ dnf install drush php php-mysqli php-json php-mbstring php-gd php-dom php-xml  
999        php-simplexml php-cli php-fpm php-mysqlnd php-pdop-gd php-dom php-xml php-  
1000        simplexml php
```

### 1001 1.5.5.3.3 Apache Web Services Configuration

1002 The TLS lab enabled https on the Apache web servers. For instructions on setting up OpenSSL, refer to  
1003 the “Using mod\_ssl” section from the following link: [https://docs.fedoraproject.org/en-US/quick-](https://docs.fedoraproject.org/en-US/quick-docs/getting-started-with-apache-http-server/)  
1004 [docs/getting-started-with-apache-http-server/](https://docs.fedoraproject.org/en-US/quick-docs/getting-started-with-apache-http-server/)

1005 To allow http and https connections through the local Fedora firewall to Apache, perform the following  
1006 steps:

1007     ▪ Type the following command to allow http connections to Apache:

```
1008        iptables-I INPUT -p tcp -dport 80 -mstate --state related, ESTABLISHED, new -j  
1009        ACCEPT
```

1010     ▪ Type the following command to allow https connections to apache:

```
1011        iptables-I INPUT -p tcp -dport 443 -mstate --state related, ESTABLISHED, new -j  
1012        ACCEPT
```

1013 Save the newly created firewall rules with the following command: `iptables-save`

#### 1014 1.5.5.4 Drupal Web Content Management Services

1015 Drupal is a scalable, open platform for web content management. Drupal can be installed on multiple  
1016 OSs, including, Fedora, CentOS, and IIS. The TLS lab utilized Drupal to serve web pages on all three of the  
1017 load balanced web servers in the public-facing DMZ.

##### 1018 1.5.5.4.1 Drupal Prerequisites

- 1019     ▪ PHP 5.5.9 or higher
- 1020     ▪ MySQL 5.5.3 or MariaDB 5.5.20
- 1021     ▪ Apache or IIS web server

##### 1022 1.5.5.4.2 Drupal Web Content Management System Download and Installation

1023 One server should run throughout the setup process, including the database setup. The remaining two  
1024 servers should be set up to point to the existing database once the first server has been set up. All web  
1025 servers should be set up to use MariaDB, **not MS SQL**. Use the guidance below for download, installation,  
1026 and configuration of Drupal to simulate the TLS lab architecture:

- 1027     ▪ download: <https://www.drupal.org/download>
- 1028     ▪ Apache installation and configuration: <https://www.drupal.org/docs/7/install>
- 1029     ▪ IIS installation and configuration: [https://www.drupal.org/docs/develop/local-server-  
1030 setup/windows-development-environment/installing-on-windows-server](https://www.drupal.org/docs/develop/local-server-setup/windows-development-environment/installing-on-windows-server)

##### 1031 1.5.5.4.3 Web Services Drupal Configuration

1032 A web service is a software system designed to support machine-to-machine interaction over a network.  
1033 A web service is normally accessed over a network and then executed on a remote system hosting the  
1034 requested services. Web services protocols normally use application programming interfaces (APIs)  
1035 based on RESTful, simple object access protocol (SOAP), and extensible markup language (XML)  
1036 protocols. It is a best practice to execute web services that carry critical personally identifiable  
1037 information and other sensitive information by using TLS-based encrypted communication channels.

1038 The TLS lab tested implementation of passive monitoring for TLS-enabled web services traffic. The  
1039 rationale behind this approach is covered in the Symantec How-To guide section of this document. In  
1040 Appendix A, Passive Inspection, see the full description of how the passive monitoring network was  
1041 configured.

1042 The web services servers are configured to test the basic passive TLS monitoring capability and are not  
1043 typical of a fully operational web services implementation. The RESTful, SOAP, and XML protocols are  
1044 not used in the TLS Lab. Rudimentary machine-to-machine communication over a secured TLS network  
1045 is configured within each DMZ web server by using JavaScript, PHP, and Drupal's in-line What-You-See-  
1046 Is-What-You-Get (also known as WYSIWYG) hypertext markup language (HTML) content creation editor.

1047 A simple PHP script that was created for each web service prompted each of the three web services  
1048 servers to retrieve and push its current times to the main web server. The JavaScript included in the  
1049 Drupal-based DMZ servers was set to grab updates of the time each second by using https connectivity.  
1050 Use the steps below to re-create this setup.

## 1051 **Part 1: Drupal DMZ Servers Configuration**

- 1052 1. Log in to Drupal by using the content administrator with enough rights to create a basic page.
- 1053 2. Navigate to the following administrative menu item (top of the page on the left side, then use  
1054 the links within the Content administration page itself to navigate to the remaining sections):  
1055 **Content > Add Content > Basic Page**
- 1056 3. Verify that a page is displayed that allows entry of data by using a **Title** and **Body** HTML form.
- 1057 4. Give this page any title.
- 1058 5. Before populating the body section of the page, ensure that the **Text Format** is set to **Full Html**  
1059 **and PHP**. If that selection is not present, enable the **PHP Filter** module in the Drupal **Modules**  
1060 section of Drupal, and try again.
- 1061 6. Upon completing step 5, paste the following code into the body of the new document:  
1062

```
<div id="timeid"></div>
```

```
1063 <?php
```

```
1064 $serveraddress = $_SERVER['SERVER_ADDR'];
```

```
1065 $javagetime = <<<EOFF
```

```
1066 <script>
```

```
1067 mydata = "TEST";
```

```
1068 function ExportValues(mydata) {
```

```
1069     var xmlhttp;
```

```
1070     if (window.XMLHttpRequest) {
```

```
1071         // code for modern browsers
```

```
1072         xmlhttp = new XMLHttpRequest();
```

```
1073     } else {
```

```
1074         // code for IE6, IE5
```

```
1075         xmlhttp = new ActiveXObject("Microsoft.XMLHTTP");
```

```
1076     }
```

```
1077     xmlhttp.onreadystatechange = function() {
```

```
1078         if (this.readyState == 4 && this.status == 200) {
```

```
1079             document.getElementById("timeid").innerHTML =
```

```
1080             this.responseText;
```

```
1081         }
```

```
1082     };
```

```
1083     xmlhttp.open("GET", "https://$serveraddress/PHPTIME.php", true);
```

```
1084     xmlhttp.send();
```

```

1088     }
1089
1090     ExportValues(mydata);
1091     setInterval(function(){ ExportValues(mydata); }, 1000);
1092 </script>
1093
1094     EOFF;
1095     echo $javagetime;
1096
1097     ?>

```

- 1098 7. Click on the **Publishing options** tab below, then make sure that **Published** and **Promoted to front page** are selected as options.
- 1099
- 1100 8. **Save** the page.
- 1101 9. Repeat these steps for each web services server.

## 1102 Part II: Drupal DMZ Servers Configuration

1103 The code above in Part I instructs the DMZ web server to connect to itself and execute the script  
1104 *PHPTIME.php* within its own Drupal directory. This file will be created here in Part II. The *PHPTIME.php*  
1105 file uses a curl script to simulate secure TLS server-to-server communication between the DMZ web  
1106 server and its designated web services server. Follow the steps below to create this file on *all* the DMZ  
1107 web servers.

- 1108 1. Log in to the local web administration account for each of the three DMZ-based web servers.  
1109 Navigate to the local Drupal stored file system where Drupal is served to the public. On Apache  
1110 servers, this will be `/var/www/html/<DRUPAL DIRECTORY NAME USED>`. On IIS servers, this will  
1111 be the Drupal document root for the website instantiation.
- 1112 2. Launch a text editor (notepad++ or notepad for Windows or VIM or VI editor for Linux), then  
1113 paste the following into that file:

```

1114 <?php
1115     header("Access-Control-Allow-Origin: *");
1116     $ch = curl_init();
1117
1118     curl_setopt($ch, CURLOPT_URL, 'https://ws2.int-nccoe.org');
1119     curl_setopt($ch, CURLOPT_RETURNTRANSFER, 1);
1120     curl_setopt($ch, CURLOPT_SSL_VERIFYHOST, false);
1121     curl_setopt($ch, CURLOPT_SSL_VERIFYPEER, false);
1122
1123     $result = curl_exec($ch);
1124     if (curl_errno($ch)) {
1125         echo 'Error:' . curl_error($ch);
1126     }
1127     curl_close ($ch);
1128

```

```

1129         echo $result;
1130     ?>
1131     3. The following line will need to be changed on each DMZ web server and customized with the
1132         individual host name for the web services server assigned to the specific DMZ web server. Each
1133         DMZ web server should have its own individual web services server:
1134         curl_setopt($ch, CURLOPT_URL,'https://CHANGE TO YOUR MACHINE NAME');
1135     4. Save this file with a .php extension into the root base directory of the Drupal site created for this
1136         demonstration.

```

### 1137 Web Services Server Configuration

1138 The web services server must be configured to check its own time and send the results back to the  
1139 requesting DMZ web server via secure communication. Use the following guidance to set up the web  
1140 services server.

1141 1. Log in to the command line for each web services server, and navigate to the Apache document  
1142 root configured in the *httpd.conf* file for Apache. In most cases it is */var/www/html*.

1143 2. Open a VIM/VI editor and paste the following into that file:

```

1144 <?php
1145
1146 $sourceip = $_SERVER['HTTP_ORIGIN'];
1147
1148 if (isset($_SERVER["HTTP_ORIGIN"]) === true) {
1149     $origin = $_SERVER["HTTP_ORIGIN"];
1150     $allowed_origins = array(
1151
1152         // ANY
1153         $_SERVER['HTTP_ORIGIN']
1154
1155         // SPECIFIC
1156         "https://192.168.4.2",
1157         "https://apache1.ext-nccoe.org",
1158         "https://tls.nccoe.org",
1159         "https://apache2.ext-nccoe.org",
1160         "https://192.168.4.3",
1161         "https://iis1.ext-nccoe.org",
1162         "https://192.168.4.4"
1163     );
1164     if (in_array($origin, $allowed_origins, true) === true) {
1165         header('Access-Control-Allow-Origin: ' . $origin);
1166         header('Access-Control-Allow-Credentials: true');
1167         header('Access-Control-Allow-Methods: POST');
1168         header('Access-Control-Allow-Headers: Content-Type');
1169     }
1170     if ($_SERVER["REQUEST_METHOD"] === "OPTIONS") {

```

```
1171         exit; // OPTIONS request wants only the policy, we can stop
1172     here
1173     }
1174 }
1175
1176 $timestime = exec('date');
1177
1178 echo "WEB SERVICES SERVER2's TIME AN DATE IS: ". $timestime;
1179
1180 ?>
```

- 1181 3. Remember to save the file in the document root directory under the same name used in the
- 1182 previous section with the .php extension.
- 1183 4. Ensure the Apache service is running: `service httpd restart`

#### 1184 **Web Services Testing Process**

- 1185 1. Navigate to the public IP of the Drupal web servers (should be the F5 virtual ip or if behind a
- 1186 firewall, the IP address of the firewall used to NAT to the web server cluster behind the F5).
- 1187 2. There should be at least three Basic Pages listed on the main site landing page. These should be
- 1188 the pages created in this section to point to the web services server.
- 1189 3. Choose one by clicking on its title or **Read more** link beside the title.
- 1190 4. The time should be automatically updating each second to indicate the web server is using its
- 1191 designated web services server to check time via TLS connection (indicated by the https).
- 1192 5. If the time updates are not being seen, there could be an issue with the browser application
- 1193 accepting the valid certificate. If self-signed untrusted certificates instead of a trusted certificate
- 1194 are being used on the DMZ web servers, then the web client used (Chrome, Internet Explorer, or
- 1195 Edge) may not trust the individual server being accessed. To discover the issue, press the F12
- 1196 key on the keyboard, then select the **Console** tab. If there is an error stating
- 1197 `Net::ERR_CERT_AUTHORITY_INVALID` or any other certificate validation error with an associated
- 1198 IP address, open a new tab and navigate directly to the IP address listed by using 192.168.3.85.
- 1199 If there is the standard certificate error for an untrusted site, then accept the risk if this is a
- 1200 laboratory environment. The time should pop up afterward, and the other tabs with the Drupal
- 1201 time connection will also work now. If this is production system, then a valid certificate will need
- 1202 to be placed on the machine with the IP listed. The client that browses that machine should
- 1203 trust the certificate.

#### 1204 **1.5.5.5 Mail Services**

1205 The TLS lab utilizes a Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) service to accept alerts from all the

1206 configured components on the network. The SMTP service was created on a Linux server running

1207 Fedora. The mail system was composed of a Dovecot Mail Transfer Agent (MTA) and a Postfix Mail User

1208 Agent (MUA). The following section provides guidance on download, installation, and configuration of  
1209 each service.

#### 1210 1.5.5.5.1 Mail Services Prerequisites

1211 Before installing Dovecot and Postfix, set up the mail1.int-nccoe.org server by using the guidance in  
1212 Section [1.5.2.2.2](#).

#### 1213 1.5.5.5.2 Installation and Configuration of Mail Services Postfix Mail Transfer Agent

1214 Postfix is a free and open-source mail transfer agent that routes and delivers electronic mail. To  
1215 download and install the Postfix MTA, follow the instructions in the following link:

- 1216     ▪ [https://docs.fedoraproject.org/en-US/Fedora/12/html/Deployment\\_Guide/s3-email-mta-  
1217 postfix-conf.html](https://docs.fedoraproject.org/en-US/Fedora/12/html/Deployment_Guide/s3-email-mta-postfix-conf.html)

1218     Note: The actual *main.cf* file used in the TLS lab build is in Appendix F.

#### 1219 1.5.5.5.3 Installation and Configuration of Mail Services Dovecot Mail Transfer Agent

1220 Dovecot is an open-source Internet Message Access Protocol (IMAP) and Post Office Protocol 3 Mail  
1221 User Agent server for Linux systems. It allows TLS administrators to manage and view email received by  
1222 the Postfix server. To download and install the Dovecot MUA, please refer to the instructions in the  
1223 following link:

- 1224     ▪ <https://wiki.dovecot.org/BasicConfiguration>

1225     Note: The actual *dovecot.conf* file used in the TLS lab build is in Appendix F.

#### 1226 1.5.5.6 Log Aggregation and Correlation Services

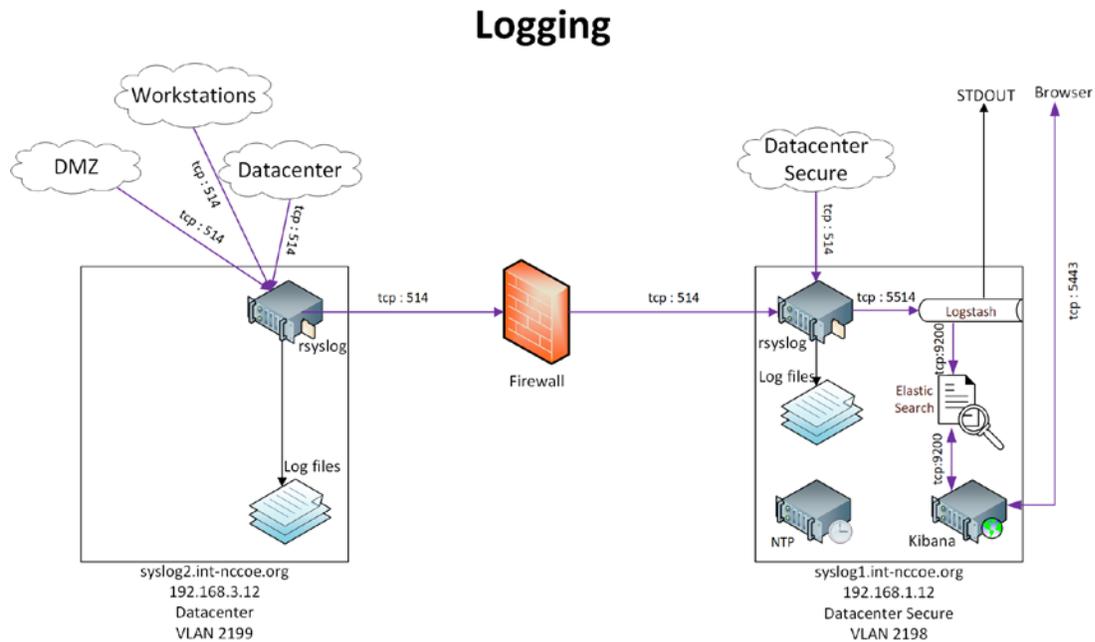
1227 “ELK” stands for three open-source projects:

- 1228     ▪ Elasticsearch—a search and analytics engine
- 1229     ▪ Logstash—a server-side data processing pipeline that ingests data from multiple sources  
1230         simultaneously, transforms it, and then sends it to a “stash” like Elasticsearch
- 1231     ▪ Kibana—lets users visualize data with charts and graphs in Elasticsearch

1232 The TLS lab utilized the ELK stack log aggregation and correlation services to manage and visualize the  
1233 remote logging services for all capable supplemental and collaborator products.

1234 The following diagram depicts a view of the TLS lab logging infrastructure.

1235 Figure 1-3 TLS Lab Logging Infrastructure



1236

#### 1237 1.5.5.6.1 Prerequisites for Log Aggregation and Correlation Services

1238 In accordance with the logging architecture above, the TLS lab utilized the hosts below. Both hosts must  
1239 be configured with Fedora, based on the OS configuration guidance in Section 1.5.2.2.2. Configure both  
1240 servers with rsyslog.

- 1241     ▪ syslog1.int-nccoe.org
- 1242     ▪ syslog2.int-nccoe.org
- 1243     ▪ Logstash requires Java 8 or Java 11.

#### 1244 1.5.5.6.2 Remote System Logging Services

1245 Rsyslog is an open-source software utility used on UNIX and UNIX-like computer systems for forwarding  
1246 log messages in an IP network.

- 1247     ▪ To install rsyslog use the command `dnf install rsyslog`

1248 For more information on configuring rsyslog, refer to the following link:

- 1249     ▪ [https://docs.fedoraproject.org/en-US/fedora/rawhide/system-administrators-  
1250 guide/monitoring-and-automation/Viewing\\_and\\_Managing\\_Log\\_Files/#](https://docs.fedoraproject.org/en-US/fedora/rawhide/system-administrators-guide/monitoring-and-automation/Viewing_and_Managing_Log_Files/#)

1251 **1.5.5.6.3 Elasticsearch Installation and Configuration**

1252 Elasticsearch is a search engine based on the Lucene library. It provides a distributed, multitenant-  
1253 capable full-text search engine with an http web interface and schema-free JavaScript Object Notation  
1254 documents. Elasticsearch is developed in Java.

1255 To install and configure Elasticsearch, please refer to the following link:

- 1256
  - <https://www.elastic.co/guide/en/elasticsearch/reference/current/rpm.html>

1257 **1.5.5.6.4 Kibana Installation and Configuration**

1258 Kibana is an open-source data visualization plug-in for Elasticsearch and provides visualization  
1259 capabilities on top of the content indexed on an Elasticsearch cluster. Users can create bar, line, and  
1260 scatter plots (or pie charts) and maps on top of large volumes of data.

1261 To install and configure Kibana, please refer to the following link:

- 1262
  - <https://www.elastic.co/guide/en/kibana/current/rpm.html>

1263 **1.5.5.6.5 Logstash Installation and Configuration**

1264 Logstash is an open-source, server-side data processing pipeline that ingests data from a multitude of  
1265 sources simultaneously, transforms it, and then sends it to the user's favorite stash.

1266 To install and configure Logstash, please refer to the following link:

- 1267
  - <https://www.elastic.co/guide/en/logstash/current/installing-logstash.html#package-repositories>

1269 **1.5.6 DevOps Services**

1270 To show the automated management of TLS server certificates in a container-based environment, we  
1271 used Kubernetes with Docker, NGINX, and Jetstack Cert-Manager.

1272 **1.5.6.1.1 Kubernetes Installation and Configuration**

1273 Instructions for installing Kubernetes are available at the following link:

- 1274
  - <https://kubernetes.io/docs/setup/>

1275 We installed Kubernetes on three CentOS Linux systems (cluster1, cluster2, cluster3.int-nccoe.org).

1276 **1.5.6.1.2 Weave**

1277 We used Weave as the virtual network to facilitate communications between the Kubernetes master  
1278 and nodes. Instructions for installing Weave can be found at the following link:

- 1279
  - <https://www.weave.works/docs/net/latest/install/>

1280 [1.5.6.1.3 Docker Installation and Configuration](#)

1281 We used the community edition of Docker with Kubernetes. Instructions for installing Docker on CentOS  
1282 are found at the following link:

- 1283
  - <https://docs.docker.com/install/linux/docker-ce/centos/>

1284 [1.5.6.1.4 Jetstack Cert-Manager Installation and Configuration](#)

1285 We installed Jetstack Cert-Manager on Kubernetes with the necessary components to request  
1286 certificates from Venafi TPP by using the following command:

1287 

```
kubectl apply -f https://raw.githubusercontent.com/jetstack \
```

```
1288 /cert-manager/venafi/contrib/manifests/cert-manager/with-rbac.yaml
```

1289 This automatically created a namespace named “cert-manager,” which we used for the rest of our  
1290 configuration.

1291 [1.5.6.1.5 NGINX Installation and Configuration](#)

1292 NGINX was used as the web server and ingress on Kubernetes. Certificates were associated with the  
1293 NGINX ingress. Instructions for installing and configuring NGINX on Kubernetes are found at the  
1294 following link:

- 1295
  - <https://www.nginx.com/>

1296 In our implementation, we installed NGINX on Kubernetes with the following command into the cert-  
1297 manager namespace.

1298 

```
kubectl create deployment nginx --image=nginx -n cert-manager
```

1299 We then created a service for NGINX by using the following command:

1300 

```
kubectl create service nodeport nginx --tcp=80:80 -n cert-manager
```

1301 

## 2 Product Installation and Configuration Guides

1302 This section of the practice guide contains detailed instructions for installing and configuring all of the  
1303 TLS collaborator products used to build an instance of the example solution. Each major subsection (2.1,  
1304 2.2, 2.x) is dedicated to a collaborator’s product capability. Within each product capability section,  
1305 descriptions of each product capability align with a Day 0, Day 1, and Day N concept. It is important to  
1306 note that each day builds on the previous day(s) for prerequisites, and each collaborator capability does  
1307 the same. So, if the implementer’s intent is to fully replicate the TLS lab environment, then following the  
1308 order of days and component installations will help make that endeavor more successful.

- 1309
  - **Day 0** provides how-to guidance from a first-day installation perspective. It is assumed the  
1310 implementer is getting acclimated with the collaborator product. The implementer should  
1311 complete all prerequisites, which include complete installations of other collaborator products  
1312 in some instances or the Supporting Architecture described in Section 1.3. The expectation is for

1313 only basic crucial configuration functions to get the system up and running. Otherwise, other  
1314 configurations should be executed on Day 1, or there may be issues with prerequisites that have  
1315 not been executed.

1316 

- **Day 1** assumes all Day 0 activities have been completed, including all prerequisites. Expected  
1317 activities include how-to guidance on more advanced security configuration of functioning in the  
1318 TLS environment. Day 1 also assists the implementer with configuration guidance for integration  
1319 with any other collaborator product capabilities.

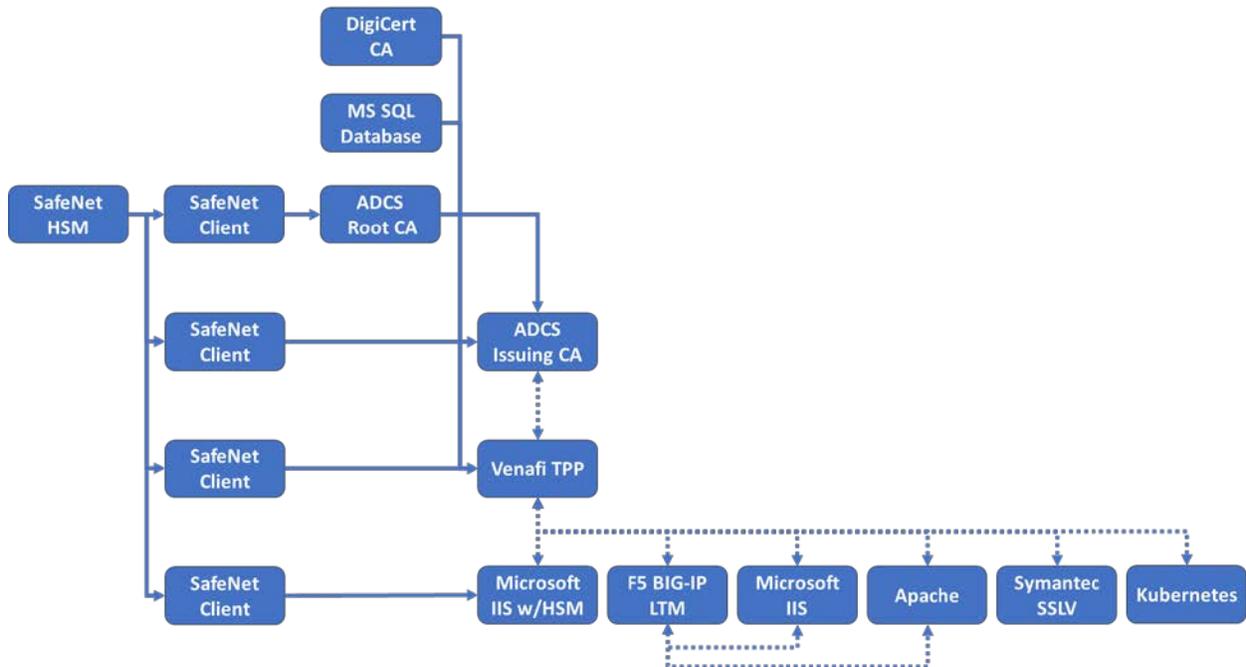
1320 

- **Day N** assists the implementer with all necessary configurations and integrations of systems that  
1321 help facilitate ongoing security management and maintenance. In most cases, the minimum Day  
1322 N configuration and integration include security event audit and event logging for TLS systems.  
1323 In all cases, there are variations of services and offerings, which each collaborator describes in  
1324 their respective sections.

## 1325 2.1 Product Installation Sequence (Example Build)

1326 Figure 2-1 shows the dependencies among components deployed for the example build. A solid line with  
1327 a single arrow signifies hard dependencies. The component from which the arrow points should be  
1328 installed before the component to which the arrow points. This facilitates phased and secure  
1329 deployment. A dashed line with a double arrow indicates that integration between the components is  
1330 not dependent on the installation sequence (i.e., either component can be installed first).

1331 **Figure 2-1 Overview of Dependencies Among Components Deployed for the Example Build**



1332

## 1333 2.2 SafeNet AT Luna SA 1700 Hardware Security Module

1334 HSMs are specialized hardware devices dedicated to maintaining the security of sensitive data  
1335 throughout its life cycle. HSMs provide tamper-evident and intrusion-resistant protection of critical keys  
1336 and other secrets, and off-loading of processing-intensive cryptographic operations. By performing  
1337 cryptographic operations within the HSM, sensitive data never leaves the secure confines of the  
1338 hardened device.

1339 The SafeNet AT Luna SA for Government is a network-attached HSM with multiple partitions to  
1340 effectively provide a many-in-one solution to multiple tenants—each with its own security officer  
1341 management credentials. Depending on security needs, the Luna SA can be used with or without a  
1342 secure personal identification number entry device (PED) for controlling management access to the HSM  
1343 partitions. Utilizing the PED takes the HSM from a Federal Information Processing Standards (FIPS) 140-2  
1344 Level 2 certified device to Level 3. The Luna SA also comes in two performance models: the lower  
1345 performance 1700, and the high-performance 7000 for transaction-intensive use cases.

### 1346 2.2.1 Day 0: Product Installation and Standard Configuration

#### 1347 2.2.1.1 Prerequisites

##### 1348 2.2.1.1.1 Rack Space

1349 Installation of the HSM requires rack space with the following characteristics:

- 1350     ▪ standard 1u 1 gin rack mount chassis
- 1351     ▪ dimensions: 19" x 21" x 1.725" (482.6 millimeters [mm] x 533.4 mm x 43.815 mm)
- 1352     ▪ weight capacity: 28 pounds (lb) (12.7 kilograms [kg])
- 1353     ▪ input voltage: 100-240 V.50-60 hertz
- 1354     ▪ power consumption: 180 watts (W) maximum, 155 W typical
- 1355     ▪ temperature: operating 0 degrees Celsius (C)–35 degrees C, storage 20 degrees C–60 degrees C
- 1356     ▪ relative humidity: 5% to 95% (38 degrees C) noncondensing

##### 1357 2.2.1.1.2 Networking

1358 One of two approaches to networking may be used. The steps for the commands in this document  
1359 assume the NCCoE's laboratory networking environment will be replicated. An organization may also  
1360 opt to use its own network settings. In either case, the following Luna SA HSM appliance parameters  
1361 information will be needed:

- 1362     ▪ IP address that will be assigned to this device (Static IP is recommended)
- 1363     ▪ Host name for the HSM appliance (registered with network DNS)

- 1364      ■ a domain name where the device will reside
- 1365      ■ default gateway IP address
- 1366      ■ DNS Name Server IP address(es)
- 1367      ■ Search Domain name(s)
- 1368      ■ device subnet mask
- 1369      ■ Ethernet device (use eth0, which is the uppermost network jack on the HSM appliance back
- 1370          panel, closest to the power supply, and labeled 1 ( ))

1371 The network must be configured for optimal use of Luna appliances. The following bandwidth and  
 1372 latency recommendations are optimal for performance settings:

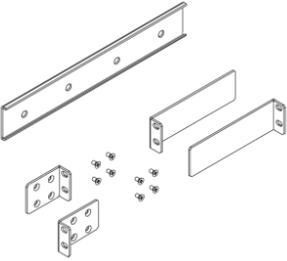
- 1373      ■ bandwidth
  - 1374          • minimum supported: 10 megabit (Mb) half-duplex
  - 1375          • recommended: at least 100 Mb full duplex—full gigabit Ethernet is supported
- 1376          Note: Ensure the network switch is set to AUTO negotiation, as the Luna appliance  
 1377                  negotiates at AUTO. If the network switch is set to use other than automatic  
 1378                  negotiation, there is a risk that the switch and the Luna appliance will settle on a much  
 1379                  slower speed than is actually possible in the organization’s network conditions.
- 1380      ■ network latency
  - 1381          • maximum supported: 500 milliseconds (ms)
  - 1382          • recommended: 0.5 ms

1383 **2.2.1.1.3 Unpacking the Appliance**

1384 Follow this checklist to verify that all of items required for the installation are in hand.

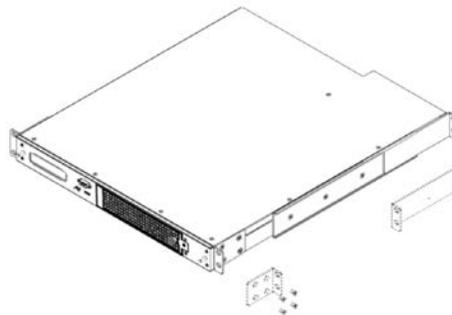
Qty	Item
1	<div style="text-align: center;">  <p>Luna SA HSM appliance</p> </div>

Qty	Item
2	 <p>power supply cord (one for each power supply; style to suit country for which was ordered)</p>
1	 <p>null modem serial cable</p>
1	 <p>Universal Serial Bus 2.0 to RS232 serial adapter</p>

Qty	Item
1	 <p>Set of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- 2 front mounting brackets with screws</li> <li>- 2 side bracket guides</li> <li>- 2 sliding rear brackets (Fit into the guides for rear support adjustable positioning.)</li> </ul>
1	 <p>client/software development kit (SDK) software</p>

1385 **2.2.1.2 Rack-Mount the Appliance**

1386 1. Install and adjust rails and brackets to suit the equipment rack.



1387

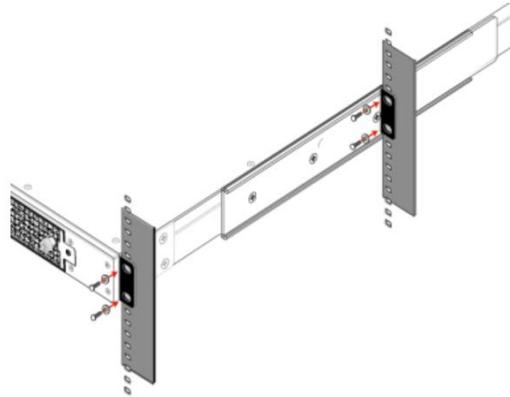
1388 2. Mount the appliance in the equipment rack. Alternatively, ignore the rails and mounting tabs, and

1389 rest the Luna SA appliance on a mounting tray or shelf suitable for the organization’s specific style

1390 and brand of equipment rack.

1391 **CAUTION:** Support the weight of the appliance until all four brackets are secured.

1392

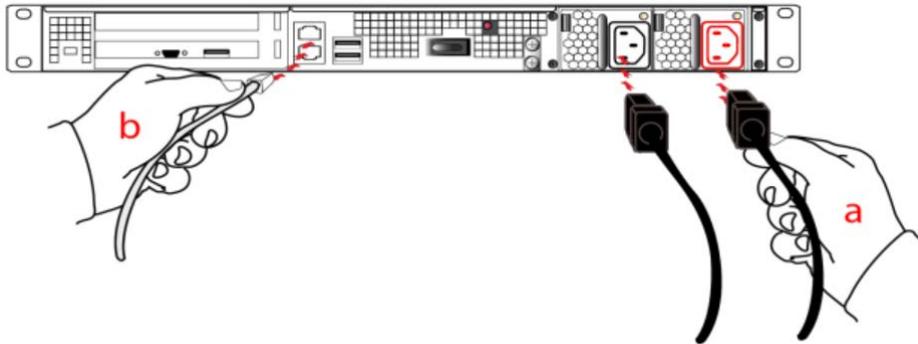


1393

1394

1395

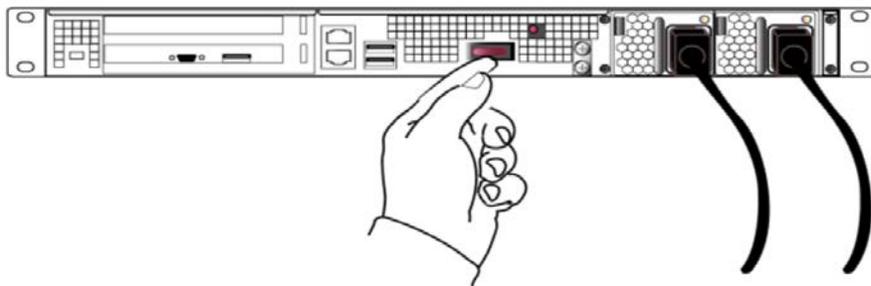
3. Insert the power (a) and network (b) cables at the rear panel. For proper redundancy and best reliability, the power cables should connect to two completely independent power sources.



1396

1397

4. Press and release the Start/Stop switch, on the rear panel.



1398

### 1399 2.2.1.3 Initial Appliance Configuration

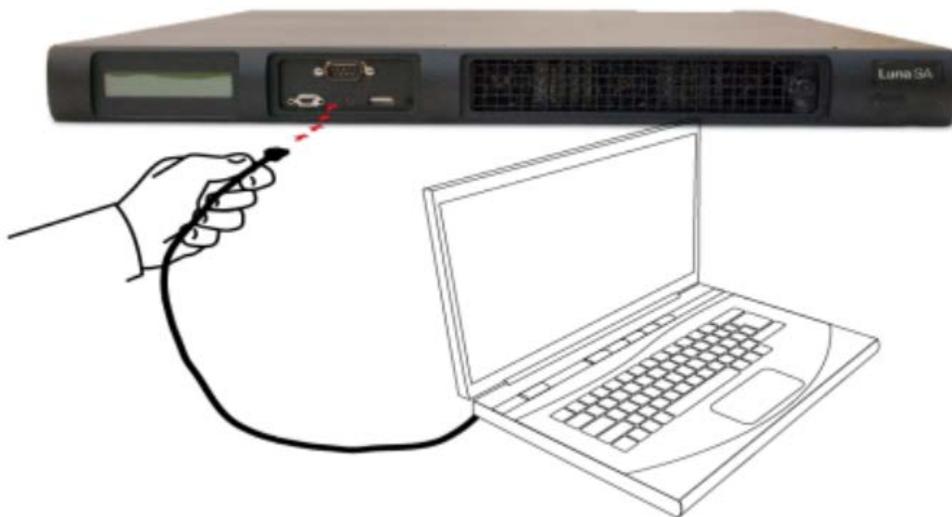
1400 This section describes the process to prepare the new HSM Server and one client system for operation  
1401 with the application. It includes the following steps:

- 1402
  - process for first-time login and changing passwords

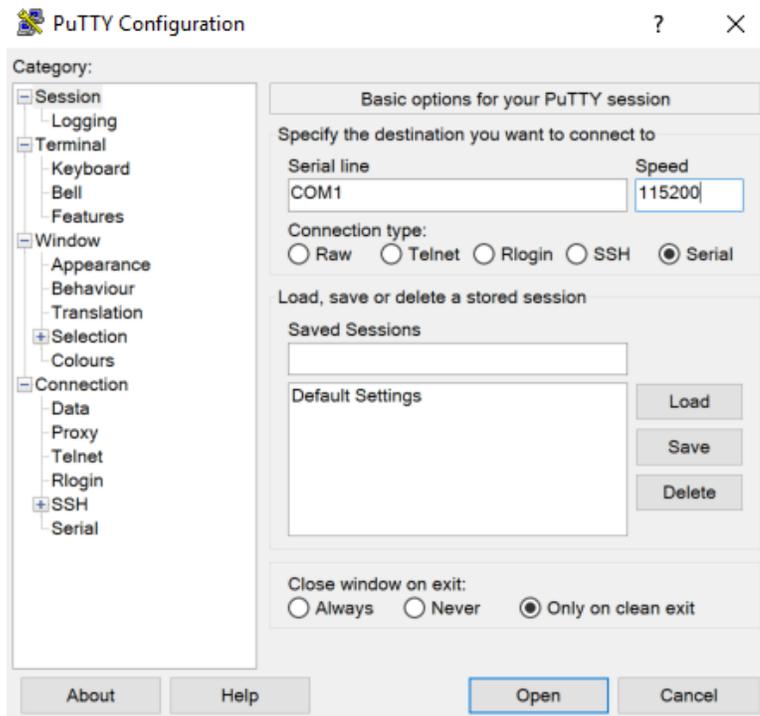
- 1403      ■ verify and set the date and time
- 1404      ■ configure HSM appliance's IP and network parameters (using static or Dynamic Host
- 1405      Configuration Protocol [DHCP]. In general, we strongly recommend against using DHCP for HSM
- 1406      appliances.)
- 1407      ■ make network connections (To make a network connection, refer to Section 1.1.1.3.)
- 1408      ■ HSM initialization process
- 1409      ■ restart services so configuration changes can take effect

1410      **2.2.1.3.1 Process for First-Time Login and Changing Passwords**

- 1411      1. To perform initial login to the HSM appliance, connect a serial cable to serial port on the front of
- 1412      the appliance.



- 1413      2. On the management laptop, open the PuTTY application and select a **Connection type** of **Serial**
- 1414      with a **Speed** of **115200**.
- 1415



1416

1417

3. Navigate to the **Serial** Category on the bottom left side of the window.

1418

4. Configure the serial connection to support the SSL Visibility Appliance's console speeds by selecting the following options:

1419

1420

- **Speed (baud):** 115200

1421

- **Data bits:** 8

1422

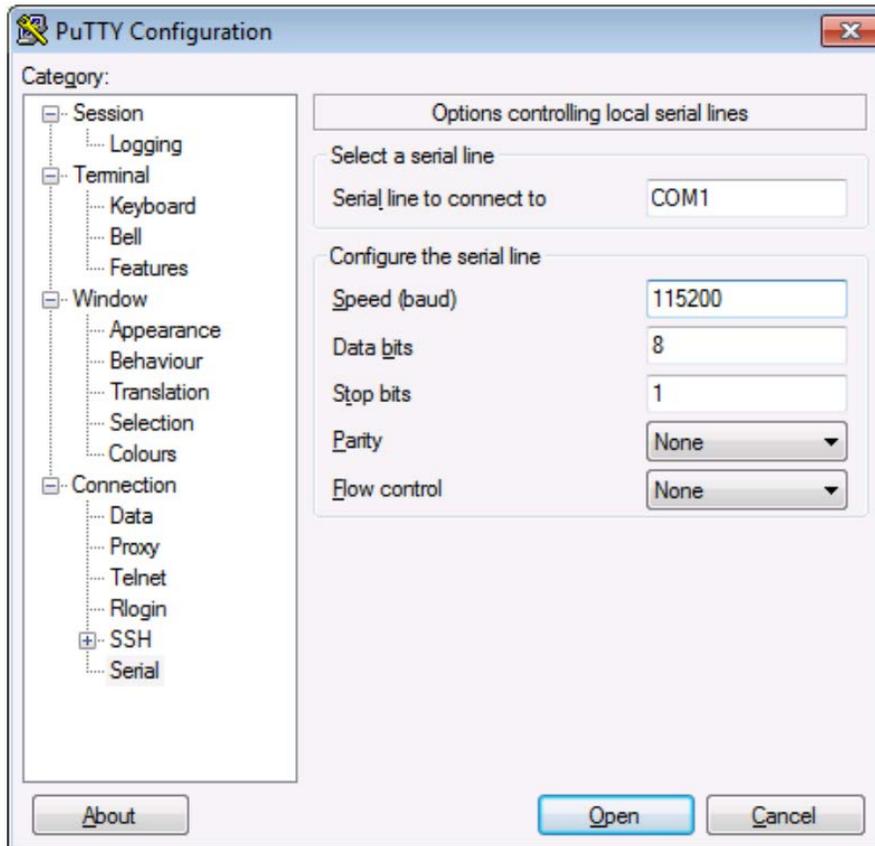
- **Stop bits:** 1

1423

- **Parity:** None

1424

- **Flow control:** None



- 1425
- 1426 5. Log in to the appliance by using the default credentials of:
- 1427     ▪ **username:** bootstrap
- 1428     ▪ **password:** bootstrap
- 1429 6. For security purposes, the user is immediately prompted to change the factory-default password
- 1430 for the admin account.

1431 [localhost] ttyS0 login: admin

1432 Password:

1433 You are required to change your password immediately (root enforced)

1434 Changing password for admin

1435 (current) UNIX password:

1436 A valid password should be a mix of upper and lower case letters, digits, and

1437 other characters. You can use an 8 character long

1438 password with characters from at least 3 of these 4 classes.

1439 An upper case letter that begins the password and a digit that

1440 ends it do not count towards the number of character classes used.

```
1441 Enter new password:
1442 Re-type new password:
1443 Luna SA 5.4.0-14 Command Line Shell - Copyright (c) 2001-2013 SafeNet, Inc. All
1444 rights reserved.
1445 Command Result: 0 (Success)
1446 lunash:>
```

1447 The above represents a local serial connection; text will differ slightly for a Secure Shell (SSH)  
1448 connection.

1449 Note: The username and passwords are case-sensitive.

1450 Note: To protect the HSM appliance and its HSM from vulnerabilities due to weak  
1451 passwords, new passwords must be at least eight characters in length and must include  
1452 characters from at least three of the following four groups:

- 1453 – lowercase alphabetic (abcd...xyz)
- 1454 – uppercase alphabetic (ABCD...XYZ)
- 1455 – numeric (0123456789)
- 1456 – special (nonalphanumeric, #\*@\$%&...)

1457 Note: Login must occur within two minutes of opening an administration session, or the  
1458 connection will time out.

#### 1459 2.2.1.3.2 Date and Time

1460 To configure the HSM's date and time, perform the following steps:

- 1461 1. Verify the current date and time on the HSM Server.
- 1462 2. At the lunash prompt, type the command:  
1463 `lunash:> status date`
- 1464 3. If the date, time, or time zone is incorrect for the location, change them by using the `lunash`  
1465 `sysconf` command. For example: `lunash:> sysconf timezone set Canada/Eastern`  
1466 `Timezone set to Canada/Eastern`
- 1467 4. Use `sysconf time` to set the system time and date <HH:MM YYYYMMDD> in the format shown.  
1468 Note that the time is set on a 24-hour clock (00:00 to 23:59).  
1469 `lunash:> sysconf time 12:55 20190410 Sun April 10 12:55:00 EDT 2019`
- 1470 5. Optionally to configure Network Time Protocol (NTP), use the following command:  
1471 `lunash:> sysconf ntp addserver 192.168.1.12`
- 1472 6. Activate the NTP service with the following command:  
1473 `sysconf ntp enable`

1474 **2.2.1.3.3 Network Configuration**

- 1475 1. Use the `network show` command to display the current settings and to see how they need to be  
1476 modified for the network.

```
1477 lunash:>net show
1478     Hostname:           HSM
1479     Domain:             int-nccoe.org
1480     IP Address (eth0):  192.168.1.13
1481     HW Address (eth0):  00:15:B2:AB:D6:D6
1482     Mask (eth0):        255.255.255.0
1483     Gateway (eth0):    192.168.1.1
1484
```

```
1485     Name Servers:       192.168.1.6
1486     Search Domain(s):  <not set>
```

```
1487     Kernel IP routing table
1488     Destination Gateway Genmask Flags Metric Ref Use Iface
1489     Link status
1490     eth0: Configured
1491           Link detected: yes
1492     eth1: Configured
1493           Link detected: no
1494
1495     Command Result : 0 (Success)
1496     lunash:>
```

- 1497 2. Use `network hostname` to set the host name of the HSM appliance (use lowercase characters).

```
1498 lunash:> network hostname HSM
```

- 1499 3. Use `network domain` to set the name of the network domain in which the HSM Server (appliance) is  
1500 to operate.

```
1501 lunash:> net domain int-nccoe.org
```

- 1502 4. Use `network dns add nameserver` to set the Nameserver IP Address (address for the local name  
1503 server).

```
1504 lunash:> net dns add nameserver 192.168.1.6
```

- 1505 5. Use `net dns add searchdomain` to set the DNS Search Domain (the search list to be used for host  
1506 name lookups).

```
1507 lunash:> net dns add searchdomain int-nccoe.org
```

- 1508 6. Use `network interface` to change network configuration settings.

1509  
1510 All of the `network interface` parameters are required for the IP setup of the Ethernet device and  
1511 must be set at the same time for the HSM appliance to connect with the network.

```
1512 [HSM] lunash:>net interface -device eth0 -ip 192.168.1.13 -netmask 255.255.255.0 -  
1513 gateway 192.168.1.1
```

- 1514 7. View the new network settings with `network show`.

```
1515 lunash:> network show
```

1516 **2.2.1.3.4 Generate a New HSM Server Certificate**

1517 Although the HSM appliance came with a server certificate, good security practice dictates that a new  
1518 one be generated.

1519 1. Use `sysconf regenCert` to generate a new server certificate:

```
1520  
1521 lunash:> sysconf regenCert 192.168.1.13  
1522 WARNING !! This command will overwrite the current server certificate and private  
1523 key.  
1524 All clients will have to add this server again with this new certificate.  
1525 If you are sure that you wish to proceed, then type 'proceed', otherwise type  
1526 'quit'  
1527 > proceed  
1528 Proceeding...  
1529 'sysconf regenCert' successful. NTLS must be (re)started before clients can  
1530 connect.  
1531 Please use the 'ntls show' command to ensure that NTLS is bound to an appropriate  
1532 network device or IP address/hostname for the network device(s) NTLS should be  
1533 active on. Use 'ntls bind' to change this binding if necessary.  
1534  
1535 Command Result: 0 (Success)  
1536 lunash:>
```

1537 **2.2.1.3.5 Bind the Network Trust Link Service**

1538 From the factory, the network trust link service (NTLS) is bound to the loop-back device by default. To  
1539 use the appliance on the network, bind the NTLS to one of the two Ethernet ports— ETH0 or ETH1—or  
1540 to a host name or IP address. Use the `ntls show` command to see current status.

1541 1. Use `ntls bind` to bind the service:

```
1542 lunash:>ntls bind eth0 -bind 192.168.1.13  
1543 Success: NTLS binding hostname or IP Address 192.168.1.13 set.  
1544 NOTICE: The NTLS service must be restarted for new settings to take effect.  
1545 If you are sure that you wish to restart NTLS, then type 'proceed', otherwise  
1546 type 'quit'  
1547 > proceed  
1548 Proceeding...  
1549 Restarting NTLS service...  
1550 Stopping ntlsl: [ OK ]  
1551 Starting ntlsl: [ OK ]  
1552 Command Result : 0 (Success)  
1553 [myluna] lunash:>ntls show  
1554 NTLS bound to network device: eth0 IP Address: "192.168.1.13" (eth0)  
1555 Command Result : 0 (Success)
```

---

1556 **NOTE:** The “Stopping ntlsl” operation might fail in the above example, because NTLS is not  
1557 yet running on a new HSM appliance—ignore this message. The service restarts regardless  
1558 if the stop was needed.

---

1559 [2.2.1.3.6 Enabling Federal Information Processing Standards 140-2 Mode](#)

1560 In many areas of the information security industry, validations against independent or government  
1561 standards are considered a desirable or essential attribute of a product. NIST’s FIPS 140 is the pre-  
1562 eminent standard in the field of cryptography. Enabling FIPS 140-2 ensures the HSM uses strong  
1563 cryptographic modules in its operations.

- 1564 1. Log in to the APPLIANCE management console (LunaSH) as admin.
  - 1565 a. SSH into the APPLIANCE
  - 1566 b. Use these credentials: Username: admin Password: \*\*\*\*YOUR admin PASSWORD\*\*\*\*
- 1567 2. Check if FIPS 140 mode is enabled.
  - 1568 a. Command: `hsm show`
  - 1569 b. In the results, look for “The HSM is in FIPS 140-2 approved operation mode.” If this is seen,  
1570 then stop: FIPS 140-2 mode is already enabled on the HSM. Otherwise, continue.
- 1571 3. Log in to the admin role.
  - 1572 a. Command: `hsm login`
  - 1573 b. Password: \*\*\*\*YOUR admin PASSWORD\*\*\*\*
- 1574 4. View HSM Capabilities and Policies.
  - 1575 a. Command: `hsm showPolicies`
  - 1576 b. In the results, look for “Allow non-FIPS algorithms” and record its value and code.
- 1577 5. Edit HSM Capabilities and Policies.
  - 1578 a. Command: `hsm changePolicy -policy <code> -value <desired_value>`
    - 1579 i. `hsm changePolicy -policy 12 -value 1`
    - 1580 ii. When prompted type: `proceed`
- 1581 6. Confirm FIPS 140 mode is enabled.
  - 1582 a. Command: `hsm show`
  - 1583 b. In the results, look for “The HSM is in FIPS 140-2 approved operation mode.” If this is seen,  
1584 then stop: FIPS 140-2 mode is already enabled on the HSM. Otherwise, further investigation is  
1585 required.

1586 [2.2.1.4 HSM Initialization](#)

1587 In this section, initialize the HSM portion of the Luna appliance and set any required policies. In normal  
1588 operations, these actions are performed when first commissioning the Luna appliance.

1589 [2.2.1.4.1 Initialize a Password-Authenticated HSM](#)

- 1590 1. To initialize the HSM, type the following command:

1591 `hsm -init -label HSM`

```
1592 [HSM] lunash:> hsm -init -label HSM
1593 > Please enter a password for the security officer
1594 > *****
1595 Please re-enter password to confirm:
1596 > *****
1597 Please enter the cloning domain to use for initializing this
1598 HSM (press <enter> to use the default domain):
```

```
1599 > *****
1600 Please re-enter domain to confirm:
1601 > *****
1602 CAUTION: Are you sure you wish to re-initialize this HSM?
1603 All partitions and data will be erased.
1604 Type 'proceed' to initialize the HSM, or 'quit'
1605 to quit now.
1606 >proceed
1607 `hsm - init' successful.
```

1608 2. When activity is complete, lunash displays a “success” message.

## 1609 2.2.2 Day 1: Product Integration Configuration

### 1610 2.2.2.1 Prerequisites

- 1611 ▪ NTL—This step will need to be completed for each system; refer to Section 2.2.2.2.
- 1612 ▪ ADCS—Windows server needs to be running; refer to guide.
- 1613 ▪ IIS—Windows server needs to be running; refer to guide.
- 1614 ▪ Venafi—must be installed and configured; refer to Section 2.2.2.2.

### 1615 2.2.2.2 Network Trust Link

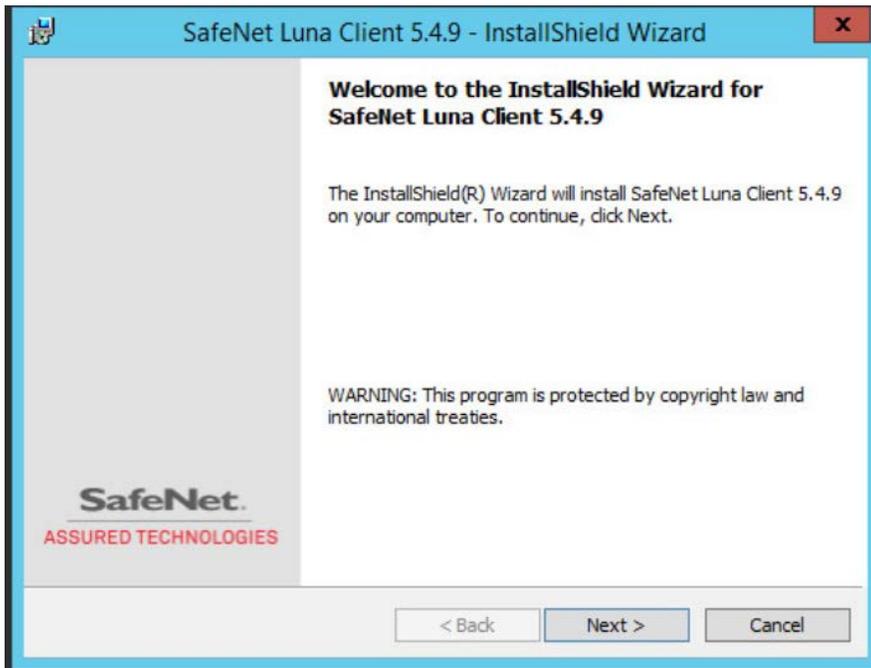
1616 This section provides directions to configure a Luna Client to communicate with the network-attached  
1617 Luna SA HSM. A client may have multiple Luna SA HSMs connected—using a slot designation when  
1618 referencing an assigned Luna SA. The client also assumes the Luna SA is installed and operational but  
1619 without a partition created for the new client.

1620 The Luna Client is available in Windows and Linux. For Linux systems, refer to SafeNet AT’s Configuring a  
1621 Network Trust Link documentation. In this document, the necessary commands and screenshots are  
1622 listed for Windows-based systems.

#### 1623 2.2.2.2.1 Install the Luna Client Software

1624 To install the Luna Client software, perform the following steps:

- 1625 1. Log in to Windows as Administrator or as a user with administrator privileges.
- 1626 2. Insert the Luna Client Software DVD into the optical drive.
- 1627 3. Open a file explorer and navigate to **D:\windows\64\**.
- 1628 4. Double-click **Luna Client.msi**.
- 1629 5. Click **Next** at the welcome screen.



1630

1631

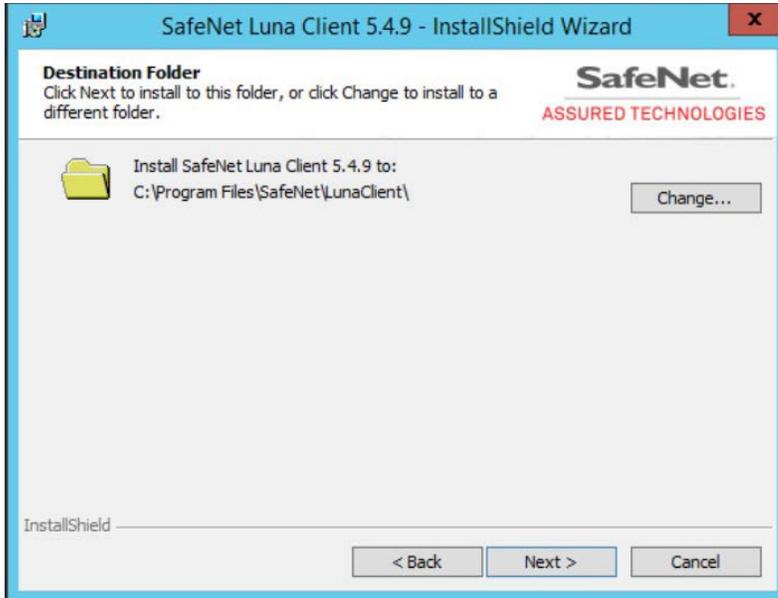
1632

6. Accept the software license agreement by clicking “I accept the terms in the license agreement” and clicking **Next**.



1633

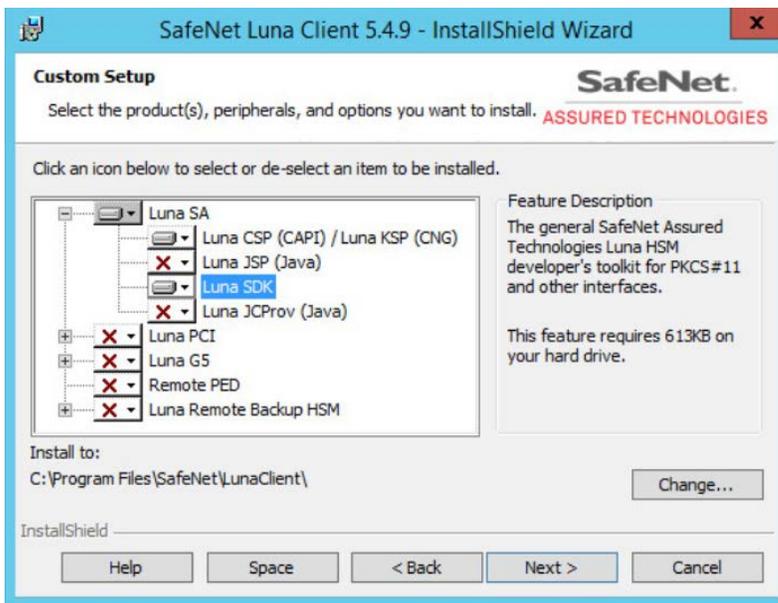
1634 7. In the Choose Destination Location dialogue, accept the default offered and click **Next**.



1635

1636 8. Ensure the following options are selected and click **Next**:

- 1637 ● **Luna CSP (CAPI)/Luna KSP (CNG)**
- 1638 ● **Luna SDK**



1639

1640 9. On the **Ready to Install** page, click **Install**.

1641 10. If Windows presents a security notice asking if the user wishes to install the device driver from  
1642 SafeNet AT, click **Install** to accept.



1643

1644 11. When the installation completes, click **Finish**.

#### 1645 2.2.2.2.2 Configure the Luna Client

1646 To establish the NTL, first create a client certificate, and then the client and server certificates are  
1647 exchanged. The Luna SA appliance is then added as a trusted server in the client.

#### 1648 2.2.2.2.3 Create the Client Certificate

1649 First, create the client certificate by using the SafeNet AT VTL command line. This results in a *.pem*  
1650 certificate file being created in a `\cert\client` subfolder.

1651 1. On the client system, from the Windows command environment, run as administrator and  
1652 navigate to the folder `C:\Program Files\Safenet\LunaClient`.

```
C:\Users\administrator>cd "C:\Program Files\SafeNet\LunaClient"
```

1653

1654

2. Enter the following command:

1655

```
vtl createcert -n <client IP address>
```

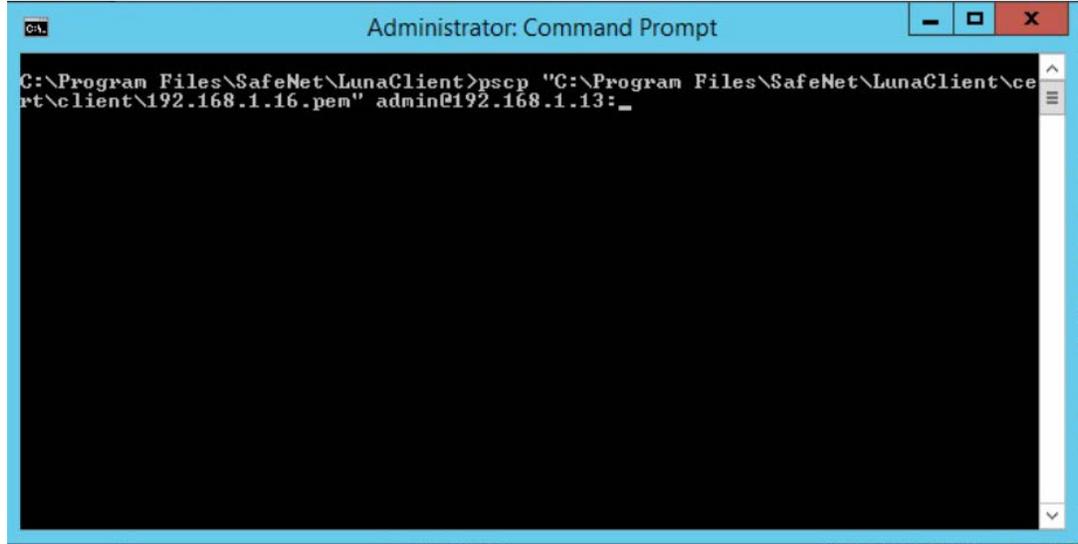
```
C:\Program Files\SafeNet\LunaClient>vtl createCert -n 192.168.1.16  
Private Key created and written to: C:\Program Files\SafeNet\LunaClient\cert\cli  
ent\192.168.1.16Key.pem  
Certificate created and written to: C:\Program Files\SafeNet\LunaClient\cert\cli  
ent\192.168.1.16.pem  
C:\Program Files\SafeNet\LunaClient>
```

1656

1657 [2.2.2.2.4 Transfer the Client Certificate to the Luna SA](#)  
1658 Now, transfer the newly created client certificate to the Luna SA by using the PuTTY Secure Copy  
1659 Protocol (PSCP) or Secure Copy Protocol (SCP) tool.

1660 1. On the client system using Windows, enter the following command:

```
1661 pscp "C:\Program Files\SafeNet\LunaClient\cert\client\192.168.1.16.pem"  
1662 admin@192.168.1.13:
```



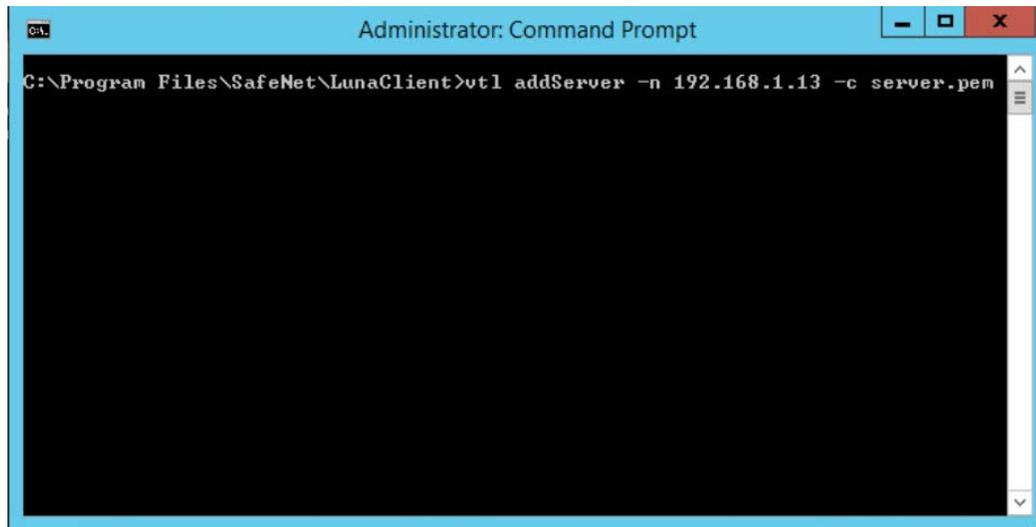
1663  
1664 2. When prompted, enter the appliance administrative password for the Luna SA. The transfer  
1665 automatically takes place.

1666 [2.2.2.2.5 Transfer the Server Certificate from the Luna SA](#)  
1667 Using PSCP or SCP, transfer the Luna SA's server certificate to the client.

1668 1. On a client system using Windows, enter the following command:

1669

```
pscp admin@192.168.1.13:server.pem
```



1670

- 1671           2. When prompted, enter the administrative password for the Luna SA. The transfer will  
1672           automatically take place.

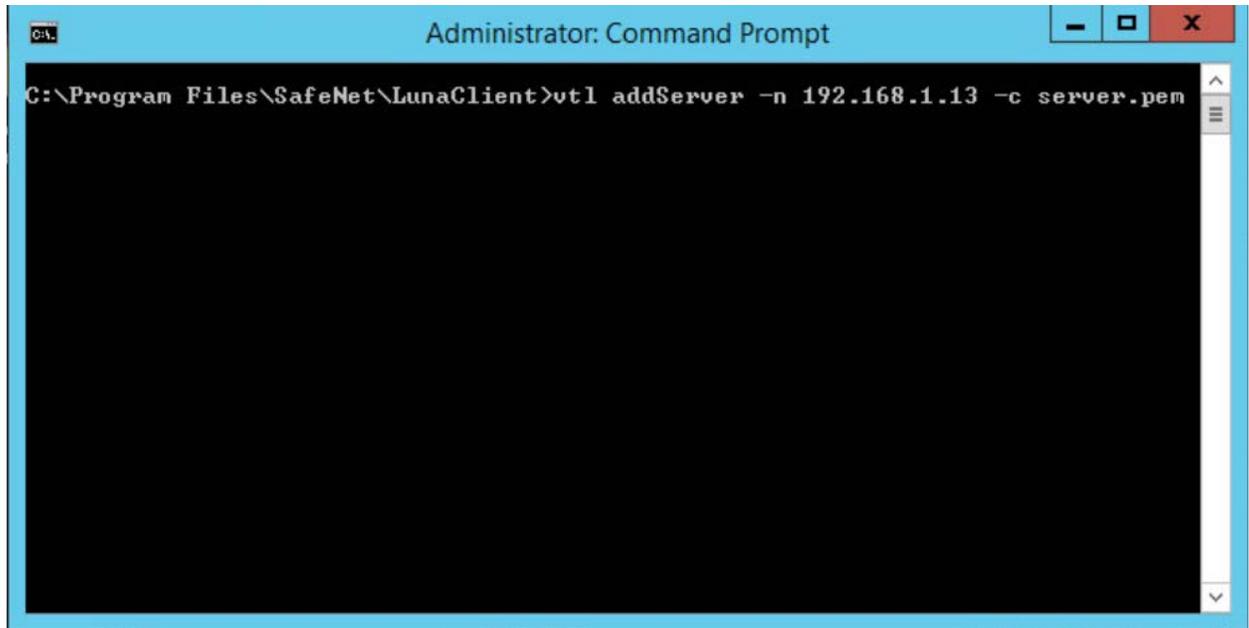
1673   2.2.2.2.6   Register the HSM on the Client

1674   The final step in configuring the client is to register the Luna SA's certificate with the client.

- 1675           1. On a client system, enter the following command:

1676

```
vtl addServer -n <HSM IP Address> -c server.pem
```

A screenshot of a Windows Administrator Command Prompt window. The title bar reads "Administrator: Command Prompt". The command prompt shows the current directory as "C:\Program Files\SafeNet\LunaClient" and the command "vtl addServer -n 192.168.1.13 -c server.pem" has been entered. The rest of the window is black, indicating the command has been executed successfully.

```
C:\Program Files\SafeNet\LunaClient>vtl addServer -n 192.168.1.13 -c server.pem
```

1677

1678

At this point, the client is fully configured and ready to establish a secure link with the HSM.

1679

#### 2.2.2.2.7 Create a Partition (Password Authentication)

1680

1. Connect into the HSM via SSH or Serial.

1681

2. At the `lunash:>` prompt on the Luna SA, enter the following command:

1682

```
partition create -partition <partition name> -domain <domain name>
```

```

[HSM] lunash:>partition create -partition HRhsmiis

Please ensure that you have purchased licenses for at least this number of partitions: 5

Please enter a password for the partition:
> *****

Please re-enter password to confirm:
> *****

Please enter a cloning domain to use when creating this partition:
> *****

Please re-enter cloning domain to confirm:
> *****

If you are sure to continue then type 'proceed', otherwise type 'quit'
> proceed
Proceeding...

'partition create' successful.

```

1683

1684 3. When prompted, enter and re-enter to confirm the partition password.

1685 4. Enter `proceed` when prompted.

#### 1686 2.2.2.2.8 Register the Client on the HSM and Assign It to a Partition

1687 Register the client on the HSM and assign it to a partition. Because the HSM was previously created and  
 1688 the client certificate was transferred to it, the HSM can find the certificate file based on the IP address.

1689 Assign a name for the client for easy recognition.

1690 1. On the Luna SA, enter the following command to register the client:

```
1691 client register -client HRhsmiis -ip 192.168.1.16
```

```
1692 [HSM] lunash:>client register -client HRhsmiis -ip 192.168.1.16
```

1693 2. On the Luna SA, enter the following command to assign the client to the previously created  
 1694 partition.

```
1695 client assignPartition -client <client name> -partition <partition name>
```

```
1696 [HSM] lunash:>client assignPartition -client HRhsmiis -partition HRhsmiis_
```

1697 3. On the Luna SA, enter the following command to verify the client is assigned to the proper  
 1698 partition.

```
1699 client show -client <client name>
```

```
[HSM] lunash:>client show -client HRhsmiis
```

```
ClientID:      HRhsmiis  
IPAddress:    192.168.1.16  
HTL Required: no  
OTT Expiry:   n/a  
Partitions:   "HRhsmiis"
```

```
Command Result : 0 (Success)
```

1700

1701 At this point, the HSM is configured, and in the next section, the user will return to the client to verify  
1702 connectivity and the ability to request cryptographic operations from the client.

#### 1703 [2.2.2.2.9 Verify the Network Trust Link](#)

1704 Return to the client and verify it can view the Luna SA and its associated slot and partition. Run the  
1705 Multitoken2 utility to verify the client can request cryptographic operations from the HSM.

#### 1706 [2.2.2.2.10 Verify the Luna SA in Client Server Lists](#)

1707 Verify the Luna SA is in the client's server lists.

- 1708 1. On the client system, from the Windows command environment run as administrator,  
1709 navigate to the folder *C:\Program Files\Safenet\LunaClient*.
- 1710 2. On the client system, enter the following command and verify the Luna SA is in the list of  
1711 servers:

1712 `vtl listservers`

```
C:\Program Files\Safenet\LunaClient>vtl listservers  
Server: 192.168.1.13 HTL required: no
```

1713

#### 1714 [2.2.2.2.11 Verify the Slot and Partition](#)

1715 Verify the slot and the assigned HSM partition can be seen.

- 1716 1. On the client system using either Windows and Linux, enter the following command to verify  
1717 the Luna SA slot and partition are known to the client:

1718 `vtl verify`

```
C:\Program Files\SafeNet\LunaClient>vtl verify
The following Luna SA Slots/Partitions were found:
Slot      Serial #      Label
====      =====      =====
1         575342049    HRhsmiis

C:\Program Files\SafeNet\LunaClient>_
```

1719

1720 Should this verification fail, check the times on the client and HSM to ensure they are set properly.

#### 1721 [2.2.2.2.12 Request Cryptographic Operations on the HSM](#)

1722 Request an actual crypto operation on the HSM to verify full functionality. The Multitoken utility to use  
1723 is described in the Luna SA product documentation.

1724 1. On the client system, enter the following command:

1725 `multitoken2 -mode rsasigver -key 1024 -slots 1,1,1,1,1`

1726 2. When prompted, if continuing, enter **y**.

1727 3. Enter the partition password when prompted. The test will begin.

1728 4. Press the **Enter** key to terminate the test after verifying that RSA signatures were successfully  
1729 performed in the statistics table.

```
Command Prompt - multitoken2 -mode rsasigver -key 1024 -slots 1,1,1,1,1
C:\Program Files\SafeNet\LunaClient>multitoken2 -mode rsasigver -key 1024 -slots 1,1,1,1,1
Initializing library...Finished Initializing
...done.

Do you wish to continue?
Enter 'y' or 'n': y

Constructing thread objects.
Logging in to tokens...
slot 1... Enter password: NCC0e123456!
Serial Number 575342049

Please wait, creating test threads.
Test threads created successfully. Press ENTER to terminate testing.

RSA sign/verify 1024-bit : <packet size = 16 bytes>

1, 0 1, 4 | operations/second | elapsed
-----|-----|-----
total average | time (secs)
-----|-----|-----
136.9 136.7 | 679.0 672.187* | 10_
```

1730

### 1731 2.2.2.3 ADCS Integration Configuration

1732 This section provides the necessary steps for configuring an ADCS CA to use the SafeNet AT Luna SA  
1733 1700 HSM for Government, to secure the CA's private key. This section assumes the Luna HSM client has  
1734 been installed and configured, as detailed in Section [2.2.1](#).

1735 Perform the following steps:

- 1736     ▪ Verify the Network Trust Link (NTL) between the Windows Server and the HSM.
- 1737     ▪ Register the Key Storage Provider (KSP) on the Windows Server.
- 1738     ▪ Add the CA role.
- 1739     ▪ Verify the private key for the CA was created on the HSM.

#### 1740 2.2.2.3.1 Prerequisites

1741 To configure Microsoft CA to use the Luna HSM, the following prerequisites must be met:

- 1742     ▪ The SafeNet AT Luna HSM is installed and operational.
- 1743     ▪ The SafeNet AT Luna Client is installed on the Windows Server where the CA is being added.

1744       ▪ The NTL is established between the Luna Client and the Luna HSM. If not, see [Section 2.2.2.2](#).

### 1745 2.2.2.3.2 Verify the HSM Configuration

1746 Verify the HSM client configuration prior to proceeding by following the steps below:

- 1747 1. Open a Command Prompt as Administrator, and change into the Luna Client directory, typically
- 1748 *C:\Program Files\SafeNet\LunaClient\*.
- 1749 2. Execute the command `vTL.exe verify` to check that the client is configured correctly and the
- 1750 partition is visible. Slot/Partition information should be displayed in response.



```
Command Prompt
C:\Program Files\SafeNet\LunaClient>vTL.exe verify
The following Luna SA Slots/Partitions were found:
Slot      Serial #      Label
====      =====      =====
1         575342049    HRhsmiis
```

- 1751
- 1752 3. Execute the command `cmu list` to see the list of current objects on the HSM, and enter the
- 1753 password when prompted. If nothing has been created on the partition, this list will be blank.
- 1754 Once the CA is configured, the keys created on the HSM are listed.



```
Command Prompt
C:\Program Files\SafeNet\LunaClient>cmu list
Please enter password for token in slot 1 : *****
handle=84      label=CertReq-764f7c31-73b2-4971-9a1d-7c27619df6c3
handle=88      label=CertReq-764f7c31-73b2-4971-9a1d-7c27619df6c3
```

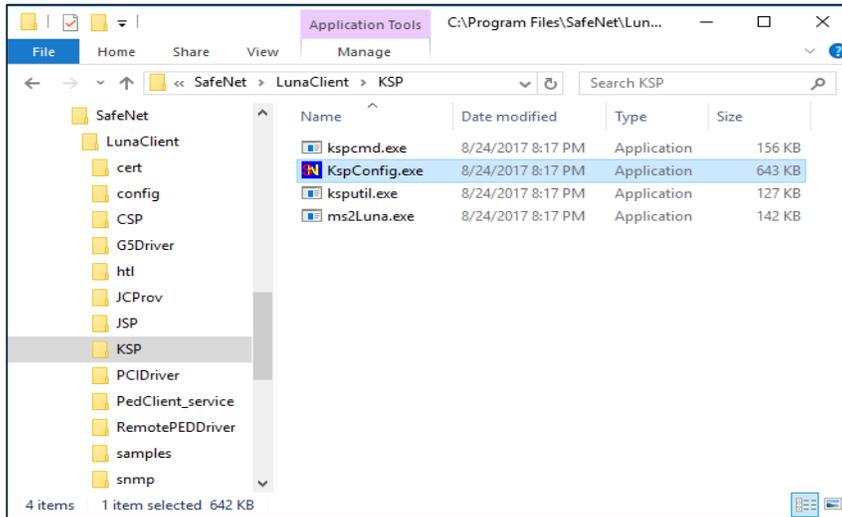
### 1755 2.2.2.3.3 Register the Key Storage Provider

1756 Beginning with Windows Server 2008, the older CryptoAPI CSP has been superseded by the newer

1757 CNGKSP. The Luna Client installation includes a utility to register the SafeNet AT HSM for Government as

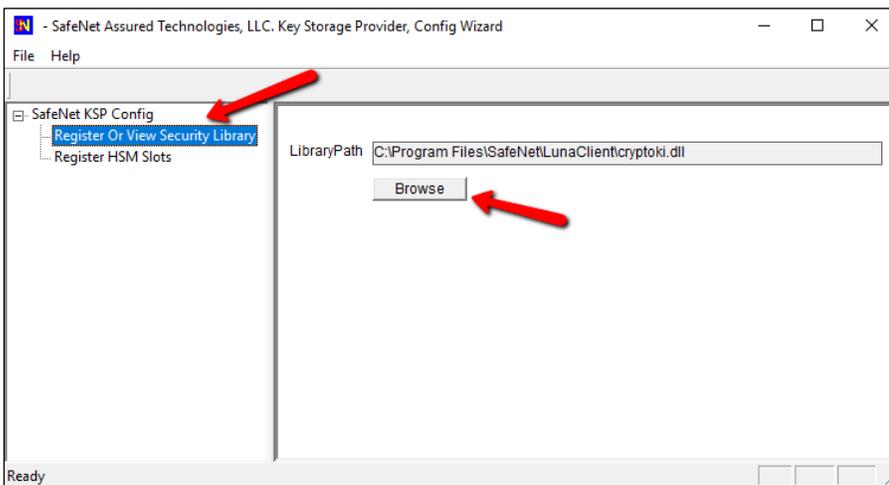
1758 a KSP for use in Windows applications. To register, follow these instructions:

- 1760 1. Open Windows Explorer, browse to the KSP folder in the Luna Client installation folder, and
- 1761 double-click on the **KSPConfig.exe** utility.



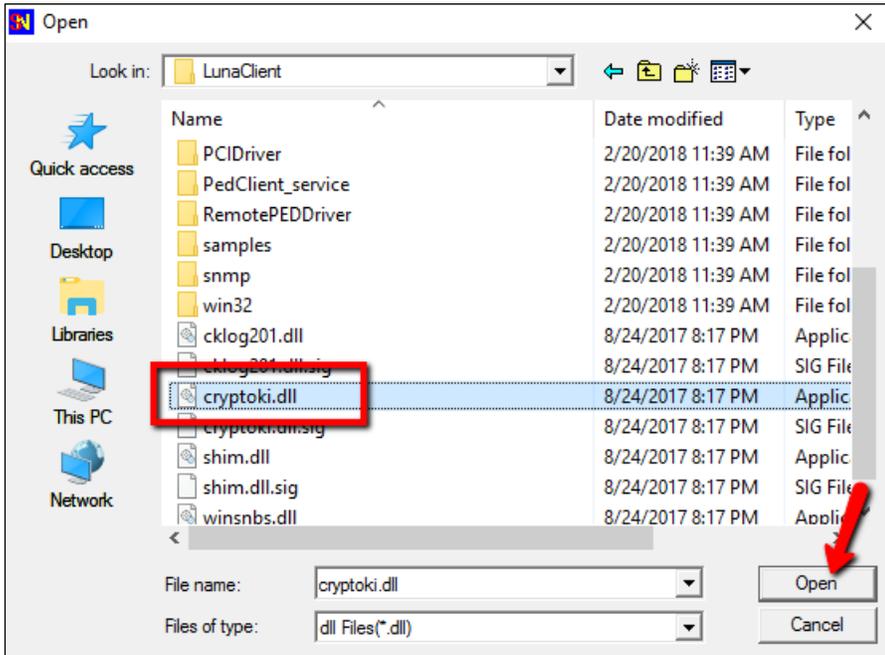
1762

- 1763      2. Double-click on **Register Or View Security Library**, then click **Browse**.



1764

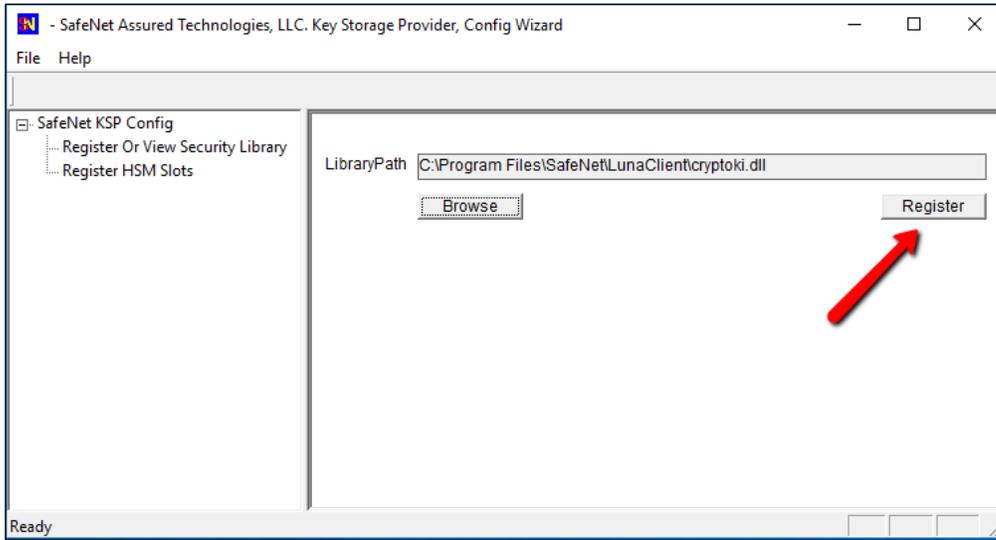
- 1765      3. Browse to the Luna Client folder, select **cryptoki.dll**, and click **Open**.



1766

1767

1768 4. Click on **Register** to complete the library registration.



1769

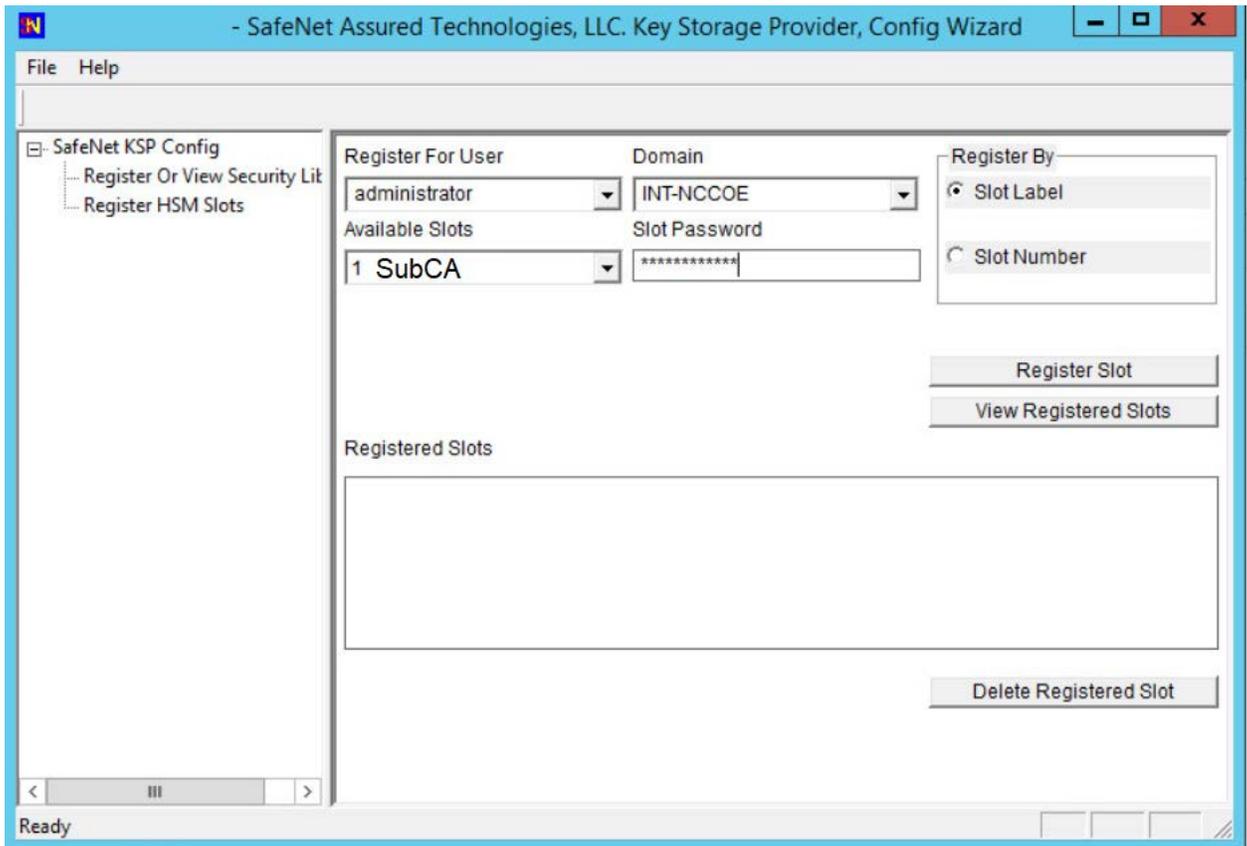
1770 5. Double-click **Register HSM Slots** on the left to open the slot registration page. Select the

1771 **Administrator** account and the Domain for the user that will be configuring the CA role. For a

1772 server joined to a domain, this should be a Domain or Enterprise Admin account rather than the

1773 local machine Administrator. Select the slot for the HSM, enter the **Slot Password**, and click

1774 **Register Slot**.



1775

- 1776 6. Repeat the slot registration for the user **SYSTEM** with Domain **NT AUTHORITY**, and click  
 1777 **Register**. This is the account used for the CA service—it must also have access to the HSM.  
 1778 Verify the registration by selecting user and domain and clicking **View Registered Slots**.

1779 [2.2.2.3.4 Add CA Role](#)

1780 For instructions on CA installation and configuration, refer to Section [1.5.3.3.2](#) on root CAs.

1781 [2.2.2.3.5 Verify the Successful Integration on the HSM](#)

1782 As a final step, verify the private key and the public key are stored on the HSM.

- 1783 1. Open a command prompt and change to the Luna Client directory, typically C:\Program  
 1784 Files\SafeNet\LunaClient\  
 1785 2. Run **cmu list** to verify the private and public keys for the CA are present on the HSM. They are  
 1786 represented by two “handles.”

1787 The screenshot below shows running the `cmu list` command before configuring the CA and then after  
 1788 the configuration has been completed.

1789

1790 This completes integration of the SafeNet AT Luna SA 1700 HSM for Government with Microsoft Active  
1791 Directory Certificate Services.

#### 1792 2.2.2.4 IIS Integration Configuration

1793 This section provides the steps necessary to integrate the Microsoft IIS web server and the SafeNet AT  
1794 Luna SA 1700 HSM. The benefit of the integration is that the root private key for IIS is stored in a  
1795 hardened, FIPS 140-2-certified device.

1796 The following steps explain how to register the SafeNet AT Luna SA 1700 HSM as a KSP to store the root  
1797 certificate's private key in the HSM.

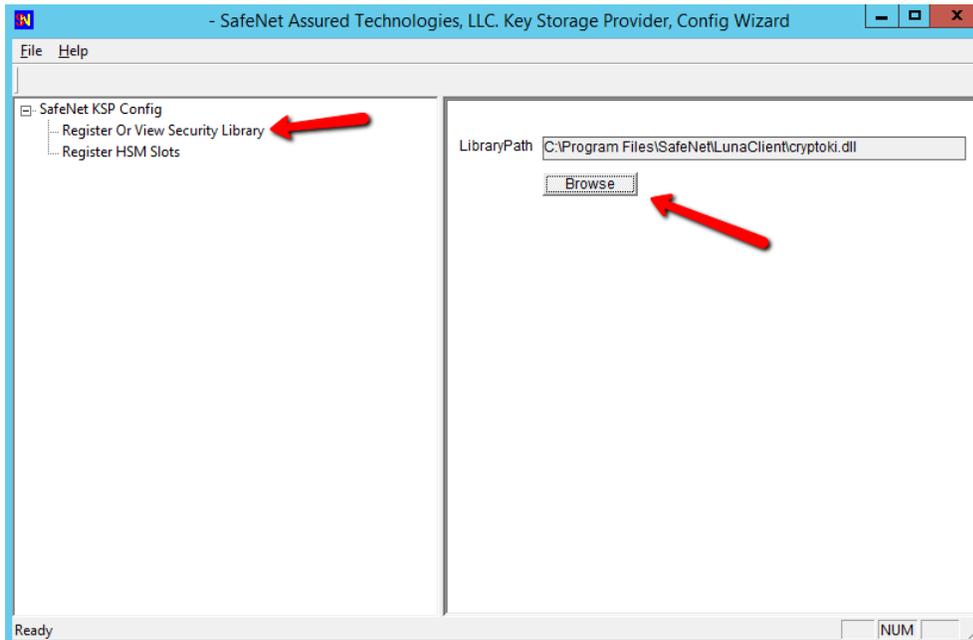
##### 1798 2.2.2.4.1 Prerequisites

- 1799     ▪ IIS is installed or ready to be installed. The firewall rules may need to be edited to allow https  
1800       access (typically port 443) and optionally block http (port 80).
- 1801     ▪ If mutual authentication is being performed, the trusted CA's certificate has been installed.

##### 1802 2.2.2.4.2 Register the Luna KSP

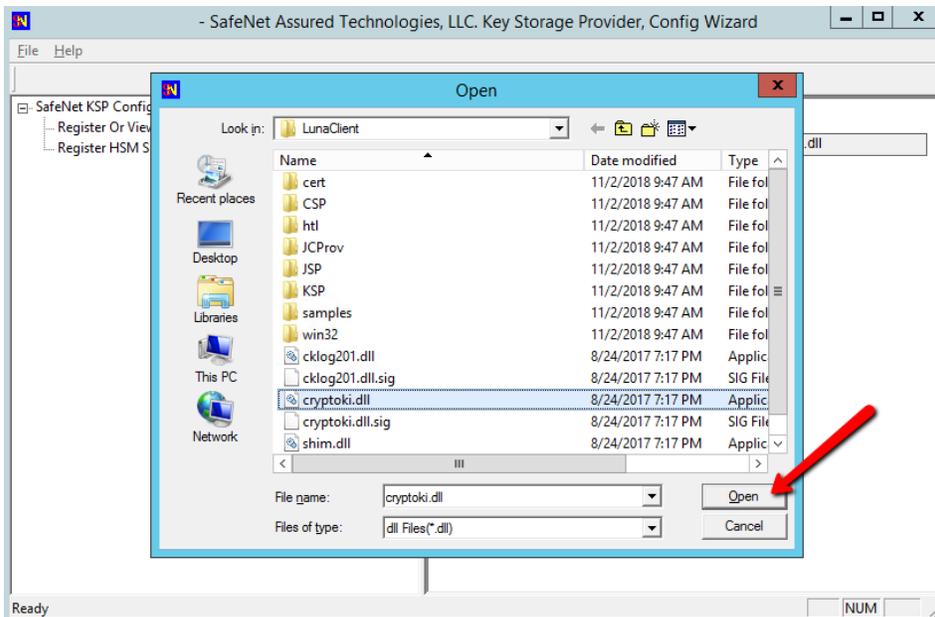
1803 For IIS integration, two accounts need access to the HSM. First, the DOMAIN\Administrator account is  
1804 used for setting up the server—creating the certificate request and installing the certificate. Second, the  
1805 NT Authority\System account is used by the server to start the IIS service. The **KSPConfig** utility is used  
1806 to register the HSM as a KSP for these accounts.

- 1807     1. Navigate to the **KSP** directory under the Luna installation directory, which is typically  
1808       *C:\ProgramFiles\SafeNet\LunaClient*.
- 1809     2. Run **KspConfig.exe** to launch the wizard.
- 1810     3. When the wizard launches, double-click **Register Or View Security Library** on the left side of the  
1811       pane, and then click the **Browse** button on the right.



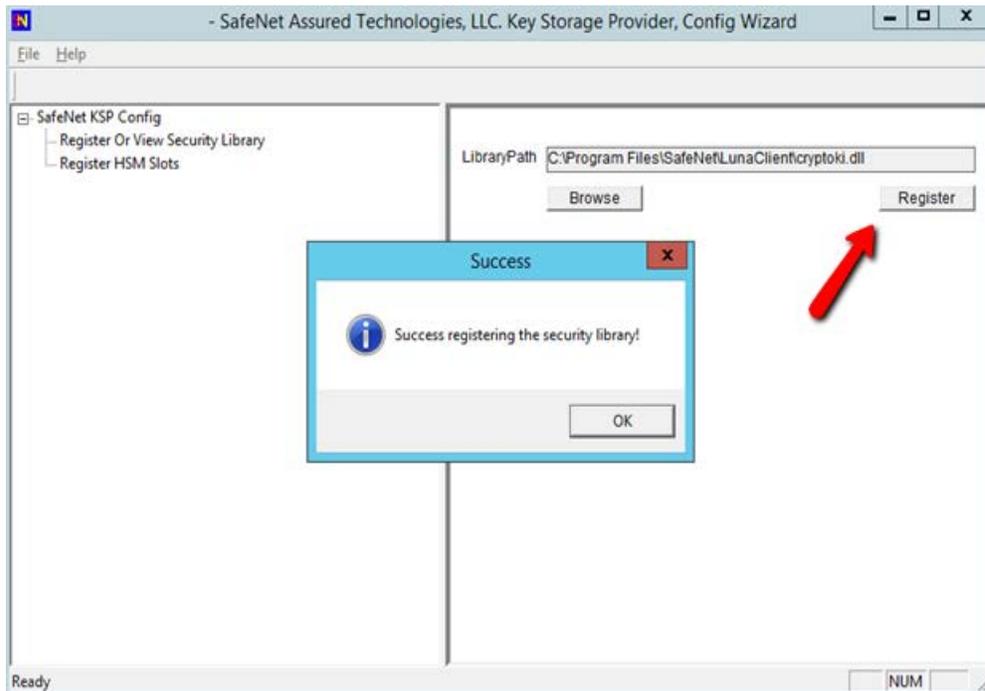
1812

1813 4. Browse to and select the **cryptoki.dll** library in the Luna Client directory.



1814

1815 5. Having selected the dll, click the **Register** button. The message “**Success registering the security**  
1816 **library!**” displays.



1817

1818

6. Double-click **Register HSM Slots** on the left side of the pane.

1819

7. Verify the correct **User** and **Domain** are selected (the Administrator account on the server) and slot is selected (can be registered by slot label or slot number), and enter the **Slot Password** (HSM partition password).

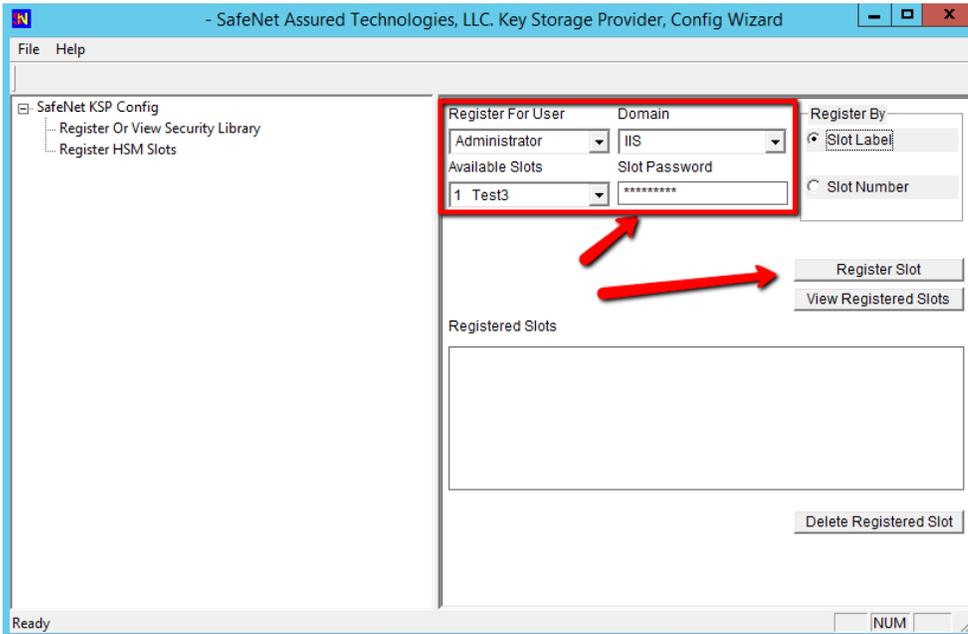
1820

1821

1822

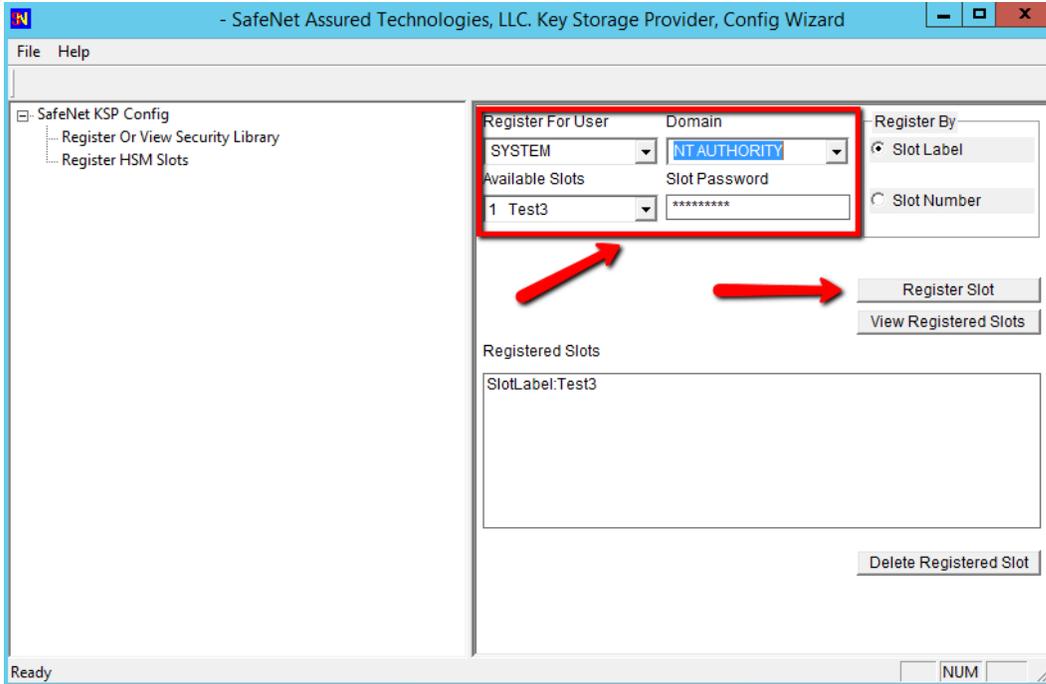
8. Click **Register Slot** to register the slot for that User/Domain. Upon successful registration, a message **“The slot was successfully and securely registered”** displays.

1823



1824

1825 9. Repeat the steps above to register the slot for the **User SYSTEM** and **Domain NT AUTHORITY**.



1826

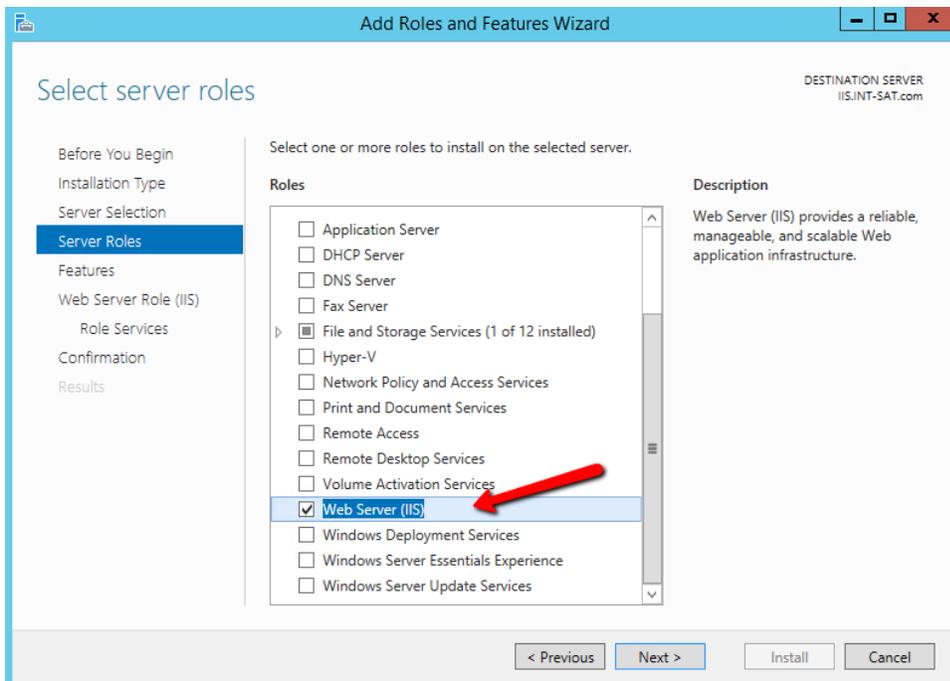
1827 To verify the registered slot, select a **User/Domain**, and click the **View Registered Slots** button.

#### 1828 2.2.2.4.3 Setup Synopsis

- 1829
  - Verify the NTL between the server and the HSM.
- 1830
  - Register the HSM as a KSP.
- 1831
  - Install IIS and configure it to use an HSM.
- 1832
  - Create a certificate request for IIS, and get it signed.
- 1833
  - Install the signed certificate.
- 1834
  - Bind the certificate to the web server.

#### 1835 2.2.2.4.4 Install Microsoft IIS

1836 The next step is to install the **Web Server (IIS)** role by using **Server Manager**. There are no special  
1837 considerations surrounding the IIS integration with an HSM. Please follow the installation and  
1838 configuration steps in Section [1.5.5.2](#).



1839

#### 1840 2.2.2.4.5 Create and Install a Certificate for IIS

1841 IIS will need a certificate installed that has been signed by a trusted CA. This involves creating a  
1842 certification signing request (CSR), then the CA signs it and installs it back in the server. **IIS Manager**

1843 provides an easy way for creating a CSR, but it cannot be used when a key is generated on an external  
1844 HSM. Instead, use a Microsoft command line utility.

1845 Clients attempting to securely connect to the web server will see an alert if the fully qualified domain  
1846 name (FQDN) in the Common Name (CN) field (or on more recent browsers, the FQDN in the Subject  
1847 Alternate Name field) does not match the uniform resource locator (URL) they are accessing. An alert  
1848 also occurs if the certificate was not issued by a trusted root CA. For this integration, use the FQDN in  
1849 the CN and Subject Alternative Name (SAN) fields.

#### 1850 2.2.2.4.6 Create a Certificate Signing Request and Private Key

1851 Instructions follow for using the **certreq.exe** utility to create the CSR and private key in the HSM.

1852 1. Create a file called ***request.inf*** that will contain the necessary information for the utility to create  
1853 the CSR. The contents of the file are as follows—only those items in blue italics will vary per the  
1854 organization’s environment and requirements. The **CN** in the subject and the **dns** name in the **SAN**  
1855 extension must match the full host name that clients enter as the URL in a web browser.

1856 Copying and pasting the text may insert line breaks or change quotation marks to smart (curly)  
1857 quotation marks. Ensure that each entry is on a single line and that all quotation marks are standard,  
1858 straight, and double.

1859 In this document, some entries may appear with line breaks such as the **Subject=...** and  
1860 **%szOID\_ENHANCED\_KEY\_USAGE...** lines, but they must be on a single line. In addition, if using Notepad,  
1861 change the file type to “all files” so it does not create the file with an extension of .txt. The “hide  
1862 extensions for known file types” option may need to be disabled in Windows Explorer to verify the file is  
1863 an *.inf* file rather than a *.txt* file. The text of the *.inf* file follows, as well as an image of the how the file  
1864 should look.

```
1865 [Version]
1866     Signature= "$Windows NT$"
1867
1868     [NewRequest]
1869     Subject = "C=US,CN=HRhsm.int-
1870     nccoe.org,O=SafeNetAT,OU=TLSLAB,L=Gaithersburg,S=Maryland"
1871     HashAlgorithm = SHA256
1872     KeyAlgorithm = RSA
1873     KeyLength = 2048
1874     ProviderName = "Safenet Key Storage Provider"
1875     KeyUsage = 0xf0
1876     MachineKeySet = True
1877     [EnhancedKeyUsageExtension]
1878     OID=1.3.6.1.5.5.7.3.1
```

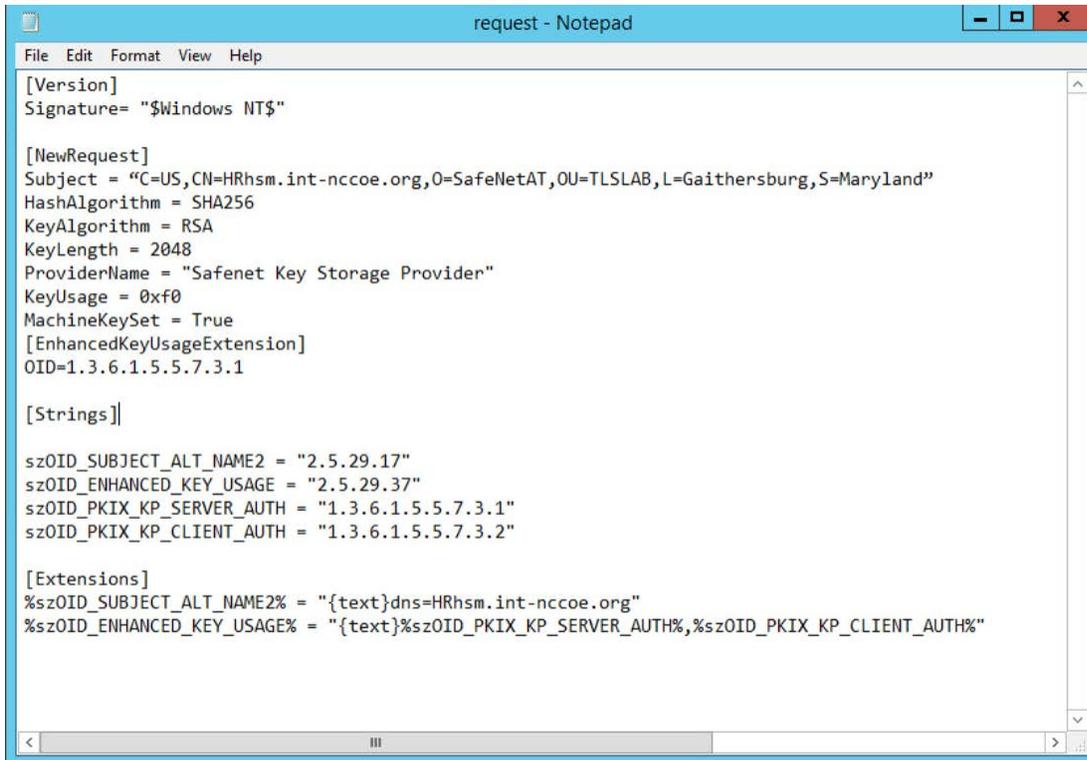
1879 [Strings]

```
1880 szOID_SUBJECT_ALT_NAME2 = "2.5.29.17"
1881     szOID_ENHANCED_KEY_USAGE = "2.5.29.37"
```

```
1882     szOID_PKIX_KP_SERVER_AUTH = "1.3.6.1.5.5.7.3.1" szOID_PKIX_KP_CLIENT_AUTH =
1883     "1.3.6.1.5.5.7.3.2"
```

```
1884 [Extensions]
1885     %szOID_SUBJECT_ALT_NAME2% = "{text}dns=HRhsm.int-nccoe.org"
1886     %szOID_ENHANCED_KEY_USAGE% =
1887     "{text}%szOID_PKIX_KP_SERVER_AUTH%, %szOID_PKIX_KP_CLIENT_AUTH%"
```

1888 Example image of file with correct line breaks:

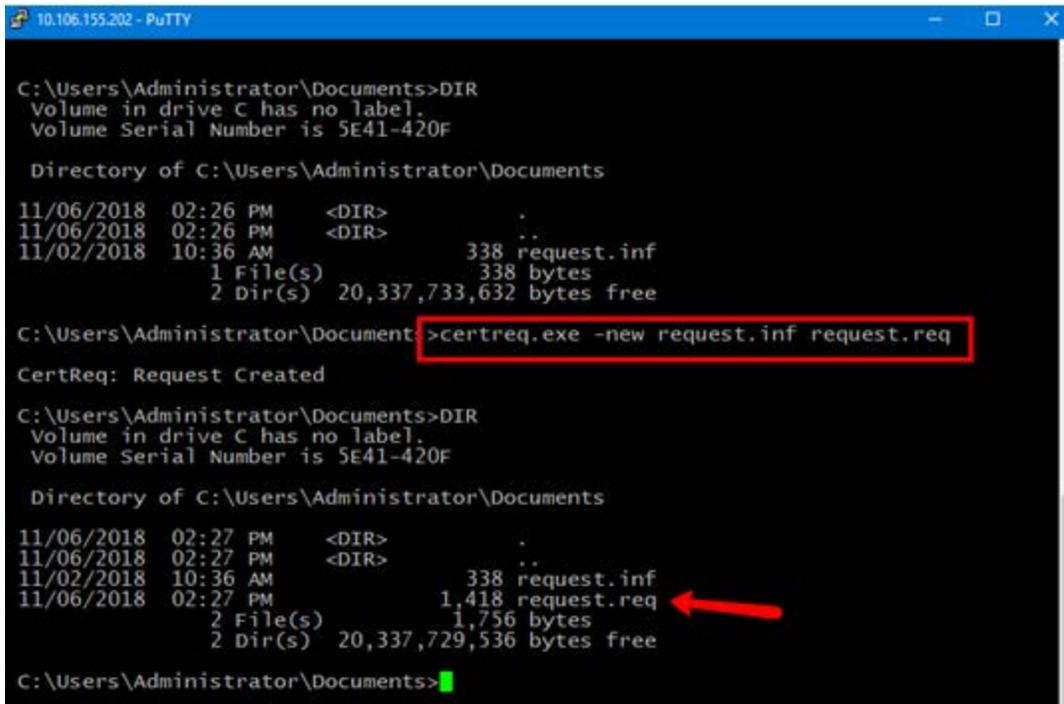


1889

1890 2. With the information file created, execute the **certreq** utility to generate a key on the HSM, and the

1891 certificate request. The CSR will be output to the file name that the user provides.

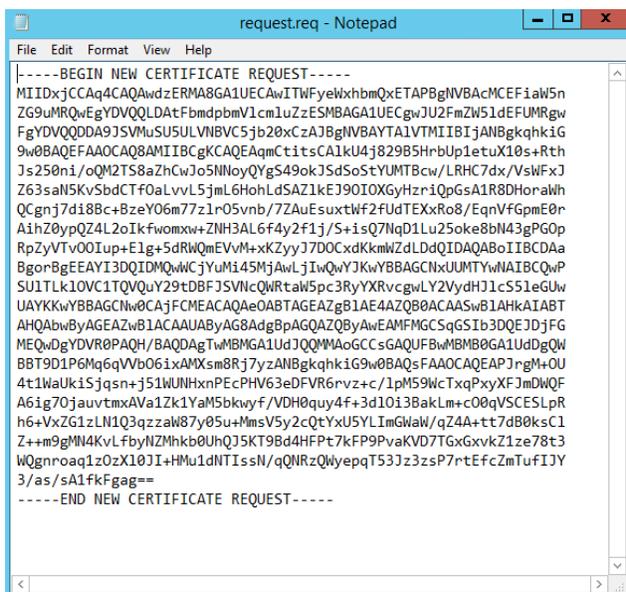
```
1892     certreq.exe -new request.inf <CSR_filename>
```



1893

1894 2.2.2.4.7 Get the CSR Signed by a Trusted CA

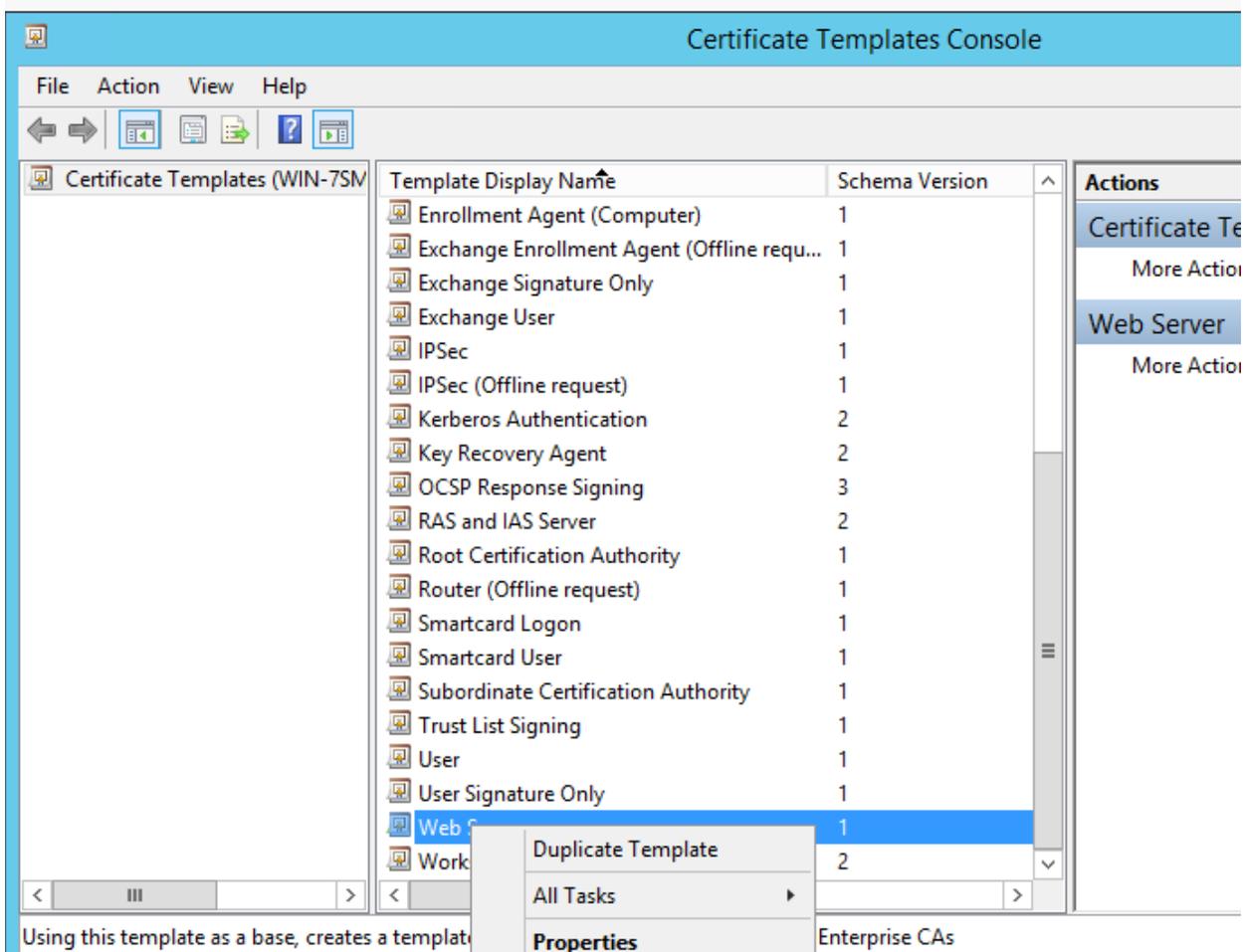
1895 A trusted CA must sign the generated CSR (example below). The CA authenticates the request and  
 1896 returns a signed certificate or a certificate chain. When the certificate file is received back, save it in the  
 1897 current working directory.



1898

1899 The CSR was signed by using an Enterprise CA. Follow the steps below to create a new template and to  
1900 sign the certificate request:

- 1901 1. Search for and run **certsrv.msc**, or from Server Manager select **Tools > Certification Authority** to  
1902 view the CA. Expand the CA > right-click **Certificate Templates** > select **Manage**.
- 1903 2. In the **Certificate Templates Console**, scroll down to find the **Web Server** template and right-click >  
1904 select **Duplicate Template**.



1905

- 1906 3. Fill out the various sections of the properties with settings that adhere to the company's security  
1907 policies. For this guide, the only thing altered is the **Template name** in the **General** tab. This will be  
1908 the name used when signing the request on the command line.

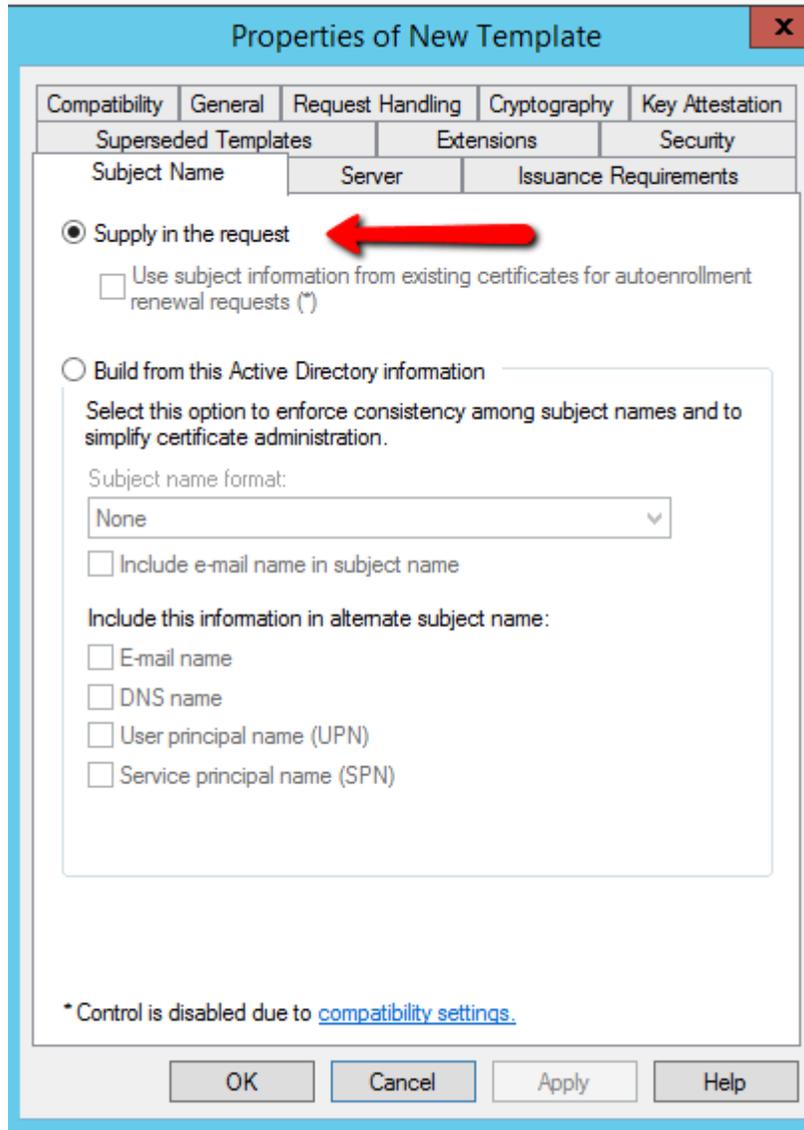
The image shows a Windows dialog box titled "Properties of New Template" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The dialog has a tabbed interface with the following tabs: Subject Name, Server, Issuance Requirements, Superseded Templates, Extensions, Security, Compatibility, General (selected), Request Handling, Cryptography, and Key Attestation. The "General" tab is active and contains the following fields and options:

- Template display name:** A text box containing "Copy of Web Server".
- Template name:** A text box containing "WebServer2".
- Validity period:** A dropdown menu showing "2" and "years".
- Renewal period:** A dropdown menu showing "6" and "weeks".
- Publish certificate in Active Directory
  - Do not automatically reenroll if a duplicate certificate exists in Active Directory

At the bottom of the dialog are four buttons: OK, Cancel, Apply, and Help.

1909

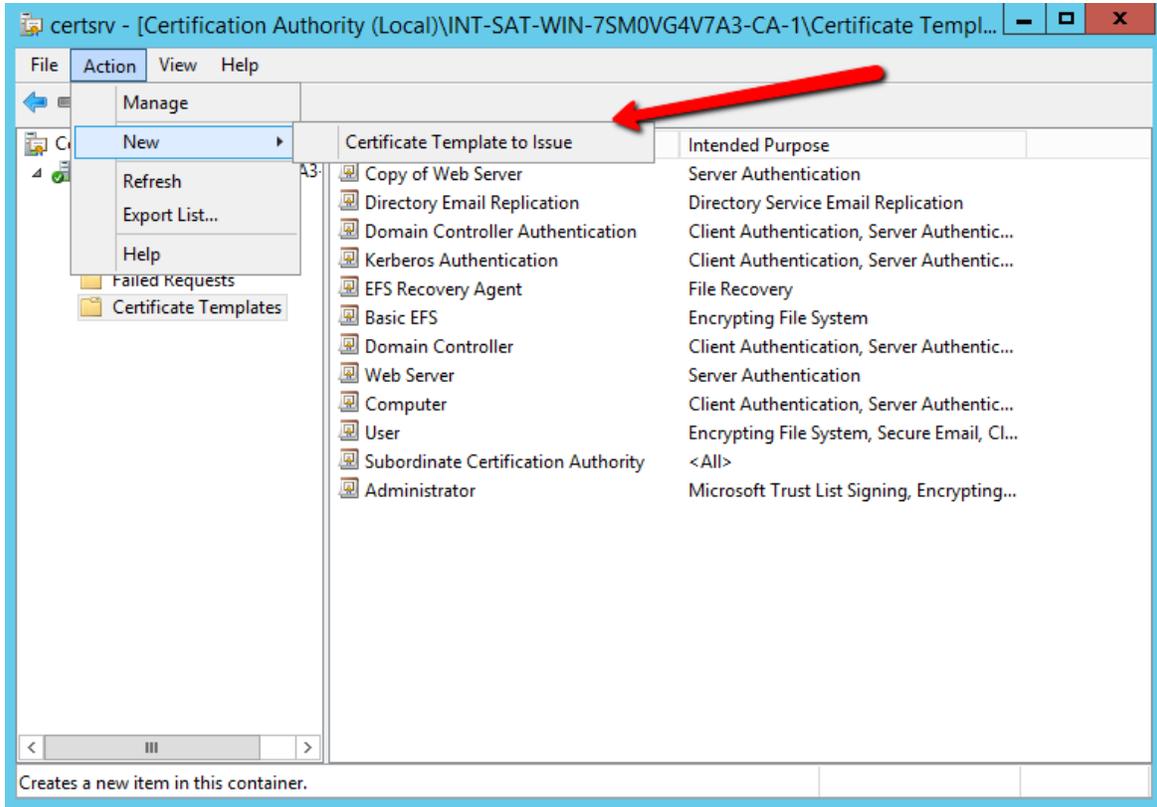
- 1910 4. Select the **Subject Name** tab, and verify that **Supply in the request** is selected. The FQDN is specified  
1911 in both the CN and SAN fields in the request file created, and the certificate will use these values.



1912

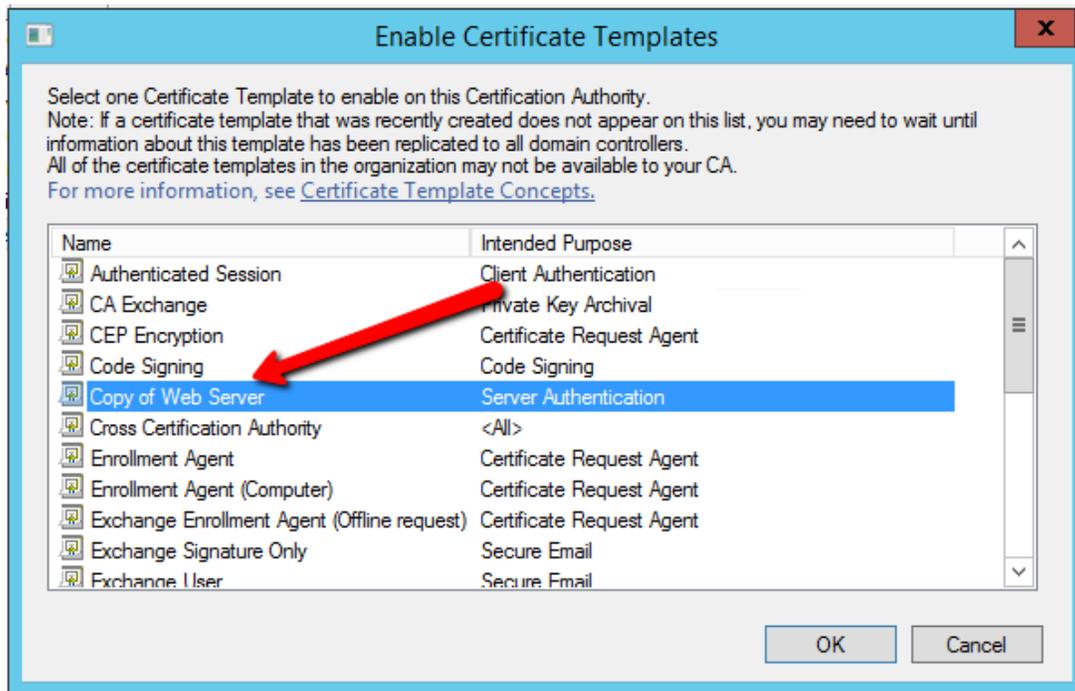
- 1913 5. Click **OK** to finish creating the new template.  
1914 6. Close the **Certificate Templates Console** > return to the **Certificate Authority window**.

1915 7. Click on **Action > New > Certificate Template to Issue**



1916

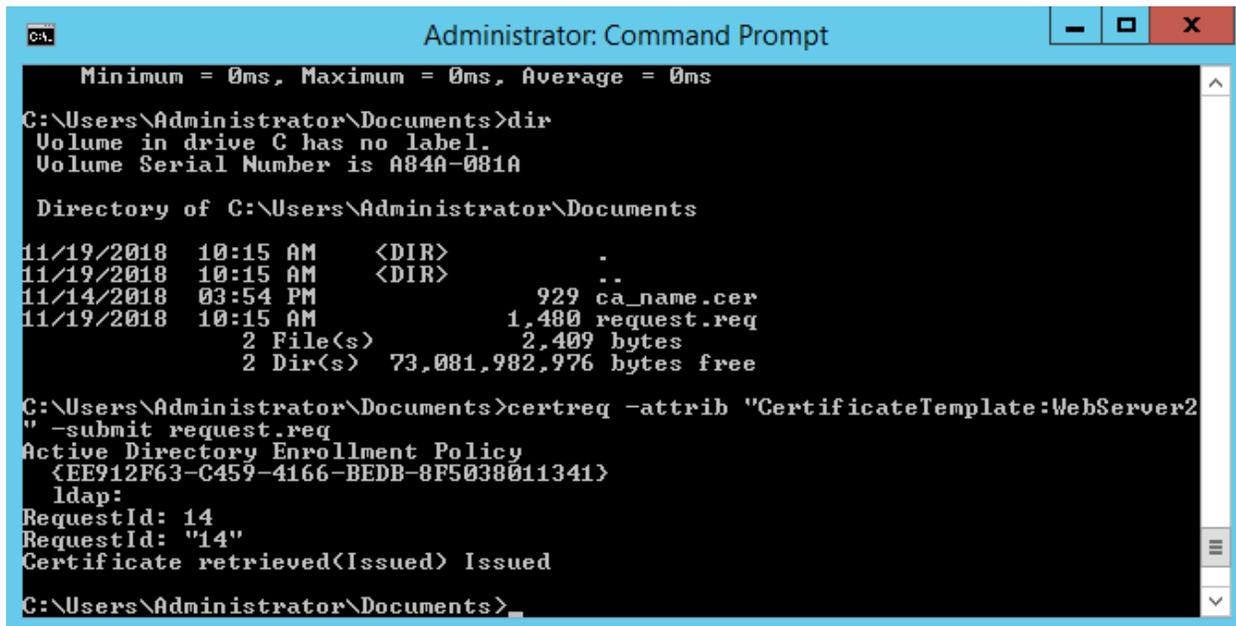
1917 8. Select the certificate template created > click **OK**.



1918

1919 9. Generate a certificate from the certificate request:

1920 `certreq -attrib "CertificateTemplate:<TemplateName>" -submit <certificate`  
 1921 `request filename>`



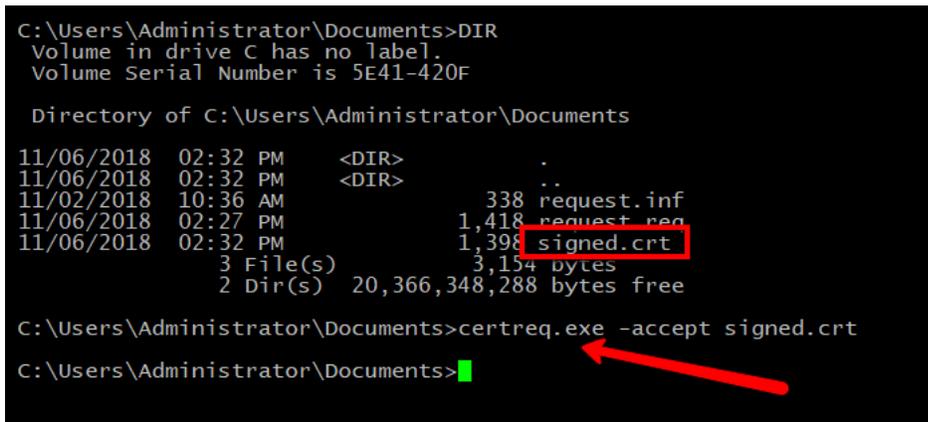
1922

1923 The user will be prompted to select the CA to use for signing, and a location and file name to save the  
1924 signed certificate. Once the signed certificate file is created, it can be copied to the IIS server to continue  
1925 with the integration.

#### 1926 2.2.2.4.8 Install the Signed Certificate

1927 Once the CSR is signed and the signed certificate file is received back, accept and install it by using the  
1928 **certreq** utility.

1929 `certreq.exe -accept <newcert.crt>`



```
C:\Users\Administrator\Documents>DIR
Volume in drive C has no label.
Volume Serial Number is 5E41-420F

Directory of C:\Users\Administrator\Documents

11/06/2018 02:32 PM <DIR>          .
11/06/2018 02:32 PM <DIR>          ..
11/02/2018 10:36 AM                338 request.inf
11/06/2018 02:27 PM             1,418 request.req
11/06/2018 02:32 PM             1,398 signed.crt
                3 File(s)          3,154 bytes
                2 Dir(s)  20,366,348,288 bytes free

C:\Users\Administrator\Documents>certreq.exe -accept signed.crt
C:\Users\Administrator\Documents>
```

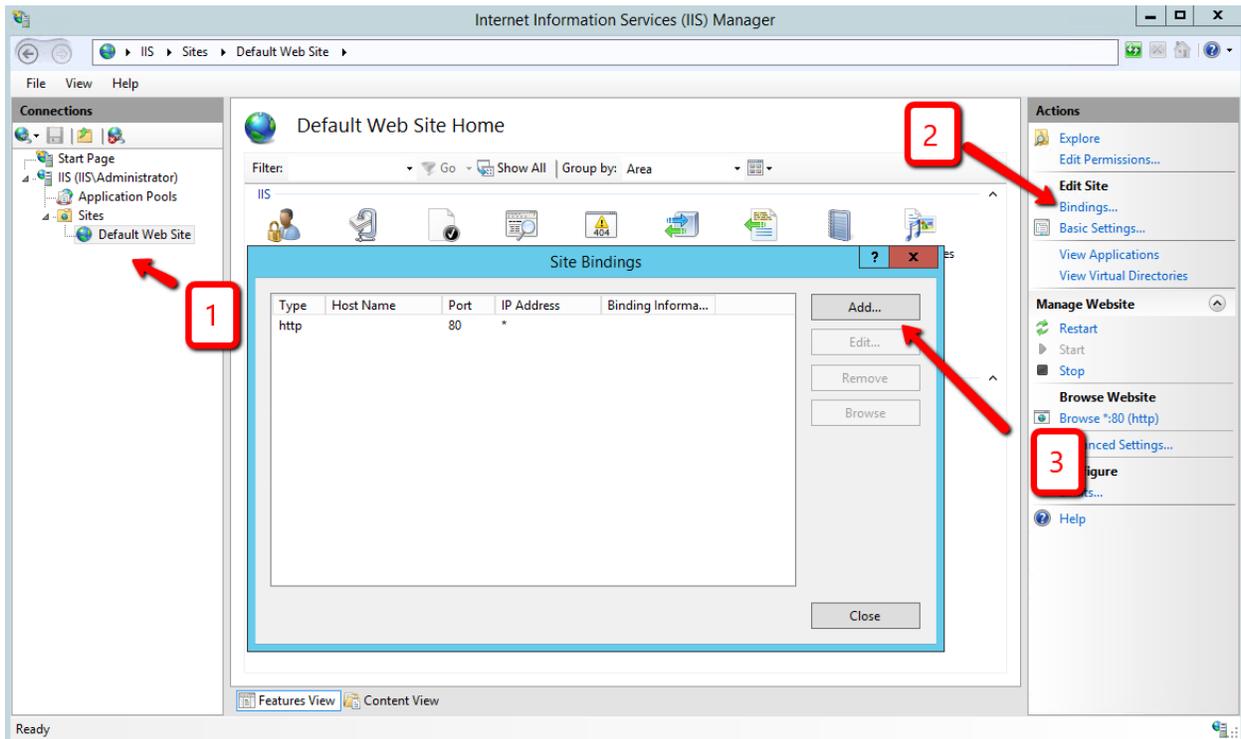
1930

1931 If this step fails, the most common cause is that the issuing CA root certificate is not installed in the  
1932 server's certificate store. Verify the issuing CA is trusted, or install the CA certificate into the Local  
1933 Machine—Trusted Root CA certificate store.

#### 1934 2.2.2.4.9 Bind the Certificate to the IIS Web Server

1935 The final step is to bind the certificate to the IIS web server:

- 1936 1. Open the **IIS Manager** from **Start > Administrative Tools > Internet Information Services (IIS)**  
1937 **Manager**.
- 1938 2. Under **Sites** on the left side of the IIS Manager window, select the desired website.
- 1939 3. On the right side of the IIS Manager, click **Bindings**.
- 1940 4. In the **Site Bindings** window, click **Add**.



1941

1942

1943

1944

1945

5. Select the protocol as **https**.
6. Select the IP address of the machine running IIS from the **IP Address** drop-down list, or leave blank to use all available network interfaces.
7. Enter port **443**.

The screenshot shows the 'Add Site Binding' dialog box. The 'Type' dropdown is set to 'https', the 'IP address' is '192.168.1.16', and the 'Port' is '443'. The 'Host name' field is empty. The 'Require Server Name Indication' checkbox is unchecked. The 'SSL certificate' dropdown is set to 'hrhsm.int-nccoe.org'. There are 'Select...' and 'View...' buttons next to the dropdown. At the bottom are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

1946

1947

1948

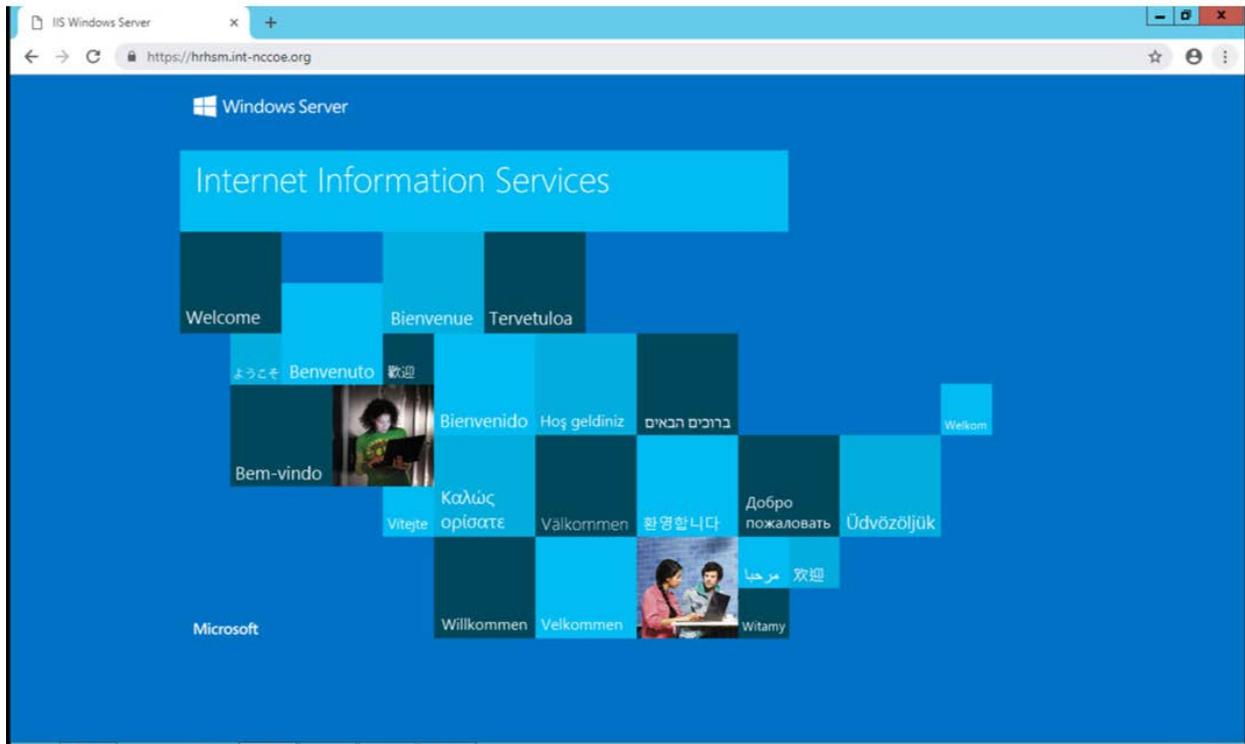
1949

1950

1951

1952

8. In the **SSL certificate:** drop-down, select the certificate that was just installed.
9. Complete the certificate binding in support of SSL/TLS, then click **OK**.
10. Verify the connection is working, open a browser, and enter your URL (e.g., *https://hrhsm.int-nccoe.org:443*). There may be a prompt to accept the certificate for the site. The host name must match the name used in the certificate request and must be registered with the DNS server to resolve the host name to the IP address of the IIS server.



1953

1954 **2.2.2.5 Venafi Integration Configuration**

1955 This section covers the necessary information to integrate Venafi with the SafeNet AT Luna SA 1700 for  
 1956 Government HSM. When integrated with the Luna, Venafi can create and store the master encryption  
 1957 key used to encrypt and decrypt the Venafi database. In this configuration, the Venafi TPP services will  
 1958 not start unless the key stored in the HSM is accessible. This provides an additional hardened layer of  
 1959 security to protect data in the database.

1960 **2.2.2.5.1 Prerequisites**

1961 To integrate Venafi with the Luna SA HSM, the following prerequisites must be met:

- 1962     ▪ The SafeNet AT Luna HSM is installed and operational.
- 1963     ▪ The SafeNet AT Luna Client is installed on the Venafi server.
- 1964     ▪ The NTL is established between the Luna Client and the Luna HSM as described in Section  
 1965        [2.2.2.2.9](#).
- 1966     ▪ The NTL between the Venafi server and the HSM has been verified.
- 1967     ▪ Venafi has been configured to use the Luna SA HSM.
- 1968     ▪ The master encryption key was created on the Luna SA HSM and has been verified.

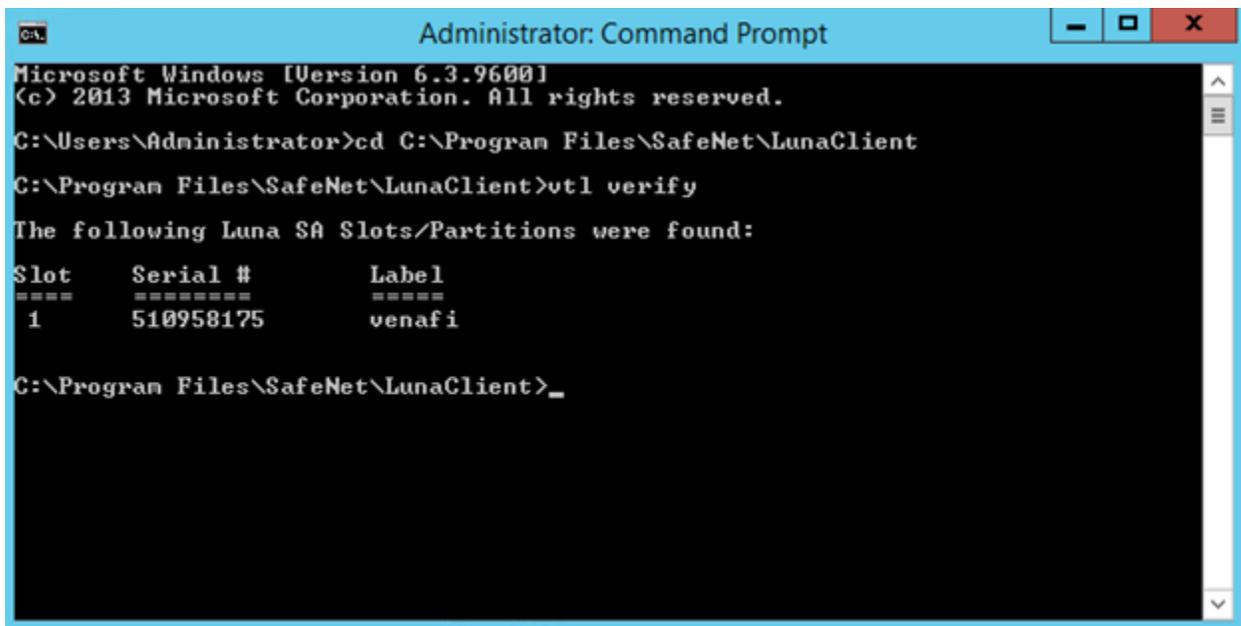
1969 [2.2.2.5.2 Verify the Network Trust Link Between Venafi and the HSM](#)

1970 The Luna Client installed on the server enables communication between Venafi and the HSM via a  
1971 secure connection or an NTL. If the NTL has not been set up during HSM/client installation, reference  
1972 Section [2.2.2.2](#) of this guide.

1973 Use the `vtl verify` command in the installed client directory (typically `C:\Program`  
1974 `Files\SafeNet\LunaClient`) to determine if the connection was established and that a partition exists on  
1975 the HSM that the client can access. If no slot and partition are found, the NTL is not established.

1976 The slot number and partition password will be needed when configuring Venafi to use the HSM.

1977 `vtl verify`



```
Administrator: Command Prompt
Microsoft Windows [Version 6.3.9600]
(c) 2013 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.
C:\Users\Administrator>cd C:\Program Files\SafeNet\LunaClient
C:\Program Files\SafeNet\LunaClient>vtl verify
The following Luna SA Slots/Partitions were found:
Slot      Serial #      Label
====      =====      =====
1         510958175    venafi
C:\Program Files\SafeNet\LunaClient>_
```

1978  
1979 For further configuration between the HSM and Venafi TPP, please reference Section [2.6.13.3](#).

1980 [2.2.3 Day N: Ongoing Security Management and Maintenance](#)

1981 [2.2.3.1 Prerequisites](#)

- 1982
  - remote system logging server

1983 [2.2.3.2 Remote System Logging](#)

1984 Refer to the Luna SA syslog commands to use the remote system logging on any UNIX/Linux system that  
1985 supports the standard syslog service. Refer to the Luna SA syslog commands under “syslog remotehost”  
1986 (subcommands “add,” “delete,” and “list”) for more information. The remote host must have User

1987 Datagram Protocol (UDP) port 514 open to receive the logging. Refer to the host's OS and firewall  
1988 documentation for more information.

1989 1. Type the command below on the Luna SA appliance:

1990 `lunash:>syslog remotehost add 192.168.1.12`

1991 2. Start syslog with the “-r” option on the receiving or target system to allow it to receive the logs  
1992 from the Luna SA appliance(s).

### 1993 2.2.3.3 Audit Logging

1994 With Luna SA, the audit logs can be sent to one or more remote logging servers. Either UDP or  
1995 Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) protocol can be specified. The default is UDP and port 514.

#### 1996 2.2.3.3.1 UDP Logging

1997 If using UDP protocol for logging:

1998 ■ The following is required in `/etc/rsyslog.conf`

1999 `$ModLoad imudp`

2000 `$InputUDPServerRun (PORT)`

2001 ■ Possible approaches include:

2002 1. With templates:

2003 `$template AuditFile,"/var/log/luna/audit_remote.log"`

2004 `$syslogfacility-text == 'local3' then ?AuditFile;AuditFormat`

2005 2. Without templates:

2006 `local3.* /var/log/audit.log;AuditFormat`

2007 3. Dynamic file name:

2008 `$template DynFile,"/var/log/luna/%HOSTNAME%.log"`

2009 `if $syslogfacility-text == 'local3' then ?DynFile;AuditFormat`

2010 ■ The important thing to remember is that the incoming logs go to local3, and the Port/Protocol  
2011 that is set on the Luna appliance must be the same that is set on the server running rsyslog.

#### 2012 2.2.3.3.2 TCP Logging

2013 Here is an example to set up a remote Linux system to receive the audit logs by using TCP.

2014 ■ Register the remote Linux system IP address or host name with the Luna SA:

2015 `lunash:> audit remotes host add -host 172.20.9.160 -protocol tcp -port 1660`

## 2016 **2.3 DigiCert Certificate Authority**

### 2017 **2.3.1 Day 0: Installation and Standard Configuration**

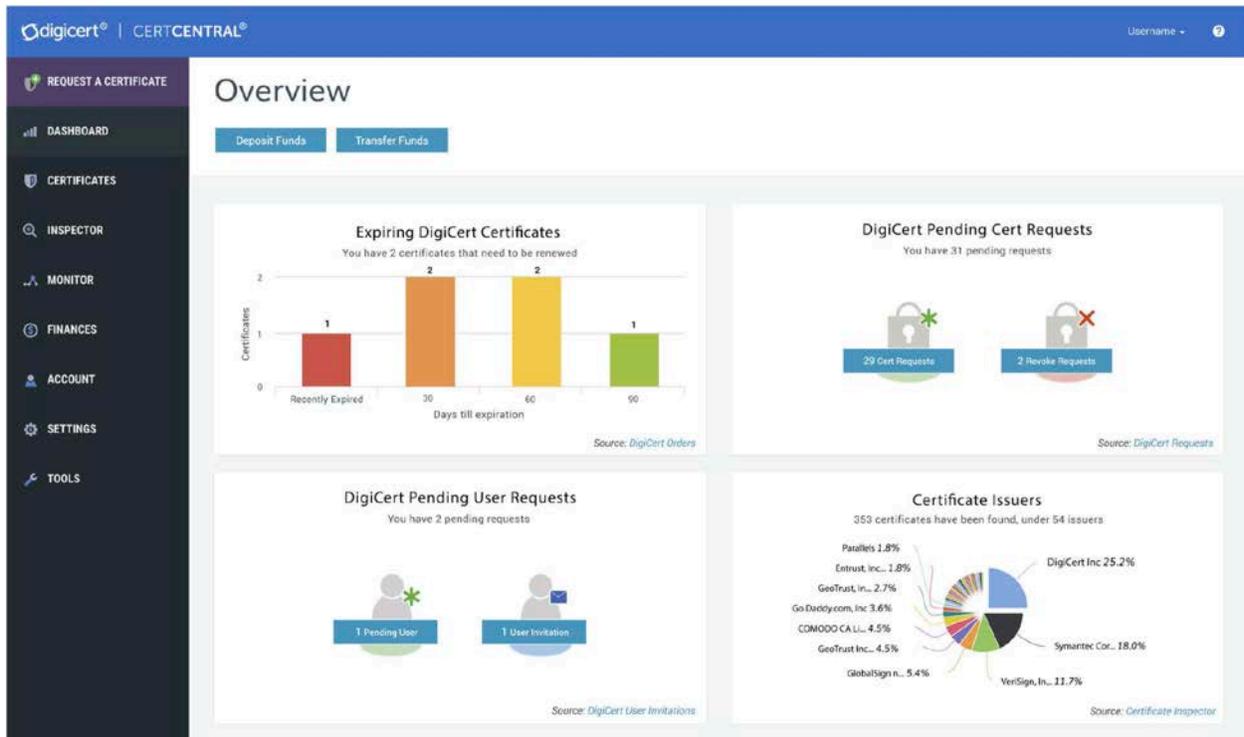
#### 2018 **2.3.1.1 Certificate Prerequisites for Domain Validation and Organization Validation**

- 2019     ▪ organization validation—can be an individual or group/team
- 2020     ▪ domain validation process—DNS text (TXT) record validation
- 2021     ▪ must have resolvable FQDN entered in zone file (*tls.nccoe.org, app1.tls.nccoe.org*)
- 2022     ▪ access to DigiCert’s web-based registration system
- 2023     ▪ account sign-up

#### 2024 **2.3.1.2 Standard Configuration**

##### 2025 **2.3.1.2.1 Account Sign-Up**

- 2026     1. Start the account sign-up process at <https://www.digicert.com/account/signup/>.
- 2027     2. Complete the **Your information**, **Organization information**, and **Account information** sections.
- 2028     3. Read and accept the terms of the Certificate Services Agreement. Check the box to acknowledge
- 2029     acceptance of the terms.
- 2030     4. Click the **Sign Up** button to create a CertCentral account.



2031

2032 [2.3.1.2.2 Language Preferences](#)

2033 Currently, CertCentral supports the following languages:

- 2034  Deutsch
- 2035  English
- 2036  Español
- 2037  Français
- 2038  Italiano
- 2039  Português
- 2040  한국어
- 2041  日本語
- 2042  简体中文
- 2043  繁體中文

- 2044 1. To change the language in the CertCentral account, click the account name at the upper-right
- 2045 side of the screen and select **My Profile** from the drop-down list.

- 2046 2. On the Profile Settings page in the **Language** drop-down list, select the language preference for  
2047 the account.  
2048 3. Click **Save Changes**. The language in CertCentral should now be the same as the one selected.

#### 2049 2.3.1.2.3 Billing Contact

2050 To edit the assigned Billing Contact in the CertCentral account:

- 2051 1. In the sidebar menu, click **Finances > Settings**.  
2052 2. On the Finance Settings page, click **Edit** under **Billing Contact** in the right column.  
2053 3. In the **Edit Billing Contact** window, set or change the contact information.  
2054 4. Click **Update Billing Contact** to save the change.

#### 2055 2.3.1.2.4 Authentication Settings

2056 Authentication settings allow control over the user login options for the CertCentral account and to set  
2057 security standards for password requirements and alternative authentication methods.  
2058

2059 To access the CertCentral authentication options:

- 2060 1. In the CertCentral account in the sidebar menu, click **Settings > Authentication Settings**.  
2061 On this page, the following settings can be changed:  
2062
  - Minimum Length: Change the minimum allowed password character length.
  - Minimum Categories: Change the variety of characters allowed (uppercase, lowercase,  
2063 numbers, and symbols).
  - Expires After: Change the password expiration policy.
  - Two-Factor Authentication: Enable or disable onetime password two-factor  
2066 authentication for CertCentral users.  
2067  
2068 2. Configure the authentication settings as desired, then click **Save Settings**.

#### 2069 2.3.1.2.5 Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) Single Sign-On Prerequisites

2070 SAML is a highly recommended DigiCert feature for secure user authentication. However, it is not  
2071 required to duplicate the TLS lab setup. For more information on SAML, please refer to guidance at:

- 2072
  - <https://pages.nist.gov/800-63-3/sp800-63-3.html>

2073 Before beginning, make sure the following prerequisites are met:

- 2074
  - Have a CertCentral account.
  - Have SAML enabled on the CertCentral account. (To get the SAML features turned on for the  
2075 CertCentral account, contact the DigiCert account representative or the DigiCert support team.  
2076 Once activated, in the sidebar menu, under Settings, see the Single Sign-On and SAML  
2077 Certificate Request menu options.)  
2078

- 2079       ▪ Have an identity provider (IdP).
- 2080       ▪ Have the IdP metadata (dynamic or static).
- 2081       ▪ Have admin privileges on the CertCentral account (or have manager privileges on the
- 2082       CertCentral account with the Allow access to SAML settings permission).

2083

2084    2.3.1.2.6   Organization Validation

2085    To validate an organization, DigiCert firsts verifies the organization requesting a certificate is in good  
 2086    standing. This may include confirming good standing and active registration in corporate registries. It  
 2087    may also include verifying the organization is not listed in any fraud, phishing, or government-restricted  
 2088    entities and anti-terrorism databases. Additionally, DigiCert verifies the organization requesting a  
 2089    certificate is, in fact, the organization to which the certificate will be issued. DigiCert also verifies the  
 2090    organization contact.

- 2091       1. In the CertCentral account, using the sidebar menu, click **Certificates > Organizations**.
- 2092       2. On the **Organizations** page, click **New Organization**.
- 2093       3. On the **New Organization** page, under **Organization Details**, enter the specified organization
- 2094       information:

<b>Legal Name</b>	Enter the organization’s legally registered name.
<b>Assumed Name</b>	If the organization has a doing-business-as name and the name should appear on the certificates, enter the name here. If not, leave this box blank.
<b>Organization Phone Number</b>	Enter a phone number at which the organization can be contacted.
<b>Country</b>	In the drop-down list, select the country where the organization is legally located.
<b>Address 1</b>	Enter the address where the organization is legally located.
<b>Address 2</b>	Enter a second address, if applicable.
<b>City</b>	Enter the city where the organization is legally located.
<b>State/Province/Territory/Region/County</b>	Enter the state, province, territory, region, or county where the organization is legally located.
<b>Zip Code/Postal Code</b>	Enter the zip or postal code for the organization’s location.

2095 4. Under **Validation Contact**, provide the contact's information:

<b>First Name</b>	Enter the contact's first name.
<b>Last Name</b>	Enter the contact's last name.
<b>Job Title</b>	Enter the contact's job title.
<b>Email</b>	Enter an email address at which the contact can be reached.
<b>Phone Number</b>	Enter a phone number at which the contact can be reached.
<b>Phone Extension</b>	Enter the contact's extension, if applicable.

2096 5. When finished, click **Save Organization**.

2097 Submit an organization for validation.

2098 6. In the CertCentral account, using the sidebar menu, click **Certificates > Organizations**.

2099 7. On the **Organizations** page, use the drop-down list, search box, and column headers to filter the  
2100 list of organizations.

2101 8. Click the link for the organization being submitted for validation and authorization for  
2102 certificates.

2103 9. On the organization's information page in the **Submit Organization for Validation** section, select  
2104 the validation types (certificates) needed for DigiCert to validate the organization's information  
2105 below:

2106  OV—Normal Organization Validation (Recommended)

2107  EV—Extended Organization Validation (EV)

2108  Private SSL—DigiCert Private SSL Certificate

2109  CS—Code Signing Organization Validation

2110  EV CS—Code Signing Organization Extended Validation (EV CS)

2111  DS—Document Signing Validation

2112  Add verified contact (EV/EV CS, and CS).

2113 If the organization validation chosen is not OV, refer to [https://docs.digicert.com/manage-](https://docs.digicert.com/manage-certificates/organization-domain-management/managing-domains-cc-guide/)  
2114 [certificates/organization-domain-management/managing-domains-cc-guide/](https://docs.digicert.com/manage-certificates/organization-domain-management/managing-domains-cc-guide/) for additional  
2115 details.

2116 10. When finished, click **Submit for Validation**.

#### 2117 2.3.1.2.7 Domain Validation

2118 DigiCert's domain validation process ensures the organization requesting a certificate is authorized to  
2119 request a certificate for the domain in question. Domain validation can include emails or phone calls to  
2120 the contacts listed in a domain's WHOIS record as well as emails to default administrative addresses at

2121 the domain. For example, DigiCert may send an authorization email to the administrator@domain.com  
2122 or webmaster@domain.com but would not send an authorization email to [tech@domain.com](mailto:tech@domain.com).

2123 Note: To validate a domain by using DNS TXT, see the steps below. To use an alternative method, refer  
2124 to **Error! Hyperlink reference not valid.**[https://docs.digicert.com/manage-certificates/organization-](https://docs.digicert.com/manage-certificates/organization-domain-management/managing-domains-cc-guide/)  
2125 [domain-management/managing-domains-cc-guide/](https://docs.digicert.com/manage-certificates/organization-domain-management/managing-domains-cc-guide/).

2126 Step I: Add and Authorize a Domain for TLS/SSL Certificates

- 2127 1. In the CertCentral account in the sidebar menu, click **Certificates > Domains**.
- 2128 2. On the **Domains** page, click **New Domain**.
- 2129 3. On the **New Domain** page, under **Domain Details**, enter the following domain information:
  - 2130 a. **Domain Name**  
2131 In the box, enter the domain name that the certificates will secure (for  
2132 example, *yourdomain.com*).
  - 2133 b. **Organization**  
2134 In the drop-down list, select the organization to assign to the domain.
- 2135 4. Under **Validate This Domain For**, check the validation types needed for the domain to be  
2136 validated:
  - 2137 o **OV—Normal Organization Validation (Recommended)**  
2138 Use this option to order Standard SSL, Secure Site SSL, Wildcard SSL, Secure Site  
2139 Wildcard SSL, Multi-Domain SSL, and Secure Site Multi-Domain SSL certificates for this  
2140 domain.
- 2141 5. Under **Domain Control Validation (DCV) Method**, select **DNS TXT Record**.  
2142 Note: The default DCV method is by verification email.
- 2143 6. When finished, click **Submit for Validation**.

2144 Step II: Use DNS TXT Record to Demonstrate Control Over the Domain

- 2145 1. **Create the DNS TXT record:**
  - 2146 a. Under **User Actions** in the **Your unique verification token** box, copy the verification  
2147 token.  
2148 To copy the value to the clipboard, click in the text field.  
2149 Note: The unique verification token expires after 30 days. To generate a new token, click  
2150 the **Generate New Token** link.
  - 2151 b. Go to the organization's DNS provider's site and create a new TXT record.
  - 2152 c. In the **TXT Value** field, paste the verification code copied from the CertCentral account.
  - 2153 d. Host field
    - 2154 i. **Base Domain**  
2155 If validating the base domain, leave the **Host** field blank, or use the @ symbol  
2156 (dependent on the DNS provider requirements).

- 2157                   ii.     **Subdomain**
- 2158                             In the **Host** field, enter the subdomain being validated.
- 2159                   e.     In the record type field (or equivalent), select **TXT**.
- 2160                   f.     Select a Time-to-Live value, or use the organization’s DNS provider’s default value.
- 2161                   g.     Save the record.
- 2162     2.   **Verify the DNS TXT record:**
- 2163                   a.     In the CertCentral account, using the sidebar menu, click **Certificates > Domains**.
- 2164                   b.     On the **Domains** page in the **Domain Name** column, click the link for the domain.
- 2165                   c.     On the domain information page (e.g., *example.com*) at the bottom of the page,
- 2166                             click **Check TXT**.

## 2167   2.3.2 Day 1: Integration Configuration

### 2168   2.3.2.1 Generate API Key

2169   DigiCert Services API provides the foundation for the CertCentral web portal. Because DigiCert  
2170   developed CertCentral as an API-first web application, the DigiCert Services API allows one to automate  
2171   CertCentral web application workflows and typical certificate processes and to streamline certificate  
2172   management. To access DigiCert Services API documentation, see the [DigiCert Developers Portal](#). The  
2173   services API uses RESTful conventions. The DigiCert Services API requires a DigiCert Developer API key,  
2174   which is included in the header as part of each request.

#### 2175   Generate API Key

- 2176     1.   In the CertCentral account, using the side bar menu, click **Account > Account Access**.
- 2177     2.   On the **Account Access** page in the **API Key** section, click **Add API Key**.
- 2178     3.   In the **Add API Key** window, in the **Description** box, enter a description/name for the API key.
- 2179     4.   In the **User** drop-down, select the user to whom they key should be assigned/linked.
- 2180         Note:   When linking a key to a user, link that user’s permissions to the key. The API key has the  
2181                 same permissions as the user and can perform any action that the user can.
- 2182     5.   Click **Add API Key**.
- 2183     6.   In the **New API Key** window, click on the generated key to copy it.
- 2184     7.   Save the key in a secure location.
- 2185         Note:   The API keys will be displayed only one time. If the window is closed without recording  
2186                 the new API key, the key cannot be recorded again.
- 2187     8.   When done, click **I understand I will not see this again**.

### 2188   2.3.2.2 Venafi Integration (Automated)

2189   Venafi integrates with the DigiCert Services API. The integrated solution leverages DigiCert’s Online  
2190   Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) infrastructure and API integration with Venafi’s machine identity  
2191   protection platform. Customers can customize specific features, from fully automating certificate

2192 provisioning to enforcing internal policies, allowing them to address industry regulations such as  
2193 Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard, Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of  
2194 1996, and General Data Protection Regulation. The integrated solution also simplifies integration of  
2195 machine identity protection across a wide variety of systems and allows customers to fulfill certificate  
2196 requests.

### 2197 2.3.2.3 Order Certificate Directly Through CertCentral (Manual Process)

2198 The TLS certificate life cycle begins when a TLS certificate is ordered. The process for requesting any of  
2199 the available certificates is the same:

- 2200     ▪ Create a CSR.
- 2201     ▪ Fill out the order form by clicking the **Request a Certificate** button from the left navigation bar.
- 2202     ▪ Complete domain control validation for the domains on the order (in other words, demonstrate  
2203 control over the domains).
- 2204     ▪ Complete organization validation for the organization on the certificate order.

### 2205 2.3.2.4 Order an OV Single- or Multi-Domain TLS Certificate

2206 When ordering Multi-Domain SSL certificates, add **Other Hostnames (SANs)** to the certificate order. This  
2207 option is not available for the single-domain certificates.

- 2208     1. **Create the CSR.**
- 2209     2. **Select the OV Single- or Multi-Domain SSL/TLS certificate.**
  - 2210         a. In the CertCentral account in the sidebar menu, click **Request a Certificate**, and then  
2211             under All Products, click **Product Summary**.
  - 2212         b. On the Request a Certificate page, look over the certificate options and select the  
2213             certificate.
- 2214     3. **Add the CSR.**

2215         On the Request page, under Certificate Settings, upload the CSR to or paste it in the **Add Your**  
2216         **CSR** box.

2217         When copying the text from the CSR file, make sure to include the -----BEGIN NEW CERTIFICATE  
2218         REQUEST----- and -----END NEW CERTIFICATE REQUEST----- tags.
- 2219     4. **Common Name**

2220         Type the common name in the box, or under Common Name, expand **Show Recently Created**  
2221         **Domains**, and select the domain from the list.
- 2222     5. **Other Hostnames (SANs)**

2223         In the **Other Hostnames (SANs)** field, enter the additional host names needed for the certificate  
2224         to be secure.

2225         For Multi-Domain certificates, four SANs are included in the base price of each certificate.  
2226         Additional SANs (over those included in the base price) increase the cost of the certificate.
- 2227     6. **Validity Period**

2228 Select a validity period for the certificate: one year, two years, custom expiration date, or  
2229 custom length.

2230 **Custom Validity Periods**

- 2231 ○ Certificate pricing is prorated to match the custom certificate length.
- 2232 ○ Certificate validity cannot exceed the industry-allowed maximum life-cycle period for  
2233 the certificate.
- 2234 For example, a 900-day validity period cannot be set for a certificate.

2235 **7. Additional Certificate Options**

2236 The information requested in this section is optional.

2237 Expand **Additional Certificate Options** and provide information as needed.

2238 a. **Signature Hash**

2239 Unless there is a specific reason for choosing a different signature hash, DigiCert  
2240 recommends using the default signature hash: Secure Hash Algorithm 256.

2241 b. **Server Platform**

2242 Select the server or system generated on the CSR.

2243 c. **Organization Unit(s)**

2244 Adding organization units is optional. This field can be left blank. If the CSR includes an  
2245 organization unit, we use it to populate the Organization Unit(s) box.

2246 Note: If an organization's units are included in the order, DigiCert will need to validate  
2247 them before issuing a certificate.

2248 d. **Auto-Renew**

2249 To set up automatic renewal for this certificate, check **Auto-renew order 30 days before**  
2250 **expiration.**

2251 With auto-renew enabled, a new certificate order will be automatically submitted when  
2252 this certificate nears its expiration date. If the certificate still has time remaining before  
2253 it expires, DigiCert adds the remaining time from the current certificate to the new  
2254 certificate (as long as 825 days or approximately 27 months).

2255 Note: Auto-renew cannot be used with credit card payments. To automatically renew  
2256 a certificate, the order must be charged to an account balance.

2257 8. To add an organization, click **Add Organization**. Add a new organization or an existing  
2258 organization in the account.

2259 Note: When adding a new organization, DigiCert will need to validate the organization before  
2260 issuing a certificate.

2261 **9. Add Contacts**

2262 Two different contacts can be added to the order: Organization and Technical.

2263 **Organization Contact (required)**

2264 The **Organization Contact** is someone who works for the organization included in the certificate  
2265 order. DigiCert will contact the **Organization Contact** to validate the organization and verify the

2266 request for OV TLS/SSL certificates. DigiCert also sends this person an order confirmation and  
2267 renewal emails.

2268 **Technical Contact (optional)**

2269 In addition to the **Organization Contact**, the **Technical Contact** will receive order emails,  
2270 including the one with the certificate attached, as well as renewal notifications.

2271 **10. Additional Order Options**

2272 The information asked for in this section is optional.

2273 Expand **Additional Order Options** and add information as needed.

2274 a. **Comments to Administrator**

2275 Enter any information the administrator might need for approving the request, such as  
2276 the purpose of the certificate.

2277 b. **Order Specific Renewal Message**

2278 To create a renewal message for this certificate right now, type a renewal message with  
2279 information possibly relevant to the certificate's renewal.

2280 Note: Comments and renewal messages are not included in the certificate.

2281 **11. Additional Emails**

2282 Enter the email addresses (comma separated) for the people who want to receive the certificate  
2283 notification emails, such as certificate issuance, duplicate certificate, and certificate renewals.

2284 Note: These recipients cannot manage the order; however, they will receive all the certificate-  
2285 related emails.

2286 **12. Select Payment Method**

2287 Under **Payment Information**, select a payment method to pay for the certificate.

2288 **13. Certificate Services Agreement**

2289 Read the agreement and check **I agree to the Certificate Services Agreement**.

2290 **14. Click Submit Certificate Request.**

2291 **2.3.2.5 Manage Order Within CertCentral (Manual)**

2292 After submitting the TLS certificate order, DCV and organization validation must be completed before  
2293 DigiCert can issue the certificate.

2294 If the certificate does not immediately issue, please ensure all Day 0 activities have been completed  
2295 (Organization Validation and Domain Validation).

2296 **2.3.2.6 Download a Certificate from the CertCentral Account**

2297 After DigiCert issues the certificate, access it from inside the CertCentral account.

2298 1. In the CertCentral account, go to the **Orders** page.

2299 In the sidebar menu, click **Certificates > Orders**.

2300 2. On the **Orders** page, use the filters and advanced search features to locate the certificate to be  
2301 downloaded.

2302 3. In the **Order #** column of the certificate to be downloaded, click the **Quick View** link.

- 2303 4. In the **Order #** details pane (on the right), using the **Download Certificate As** drop-down, select  
2304 the certificate format to be used.
- 2305 ○ **.crt (best for Apache/Linux)**  
2306 Download the certificate in a .crt format, best for Apache/Linux platforms.
  - 2307 ○ **.pb7 (best for Microsoft and Java)**  
2308 Download the certificate in a .pb7 format, best for Microsoft and Java platforms.
- 2309 5. (OPTIONAL) In the **Download Certificate As** drop-down, click **More Options** to see more **Server**  
2310 **Platform** options and **File Type** options or to download only the **Certificate**, the **Intermediate**  
2311 **Certificate**, or the **Root Certificate**.
- 2312 6. **Download a Combined Certificate File**  
2313 In the **Download Certificate** window, under **Combined Certificate Files**, use any of these options  
2314 to download the combined SSL certificate file.
- 2315 a. **Platform specific**  
2316 In the **Server Platform** drop-down, select the server where the SSL/TLS certificate will be  
2317 installed, and then click **Download**.
  - 2318 b. **File type specific**  
2319 In the **File Type** drop-down, select the SSL/TLS file format to be downloaded, and then  
2320 click **Download**.
- 2321 7. In the **Download Certificate** window, under **Individual Certificate Files**, use one of these options  
2322 to download an individual certificate file.
- 2323 a. **Server certificate file**  
2324 Under **Certificate**, click the **Download** link. Save the server certificate file to the server  
2325 or workstation, making sure to note the location.
  - 2326 b. **Intermediate certificate file**  
2327 Under **Intermediate Certificate**, click the **Download** link. Save the intermediate  
2328 certificate file to the server or workstation, making sure to note the location.
  - 2329 c. **Root certificate file**  
2330 Under **Root Certificate**, click the **Download** link. Save the root certificate file to the  
2331 server or workstation, making sure to note the location.

## 2332 2.3.3 Day N: Ongoing Security Management and Maintenance

### 2333 2.3.3.1 Ongoing Auditing

2334 Once the users, divisions, domains, and organizations have been added, an account audit may need to  
2335 be executed to highlight areas where training is required, reconstruct events, detect intrusions, and  
2336 discover problem areas.

2337 **2.3.3.2 Run an Audit**

- 2338 1. In the CertCentral account, using the sidebar menu, click **Account > Audit Logs**.
- 2339 2. On the **Audit Logs** page, use the filters to filter the results of the audit.
- 2340 a. Choose a filter (for example, User).
- 2341 b. In the filter drop-down, select an option (for example, select a user).
- 2342 c. Wait for the filter to modify the audit log before using another filter.

2343 **2.3.3.3 Set Up Audit Log Notifications**

2344 To be of help to the organization, log data must be reviewed. The audit log notifications feature can be  
2345 used to keep aware of certain activities as well as make log review more meaningful.

- 2346 1. In the CertCentral account, using the sidebar menu, click **Account > Audit Logs**.
- 2347 2. On the **Audit Logs** page, click **Audit Log Notifications**.
- 2348 3. On the **Audit Log Notifications** page, under **Create a New Notification**, take the following steps:

<b>Email Address</b>	Enter the email address of the person to whom the audit log notifications are to be sent.
<b>Division</b>	In the drop-down, select the divisions whose account activity needs to be monitored.
<b>Notify me about</b>	Check any of the following options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Order Changes</b> Alerts if any changes are made to certificate orders.</li><li>• <b>User Changes</b> Alerts if any edits are made to any user accounts.</li><li>• <b>User Logins</b> Alerts of all account logins.</li><li>• <b>Logins from Invalid IP Addresses</b> Alerts if any account logins are made from invalid IP addresses.</li><li>• <b>Certificate Revocations</b> Alerts to all certificates are revocations.</li></ul>

- 2349 4. When finished, click **Save Changes**.

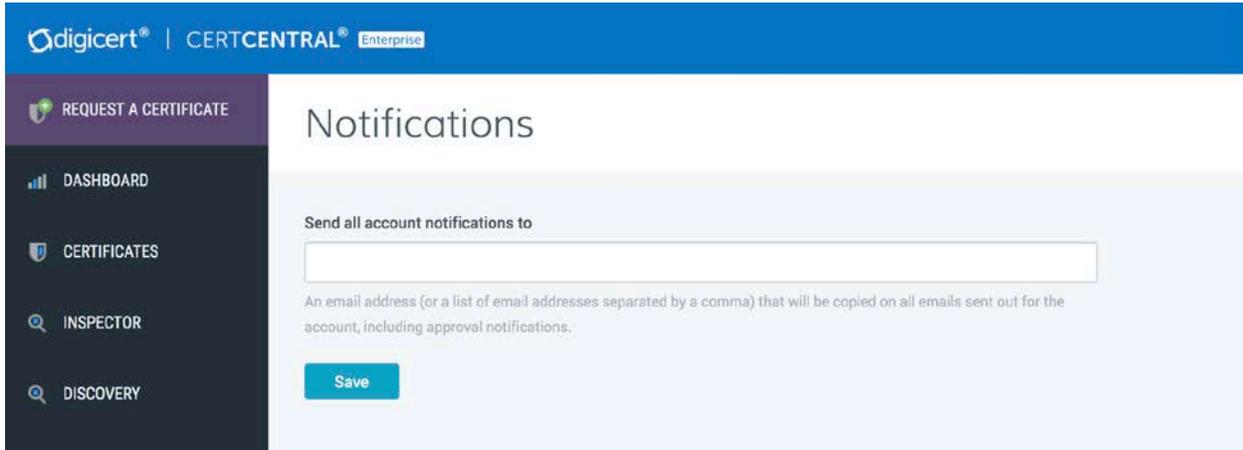
2350 The designated individual should start receiving the selected audit log notifications.

2351 **2.3.3.4 Notification Management**

2352 Typically, notifications are not strictly required when utilizing Venafi to manage certificates, as expiring  
2353 certificates are renewed automatically (or not) based on configured policy within Venafi. However, it is  
2354 beneficial to configure renewal notifications within CertCentral.

2355 [2.3.3.4.1 Account Notifications](#)

2356 Before sending email from an account, assign an email address to receive a copy of any message sent  
2357 (e.g., approval notifications). Configure renewal notifications and add default renewal messages that  
2358 include renewal notifications.



2359

2360 [2.3.3.4.2 Set Up Email Notification Accounts](#)

- 2361 1. In the CertCentral account's sidebar menu, click **Settings > Notifications**.
- 2362 2. On the **Notifications** page in the **Send all account notifications to** box, add the email addresses  
2363 that should be copied on all emails sent from the account.  
2364 Note: When setting up multiple notification accounts, use commas to separate the email  
2365 addresses.
- 2366 3. When finished, click **Save**.

2367 [2.3.3.4.3 Certificate Renewal Notifications](#)

2368 After DigiCert has issued the first certificate, configure the **Certificate Renewal Settings** (such as when  
2369 renewal notifications are sent and to whom notifications are sent) to help prevent unexpected  
2370 certificate expirations.

2371

2372 When configuring the certificate renewal settings, there are two options:

- 2373 1. **Nonescalation Certificate Renewals**  
2374 This option sends renewal notifications to the same email addresses at every stage as  
2375 certificates get closer to expiration or after they have expired.
- 2376 2. **Escalation Certificate Renewals**  
2377 This option configures email escalation settings in which additional email addresses can receive  
2378 renewal notifications at critical stages as certificates get closer to expiring or after they have  
2379 expired. This allows additional oversight of certificate expiration.

#### 2380 2.3.3.4.4 Configure Nonescalation Renewal Notifications

2381 Use the steps below to send all renewal notifications to the same email addresses at every stage as  
2382 certificates get closer to expiring or after they have expired.

- 2383 1. In the CertCentral account's sidebar menu, click **Settings > Preferences**.
- 2384 2. On the **Division Preferences** page, scroll down to the **Certificate Renewal Settings**, and  
2385 uncheck **Enable Escalation**.
- 2386 3. In the **Send request renewal notifications to** box, enter the email addresses for the people who  
2387 should receive the renewal notifications (comma separated).
- 2388 4. Under **When certificates are scheduled to expire in**, check the boxes to indicate when to send  
2389 renewal notices.  
2390 Note: These options determine when email notifications are sent. For example, if only **30**  
2391 **days, 7 days, and 3 days** are checked, no email notifications will be sent **90 days or 60**  
2392 **days** before certificates expire.
- 2393 5. In the **Default Renewal Message** box, type an optional renewal message for inclusion in all the  
2394 renewal notification emails.
- 2395 6. Click **Save Settings** when finished.

#### 2396 2.3.3.4.5 Configure Escalation Renewal Notifications

2397 Email escalation settings allow control over what email addresses will receive renewal notifications at  
2398 each stage as certificates approach or reach expiration.

- 2399 1. In the CertCentral account's sidebar menu, click **Settings > Preferences**.
- 2400 2. On the **Division Preferences** page, scroll down to **Certificate Renewal Settings**, and  
2401 check **Enable Escalation**.
- 2402 3. Under **Days before expiration**, check the boxes for when renewal notices should be sent.
- 2403 4. Under **Additional email addresses or distribution lists**, enter the email addresses for the people  
2404 who should receive each renewal notification (comma separated).
- 2405 5. In the **Default Renewal Message** box, type an optional renewal message for inclusion in all  
2406 renewal notification emails.
- 2407 6. Click **Save Settings** when finished.

#### 2408 2.3.3.5 Managing Custom Order Fields

2409 CertCentral allows users to add custom fields to certificate order forms. Use the custom field metadata  
2410 to search or sort a set of certificate orders that match the metadata search criteria.

2411 Note: The **Custom Fields** feature is off by default. To enable this feature for a CertCentral account,  
2412 please contact a DigiCert account representative.

2413 Once enabled for a CertCentral account, the **Custom Order Fields** menu option is added to the sidebar  
2414 menu under **Settings (Settings > Custom Order Fields)**.

2415 **2.3.3.5.1 Custom order form field features**

- 2416     ▪ Apply to Future and Present Requests—When a custom order form field is added, the field is also  
2417 added to pending requests. If the field is required, the pending requests cannot be approved  
2418 until the field is completed.
- 2419     ▪ Apply to Entire Account—When custom order form fields are added, the fields are applied to the  
2420 order forms for the entire account. Custom order form fields cannot be set per division.
- 2421     ▪ Apply to All Certificate Types—When custom order form fields are created, the fields are added  
2422 to the order forms for all certificate types (SSL, Client, Code Signing, etc.). A custom order form  
2423 field cannot be added to the order forms for only SSL certificate types.
- 2424     ▪ Apply to Guest URLs—When custom order form fields are added, these fields are added to the  
2425 certificates ordered from directly inside the CertCentral account as well as from any guest URLs  
2426 that have been sent.
- 2427     ▪ Different Types to Choose From—When custom order form fields are created, different types of  
2428 fields can be added such as single-line and multiple-line text boxes and email address and email  
2429 address list boxes.
- 2430     ▪ Required or Optional—When custom order form fields are added, they can be required or  
2431 optional. Required fields must be completed before the order can be approved. Optional fields  
2432 can be left blank.
- 2433     ▪ Deactivated or Activated—After a custom order form field has been added, the field can be  
2434 deactivated (removed) and activated (added back) as needed. Deactivated fields are removed  
2435 from pending requests but not from issued orders. Activated fields are added to pending  
2436 requests. If the field is required, it must be completed before the request can be approved.

2437 **2.3.3.5.2 Add a Custom Field to Request Forms**

- 2438 1. In the CertCentral account in the sidebar menu, click **Settings > Custom Order Fields**.
- 2439 2. On the **Custom Order Form Fields** page, click the **Add Custom Order Form Field** link.
- 2440 3. In the **Add Custom Order Form Field** window, configure the custom field:

<b>Label</b>	In the box, type a name/label for the field (e.g., Direct Report’s Email Address).
<b>Input Type</b>	In the drop-down list, select an input type for the field (i.e., email address). Input Types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>Anything:</b> Single-line text box</li> <li>▪ <b>Text:</b> Multiline text box</li> <li>▪ <b>Integer:</b> Number box (limited to nondecimal whole numbers)</li> <li>▪ <b>Email Address:</b> Single email address box</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>Email Address List:</b> Multiple email address box</li> </ul>
<b>This field should be required for all new requests</b>	<p>If the field needs to be completed before the request can be submitted (or approved for pending requests), check this box.</p> <p>Note: If this box is not checked, the field appears on the order form with the word “optional” in the box. The requester does not need to complete the box for the request to be submitted (or approved for pending requests).</p>

2441 4. When finished, click **Add Custom Form Field**.

### 2442 2.3.3.6 User Management

2443 Add a user to the CertCentral account.

- 2444 1. In the CertCentral account in the sidebar menu, click **Account > Users**.
- 2445 2. On the **Users** page, click **Add User**.
- 2446 3. On the **Add User** page in the **User Details** section, enter the new user’s information.
- 2447 4. In the **User Access** section, assign the user a role, and configure their division access if
- 2448 applicable:

<b>Username</b>	We recommend using the user’s email address.
<b>Restrict this user to specific divisions</b>	<p>Check this box if the role should be restricted to specific divisions.</p> <p>Note: This option appears only if divisions within the CertCentral account are being used.</p>
<b>User is restricted to the following divisions</b>	<p>Select the divisions to which the role is restricted.</p> <p>Note: This drop-down appears only if “Restrict this user to specific divisions” is checked.</p>
<b>Allow this user to log in only through SAML Single Sign-On SSO</b>	<p>Check this box if this user should be restricted from being able to log in with username and password.</p> <p>Note: SAML SSO must be configured in the account and the IdP must be configured with this user’s information.</p>
<b>Role</b>	Select a role for the new user: Administrator, Standard User, Finance Manager, or Manager.
<b>Limit to placing and managing their own orders</b>	To create a Limited User role, select Standard User, and check this box.

2449 5. When finished, click **Add User**.

2450 **What’s next**

2451 The newly added user will receive an email with instructions for setting up their account credentials and  
2452 can use them to sign in to their CertCentral account.

### 2453 2.3.3.7 Revalidation Processes

2454 Organization and domain validation typically expire in two years. When the validation status nears  
2455 expiration, CertCentral sends a notification and automatically initiates a revalidation process. The user  
2456 should complete the steps outlined in Day 0 Organization Validation and Domain Validation. The  
2457 standards governing the requirements surrounding (re)validation processes are encapsulated in the  
2458 CA/Browser Forum's Baseline Requirements ([https://cabforum.org/baseline-requirements-](https://cabforum.org/baseline-requirements-documents/)  
2459 [documents/](https://cabforum.org/baseline-requirements-documents/)). The specific allowed methods of validation will change over time.

2460 Note: This revalidation process is outside the Venafi certificate management processes.

- 2461     ▪ OV validation and revalidation: two years
- 2462     ▪ DV validation and revalidation: two years
- 2463     ▪ EV validation and revalidation: one year

2464 Note: Extended Validation provides additional levels of vetting surrounding the legal entity represented  
2465 in a certificate. Vetting ensures that a complete picture of the identity, which has proven control over  
2466 the domain in the certificate, is available to user agents verifying the certificate.

## 2467 2.4 F5 BIG-IP Local Traffic Manager (LTM)

2468 BIG-IP Virtual Edition (VE) is a version of the BIG-IP system that runs as a virtual machine in specifically  
2469 supported hypervisors. BIG-IP VE emulates a hardware-based BIG-IP system running a VE-compatible  
2470 version of BIG-IP software.

### 2471 2.4.1 Day 0: Installation and Standard Configuration

#### 2472 2.4.1.1 Prerequisites

- 2473     ▪ VMware ESX 6.5
- 2474     ▪ 2 virtual Central Processing Units (CPUs)
- 2475     ▪ 4 GB RAM
- 2476     ▪ 1 x VMXNET3 virtual network adapter or Flexible virtual network adapter (for management)
- 2477     ▪ x virtual VMXNET3 virtual network adapter
- 2478     ▪ 1 x 100 GB Small Computer System Interface disk, by default
- 2479     ▪ connection to a common NTP source
- 2480     ▪ SMTP for BIG-IP to send email alerts

- 2481       ▪ a computer with internet (browser) access to activate license
- 2482       ▪ license key for F5 BIG-IP
- 2483       ▪ F5 Support ID account

#### 2484   2.4.1.2 Download the Virtual Appliance

2485   To deploy BIG-IP VE, download the open virtualization appliance (OVA) file to your local system.

- 2486       1. Open the F5 Downloads page at <https://downloads.f5.com>.
- 2487       2. Log in with an F5 Support ID.
- 2488       3. In the Downloads Overview page, click **Find a Download** button.
- 2489       4. In the Select a Product Line page, click the **BIG-IP v13.x / Virtual Edition...** link.
- 2490       5. In the Select a Product Version... page, click the **13.1.1.4\_Virtual-Edition** link.
- 2491       6. In the Software Terms... page, review, then click **I Accept** button to agree to terms and conditions.
- 2492
- 2493       7. In the Select a Download page, click the **BIGIP-13.1.1.4-0.0.4.ALL-scsi.ova** link.
- 2494       8. In the Download Locations page, click the link nearest to the correct region.
- 2495       9. Save the OVA file to the local computer.

#### 2496   2.4.1.3 Deploying the BIG-IP OVA

2497   Use the Deploy Open Virtualization Format (OVF) Template wizard from within the VMware vSphere client. Follow the steps in this procedure to create an instance of the BIG-IP system that runs as a virtual machine on the host system.

- 2500       1. Start the vSphere Client and log in.
- 2501       2. Launch the **Deploy OVF Template** wizard.
- 2502       3. Select an OVF template from Local file. Select the previously downloaded OVA file.
- 2503       4. In the Virtual machine name field, type in `F51b1.ext-nccoe.org`. Then select the location for this virtual machine. Click **Next**.
- 2504
- 2505       5. Select the compute resource and click **Next**.
- 2506       6. Verify that the OVF template details are correct, then click **Next**.
- 2507       7. Review the template details, then click **Next**.
- 2508       8. Review License agreements. Select "I accept..." and click **Next**.
- 2509       9. Read and accept the license agreement, and click **Next**.
- 2510       10. Accept the default value **2 CPUs** and click **Next**.
- 2511       11. Accept the default value **Thick Provision Lazy Zeroed** and click **Next**.

2512 12. Assign the networks to the network interface cards (NICs) and click **Next**.

2513 ○ NIC 1: VLAN 2199 (Datacenter Secure)

2514 ○ NIC 2: VLAN 2201

2515 ○ NIC 3: VLAN 2197 (DMZ)

2516 13. Review information and click **Finish**.

#### 2517 2.4.1.4 Assigning a Management IP Address to a BIG-IP VE Virtual Machine

2518 The BIG-IP VE virtual machine needs an IP address assigned to its virtual management port.

2519 1. In the main vSphere client window, **Power On** the BIG-IP.

2520 2. Launch a Console session for the BIG-IP.

2521 3. At the login prompt, log in as `root / default`.

2522 4. At the `config #` prompt, type `config`.

2523 The Configure Utility panel appears.

2524 5. Press **Enter** for **OK**.

2525 The Configure IP Address panel appears.

2526 6. For “Automatic configuration...”, choose **No**.

2527 7. For IP Address, type `192.168.3.85` Choose **OK**.

2528 8. For Netmask, type `255.255.255.0`. Choose **OK**.

2529 9. For Management Route, choose **Yes**.

2530 10. For Management Route, type `192.168.3.1` Choose **OK**. The Confirm Configuration panel  
2531 appears. (This Gateway address is used for management traffic.)

2532 11. Review the IP information, and choose **Yes**. Return to the `config #` prompt.

#### 2533 2.4.1.5 Log in to BIG-IP for the First Time

2534 After the initial login to the BIG-IP, the Setup Utility will guide through the initial setup process.

2535 1. Open the browser and navigate to the BIG-IP address `https://192.168.3.85`.

2536 2. Log in as the default admin/admin.



- 2537
- 2538 3. The Setup Utility panel appears, then click **Next**.
- 2539 4. For License, click **Activate**.
- 2540 5. As a prerequisite, the user should already have a BIG-IP VE license key. Copy the key and paste
- 2541 in the Base Registration Key field.
- 2542 6. This step is dependent on internet access for the BIG-IP.
- 2543 a. If the management route configured in the previous section has a path to internet,
- 2544 select **Automatic**. Click **Next**. Review the End User License Agreement (EULA) and click
- 2545 **Agree**. Then go to step 7.
- 2546 b. Otherwise, select **Manual**. Click **Next**.
- 2547 c. **Left-click** in the Dossier field, and select all the encrypted text with **Ctrl-A**. Copy the
- 2548 selected text with **Ctrl-C**.
- 2549 d. Assuming the administration computer has internet access, click the “Click here to
- 2550 access F5...” link. A new browser tab appears.
- 2551 e. In the Enter Your Dossier field, paste in the copied text. Click **Next**.
- 2552 f. Review the EULA, and select “I have read and agree... .” Click **Next**.
- 2553 g. Left-click the license text field, and select all text with **Ctrl-A**. Copy selected text with
- 2554 **Ctrl-C**.
- 2555 h. Return to the BIG-IP Setup Utility. In the License field, paste in the copied text. Click
- 2556 **Next**.
- 2557 7. Some BIG-IP services will restart and log the user off the BIG-IP. It will automatically resume.
- 2558 Click **Continue**.
- 2559 8. Review the License page. Click **Next**.

- 2560 9. On the Resource Provisioning page, verify that the only default value, **Local Traffic (LTM)**, is  
 2561 selected and set to **Nominal**. Click **Next**.
- 2562 10. On the Device Certificates page, leave the default as self-sign device Certificate. Click **Next**.
- 2563 11. On the Platform page, fill these values. Then click **Next**.

Field	Value	Comments
Management Port Configuration	443	
IP Address	192.168.3.85	
Network Mask	255.255.255.0	
Management Route	192.168.3.1	
Host Name	f5lb1.ext-nccoe.org	
Time Zone	EST	
Root Account	<your password>	Refer to NIST SP 800-63B for password guidance.
Admin Account	<your password>	Refer to NIST SP 800-63B for password guidance.

2564

The screenshot shows a configuration page with three main sections:

- General Properties:**
  - Management Port Configuration:  Automatic (DHCP)  Manual
  - Management Port: IP Address(prefix): 192.168.3.85, Network Mask: 255.255.255.0, Management Route: (empty)
  - Host Name: f5lb1.ext-nccoe.org
  - Host IP Address: Use Management Port IP Address
  - Time Zone: America/New York
- Redundant Device Properties:**
  - Root Folder Device Group: None
  - Root Folder Traffic Group: traffic-group-1
- User Administration:**
  - Root Account:  Disable login
  - Admin Account:  Disable default admin, use alternate; Password: [masked], Confirm: [masked]
  - SSH Access:  Enabled
  - SSH IP Allow: \*All Addresses

- 2565
- 2566 12. System logs off the user with password change. Log back in with the new admin password.

- 2567 13. In the Standard Network Configuration page, click **Next**.
- 2568 14. In the Redundant Device Wizard Options page, **Un-Select** Display configuration synchronization
- 2569 options.
- 2570 15. In the Internal Network Configuration page, fill in these values.

Address	<i>192.168.4.85</i>
Netmask	<i>255.255.255.0</i>
VLAN Interfaces	<i>internal</i>
Tagging	<i>untagged</i>

- 2571 16. Click **Add**, then click **Next**.
- 2572 17. In the External Network Configuration page, fill in these values.

Address	<i>192.168.5.86</i>
Netmask	<i>255.255.255.0</i>
VLAN Interfaces	<i>external</i>
Tagging	<i>untagged</i>

- 2573 18. Click **Add**, then click **Finished**.

#### 2574 2.4.1.6 BIG-IP Configuration Utility

2575 There are at least two ways to administer the BIG-IP.

- 2576 ■ Use SSH to connect to the BIG-IP to access the command line interface, referred to as traffic
  - 2577 management shell (TMSH).
  - 2578 ■ With a web browser, navigate to the management URL—referred to as Configuration utility and
  - 2579 mainly used in this guide.
- 2580 1. Open browser and navigate to the BIG-IP address *https://192.168.3.85\_*
  - 2581 2. Log in as admin, and use the password modified from the default during Setup wizard.



BIG-IP Configuration Utility  
F5 Networks, Inc.

**Hostname**

f5lb1.ext-nccoe.org

**IP Address**

192.168.3.85

**Username**

**Password**

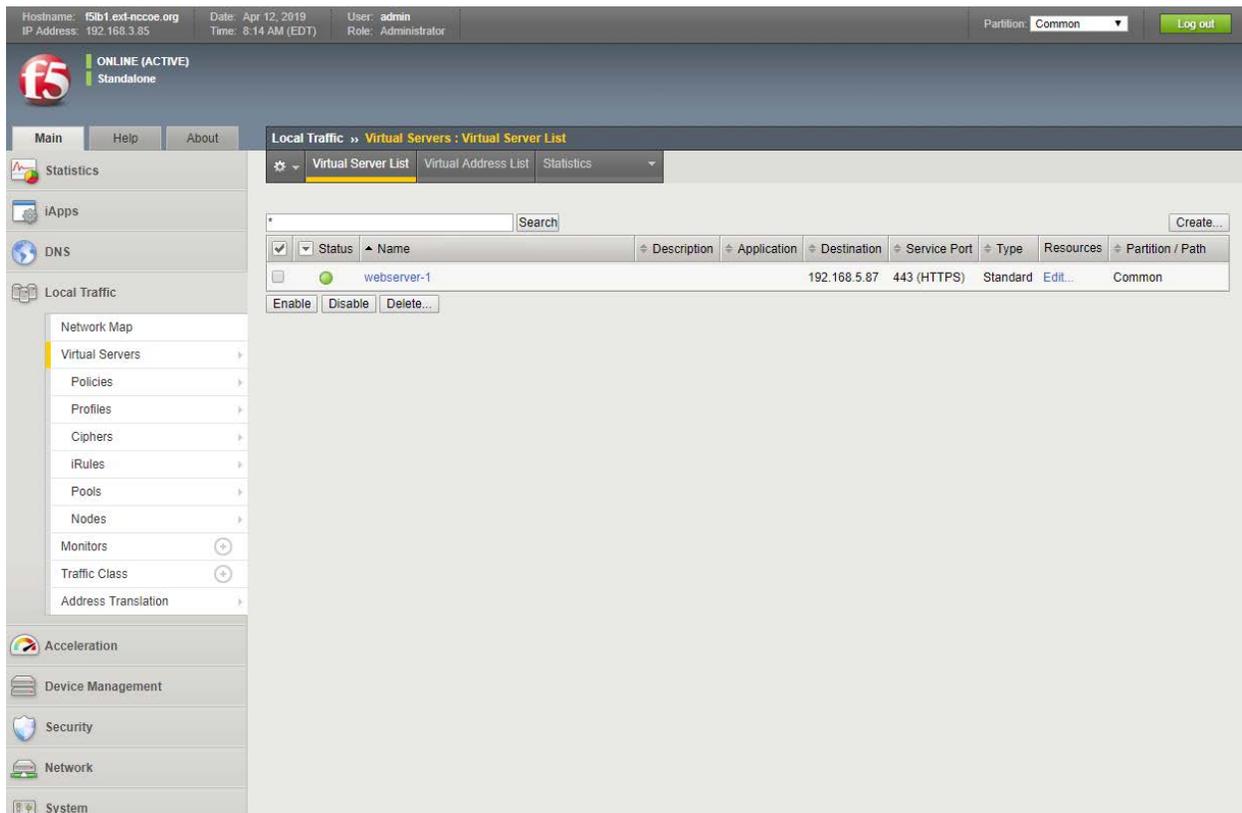
Log in

Welcome to the BIG-IP Configuration Utility.

Log in with your username and password using the fields on the left.

(c) Copyright 1996-2017, F5 Networks, Inc., Seattle, Washington. All rights reserved.  
[F5 Networks, Inc. Legal Notices](#)

2582



2583

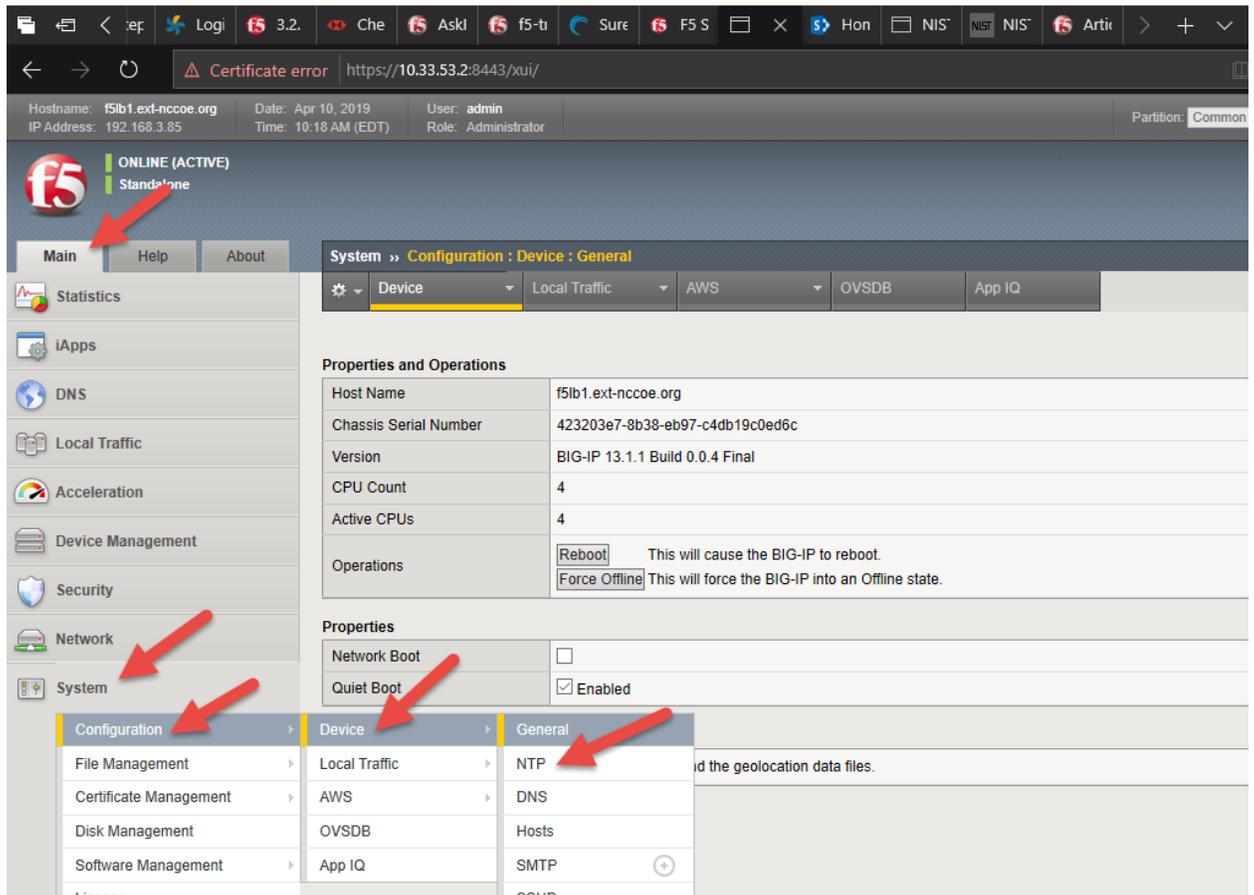
### 2584 2.4.1.7 Configure NTP

2585 Time synchronization is crucial when multiple BIG-IPs are in a cluster (not covered in this guide). It is also  
 2586 necessary for accuracy of logging information.

2587 1. Log on to the Configuration utility.

2588 2. Navigate to **Main > System**. Then click **Configuration > Device > NTP**.

2589 The NTP panel appears.



2590

2591 3. In the Address field, type `time-a-g.nist.gov`. Click **Add**.

2592 4. In the Address field, type `time-b-g.nist.gov`. Click **Add**.

2593 5. Click **Update**.

#### 2594 2.4.1.8 Configure SMTP

2595 BIG-IP can be configured to send email alerts.

2596 1. Navigate to **Main > System**. Then click **Configuration > Device > SMTP**.

2597 The SMTP panel appears.

2598 2. In the upper right corner, click the **Create** button.

2599 The New SMTP Configuration panel appears.

2600 3. Fill in these values.

Name	mail1
SMTP Server Host Name	mail1.int-nccoe.org
Local Host Name	f51b1-ext-nccoe.org
From Address	f5-big-ip@nccoe.org

2601 4. Click **Finish**.

### 2602 2.4.1.9 Configure Syslog

2603 Log events either locally on the BIG-IP system or remotely by configuring a remote syslog server.

2604 1. Log on to the Configuration utility.

2605 2. Navigate to **System > Logs > Configuration > Remote Logging**.

2606 3. In Remote IP field, type 192.168.3.12.

2607 4. Click **Add**.

2608 5. Click **Update**.

### 2609 2.4.1.10 Secure BIG-IP to NIST SP 800-53

2610 This section provides guidance on using the F5 iApp for NIST SP 800-53 (Revision 5) to configure a BIG-IP  
 2611 device to support security controls according to NIST SP 800-53 (Revision 4): *Security and Privacy*  
 2612 *Controls for Federal Information Systems and Organizations* (updated January 2, 2015).

2613 Some controls (policies plus supporting technical measures) that organizations adopt by complying with  
 2614 NIST SP 800-53 (Revision 5) relate to the BIG-IP configuration.

2615 This practice guide discusses the security controls in Appendix F of NIST SP 800-53 (Revision 5) that  
 2616 apply to BIG-IP configuration and shows how to support them. It also focuses on configuring the  
 2617 management features of the BIG-IP system rather than the network-traffic-processing modules of a  
 2618 system such as BIG-IP Local Traffic Manager. This approach helps the user manage the BIG-IP system as  
 2619 an entity responsive to NIST SP 800-53 (Revision 5) controls. Using BIG-IP as a tool to help control other  
 2620 entities, such as network-based applications, is beyond the scope of this project.

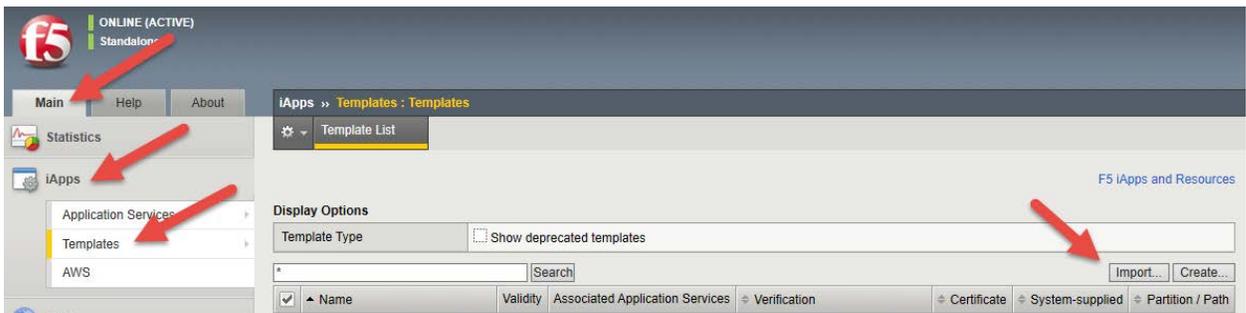
#### 2621 2.4.1.10.1 F5 iApp

2622 F5 iApp is a feature in the BIG-IP system that provides a way to simplify BIG-IP configurations. An iApp  
 2623 template brings together configuration elements, architectural rules, and a management view to deliver  
 2624 an application reliably and efficiently.

- 2625 [2.4.1.10.2 Download the iApp for NIST SP 800-53 \(Revision 5\) Compliance](#)
- 2626 1. In a browser, open the F5 Downloads page at <https://downloads.f5.com>.
- 2627 2. Log in with an F5 Support ID.
- 2628 3. In the Downloads Overview page, click **Find a Download** button.
- 2629 4. In the Select a Product Line page, under Product Line column, click **iApp Templates**.
- 2630 5. In the Select a Product Version... page, click **iApp-Templates**.
- 2631 6. Review the EULA, then click **I Accept**.
- 2632 7. In the Select a Download page, click **iapps-1.0.0.546.0.zip**.
- 2633 8. In the Download Locations page, click on the link nearest to the user's region.
- 2634 9. Save the zip file to the local computer.

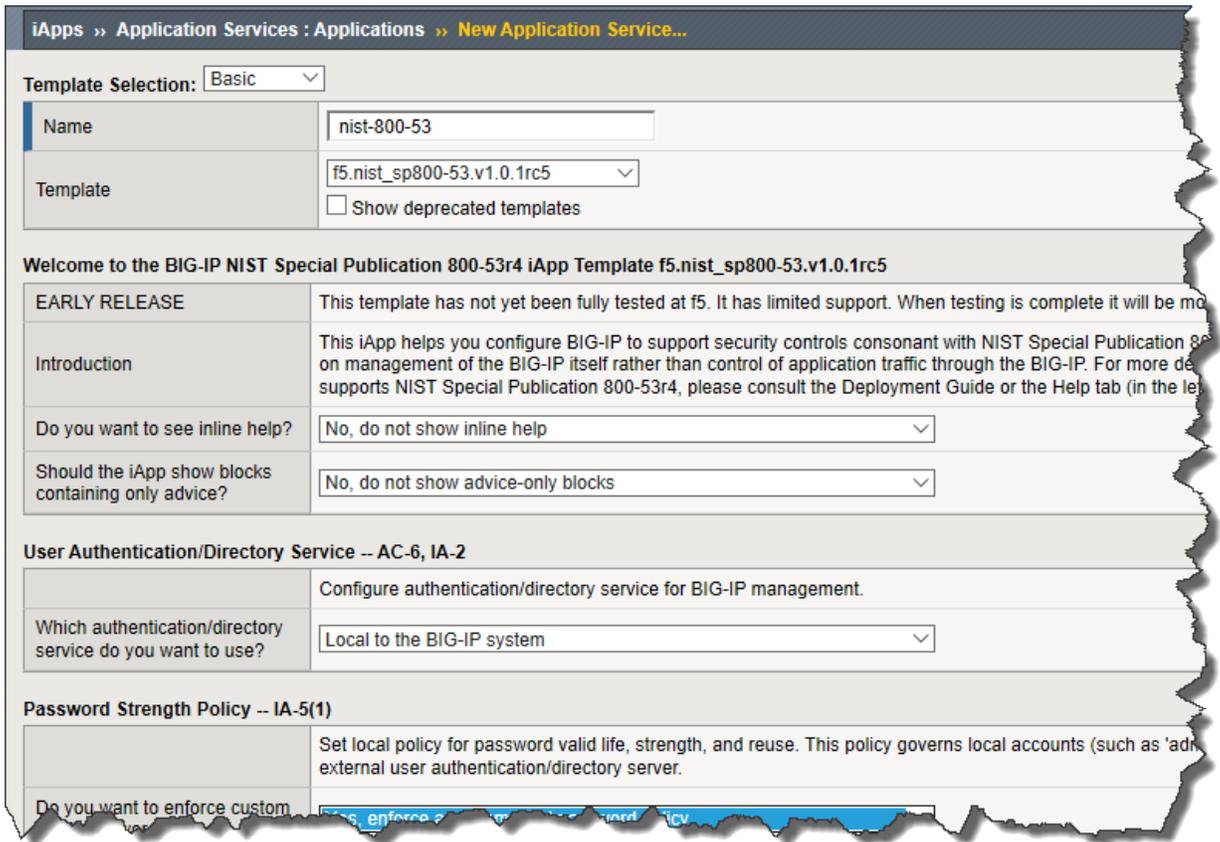
2635 [2.4.1.10.3 Import iApp to BIG-IP](#)

- 2636 1. Unzip the downloaded file.
- 2637 2. Open browser and navigate to the BIG-IP address *https://192.168.3.85*.
- 2638 3. Log in as admin/admin.
- 2639 4. On the left menu, click **Main > iApps > Templates**. Then on the right side, click **Import** button.



- 2640
- 2641 5. Browse to the file unzip location and to the subfolder
- 2642 **\iapps-1.0.0.546.0\Security\NIST\Release\_Candidates**. Select the file **f5.nist\_sp800-**
- 2643 **53.v1.0.1rc5.tmpl**, then click **Open**.
- 2644 6. Click **Upload**.
- 2645 7. On page 2 of the Template List, verify that the **f5.nist\_sp800-53.v1.0.1rc5** template has been
- 2646 uploaded.

- 2647 **2.4.1.10.4 Deploy the NIST iApp**
- 2648 1. On the left menu, click **Main > iApps > Application Services**. Then on the right side, click **Create**
- 2649 button.
- 2650 The Template Selection panel appears.
- 2651 2. In the Name field, type `nist-800-53`.
- 2652 3. In the Template pull-down, select **f5.nist\_sp800-53.v1.0.1rc5**.
- 2653 The New Application Service panel appears.



- 2654
- 2655 4. Fill in the iApps with parameters in the following table. Leave everything else as default values.

<b>Password Strength Policy—IA-5(1)</b>	
Do you want to enforce custom local password policy?	"Yes, enforce a custom..."

How many days should pass before the password expires?	0
How many changes before reuse?	0
How many characters should be the minimum for each setting?	Length = 8
<b>Maximum Failed Login Attempts—AC-7</b>	
Disable account after several failed login attempts?	"Yes, limit fail..."
Allow how many consecutive login failures before disabling the account?	9
<b>NTP Configuration—AU-8(1,2)</b>	
What is the IP address or FQDN of the primary NTP server?	time-a-g.nist.gov
What is the IP address or FQDN of the first alternate NTP server?	time-b-g.nist.gov
<b>Syslog Configuration—AU-8, AU-9(2), AU-12(2)</b>	
Should log messages use International Standards Organization (ISO) date format?	"Yes, log messages..."
Do you want to add syslog servers?	"Yes, use this iApp..."
Which syslog servers do you want to add?	Server: syslog2.int-nccoe.org

2656 5. Click **Finished**.

## 2657 2.4.2 Day 1: Product Integration Configuration

### 2658 2.4.2.1 Prerequisites

- 2659 ■ Venafi installed
- 2660 ■ web servers for load balance

2661 [2.4.2.2 Venafi Integration](#)

2662 For information on integration with Venafi TPP, see Section [2.6.13.1](#).

2663 [2.4.2.3 Load Balance Web Servers](#)

2664 [2.4.2.3.1 Create a Pool to Manage https Traffic](#)

2665 A pool (a logical set of devices, such as web servers, that are grouped together to receive and  
2666 process https traffic) can be created to efficiently distribute the load on the server resources.

2667 1. On the Main tab, click **Local Traffic > Pools**.

2668 The Pool List screen opens.

2669 2. Click **Create**.

2670 The New Pool screen opens.

2671 3. In the Name field, type `app1_pool`.

2672 4. For the Health Monitors setting, assign https by moving it from the Available list to the Active  
2673 list.

2674 5. Use the New Members setting to add each resource to include in the pool:

2675 a. In the Address field, type `192.168.4.2`.

2676 b. In the Service Port field type `443`.

2677 c. Click **Add**.

2678 6. Repeat step 5 for these three IP addresses.

2679 a. `192.168.4.3`

2680 b. `192.168.4.4`

2681 c. `192.168.4.7`

2682 7. Click **Finished**.

2683 The https load balancing pool appears in the Pool List screen.

2684 [2.4.2.3.2 Create Client SSL Profile](#)

2685 Profile for BIG-IP to decrypt traffic from browser

2686 1. On the Main tab, click **Local Traffic > Profiles > SSL > Client**.

2687 The SSL Client List screen opens.

- 2688        2. Click **Create**.
- 2689            The New Client SSL Profile screen opens.
- 2690        3. In the Name field, type `app1_client-ssl`.
- 2691        4. In the Certificate Key Chain setting, select the checkbox on the right. Then click **Add**.
- 2692            The Add SSL Certificate to Key Chain screen opens.
- 2693        5. For **Certificate** pull-down, select `app1.tls.nccoe.org-<value>`.
- 2694        6. For **Key** pull-down, select `app1.tls.nccoe.org-<value>`.
- 2695        7. Click **Add**.
- 2696        8. Click **Finished**.
- 2697    [2.4.2.3.3 Create Server SSL Profile](#)
- 2698    Profile for BIG-IP to encrypt traffic to web servers:
- 2699        1. On the Main tab, click **Local Traffic > Profiles > SSL > Server**.
- 2700            The SSL Server List screen opens.
- 2701        2. Click **Create**.
- 2702            The New Server SSL Profile screen opens.
- 2703        3. In the Name field, type `app1_server-ssl`.
- 2704        4. In the Certificate setting, select the checkbox on the right. Then select `app1.tls.nccoe.org-`  
2705            `<value>` in the pull-down.
- 2706        5. In the Key setting, select the checkbox on the right. Then select `app1.tls.nccoe.org-<value>` in  
2707            the pull-down.
- 2708            The Add SSL Certificate to Key Chain screen opens.
- 2709        6. For **Certificate** pull-down, select `app1.tls.nccoe.org-<value>`.
- 2710        7. For **Key** pull-down, select `app1.tls.nccoe.org-<value>`.
- 2711        8. Click **Finished**.
- 2712    [2.4.2.3.4 Create a Virtual Server to Manage https Traffic](#)
- 2713    A virtual server can be specified to be either a host virtual server or a network virtual server to manage  
2714    https traffic.

- 2715 1. On the Main tab, click **Local Traffic > Virtual Servers**.
- 2716 The Virtual Server List screen opens.
- 2717 2. Click the **Create** button.
- 2718 The New Virtual Server screen opens.
- 2719 3. In the Name field, type `app1_vs`.
- 2720 4. In the Destination Address field, type `192.168.5.85`.
- 2721 5. In the Service Port field, type `443`.
- 2722 6. In the HTTP Profile setting, select **http** in the pull-down.
- 2723 7. In the SSL Profile (Client) setting, from the Available list, select **app1\_client-ssl**, and click the
- 2724  button to move over to the Selected list.
- 2725 8. In the SSL Profile (Server) setting, from the Available list, select **app1\_server-ssl**, and click the
- 2726  button to move over to the Selected list.
- 2727 9. In the Source Address Translation setting, select **Auto Map** in the pull-down.
- 2728 10. In the Default Pool setting, select **app1\_pool** in the pull-down.
- 2729 11. In the Default Persistence Profile setting, select **cookie** in the pull-down.
- 2730 12. Click **Finished**.
- 2731 The https virtual server appears in the Virtual Server List screen.

#### 2732 2.4.2.3.5 Create Redirect Virtual Server from http to https

2733 When a user types `http://<virtual server>` in the browser, this virtual server redirects the user to the

2734 secure site `https://<virtual server>`.

- 2735 1. On the Main tab, click **Local Traffic > Virtual Servers**.
- 2736 The Virtual Server List screen opens.
- 2737 2. Click the **Create** button.
- 2738 The New Virtual Server screen opens.
- 2739 3. In the Name field, type `app1_redir_vs`.
- 2740 4. In the Destination Address field, type `192.168.5.85`.

- 2741 5. In the Service Port field, type 80.
- 2742 6. In the HTTP Profile setting, select **http** in the pull-down.
- 2743 7. In the iRules setting, select **\_sys\_https\_redirect** in Available, and click the  button to move  
2744 over to the Enabled list.
- 2745 8. Click **Finished**.
- 2746 The http redirect virtual server appears in the Virtual Server List screen.

## 2747 2.4.3 Day N: Ongoing Security Management and Maintenance

### 2748 2.4.3.1 Software Updates

2749 BIG-IP VE updates in the same major version are installed in a similar manner as updates to BIG-IP  
2750 software already installed on BIG-IP hardware. There is no need to reinstall BIG-IP VE in the hypervisor  
2751 guest environment to upgrade the system. To update a BIG-IP VE virtual machine, use the Software  
2752 Management tool in the Configuration utility, or upgrade the software from the command line. The  
2753 update procedure described in this guide uses the Software Management tool.

#### 2754 2.4.3.1.1 Download the Latest Software

2755 Software release notes contain instructions for that specific installation.

2756 *To find the latest software version for an F5 product:*

- 2757 1. Navigate to F5 Downloads (downloads.f5.com).
- 2758 2. Click **Find a Download**.
- 2759 3. Find the product desired for download, and click the link for the appropriate version.
- 2760 4. Find and click the link for the update to download.
- 2761 5. Read and accept the End User Software license agreement.
- 2762 6. Click the file name, choose a download location, and save the file to the computer.

#### 2763 2.4.3.1.2 Upgrading BIG-IP Software

2764 Before upgrading the BIG-IP software, we recommend reviewing the release notes on AskF5  
2765 (support.f5.com) in the Documentation section of the product and version. In particular, verify the new  
2766 version supports the hardware, and carefully review these items:

- 2767 ■ known issues list
- 2768 ■ behavior change section(s)

- 2769       ▪ upgrading from earlier versions section
- 2770       ▪ upgrading from earlier configurations section
- 2771       ▪ installation checklist

#### 2772   2.4.3.1.3 Import a BIG-IP VE Software Update

2773   To install an update, BIG-IP software needs access to the ISO file previously downloaded.

- 2774       1. Open browser, and navigate to the BIG-IP address *https://192.168.3.85*
- 2775       2. Log in as an admin.
- 2776       3. On the **Main** tab, click **System > Software Management**.  
2777           The *Software Management Image List* screen opens.
- 2778       4. At the right side of the screen, click **Import**.  
2779           The *New Image* screen opens.
- 2780       5. Click **Browse** to navigate to the downloaded installation file.
- 2781       6. When the image name appears in the Software Image field, click **Import** to begin the operation.  
2782           The system presents a progress indicator during the operation.

#### 2783   2.4.3.1.4 Installing a BIG-IP VE update

2784   After import the software image, initiate the installation operation.

- 2785       1. On the **Main** tab of the navigation pane, click **System > Software Management**.  
2786           The *Software Management Image List* screen opens.
- 2787       2. From the *Available Images* table, select the software image you want to install.  
2788           The image properties screen opens.
- 2789       3. Click **Install**.  
2790           The *Install Software* screen opens.
- 2791       4. Select the disk you want to install the image on, and type or select a volume name, and click  
2792           **Install**.  
2793           The upgrade process installs the software on the inactive disk location that you specify. This  
2794           process usually takes between three and ten minutes.
- 2795           Tip: If a problem arises during installation, use log messages to troubleshoot a solution. The  
2796           system stores the installation log file as */var/log/liveinstall.log*.
- 2797       5. The software image is installed.

2798 [2.4.3.1.5 Reboot BIG-IP VE to update](#)

2799 When the installation operation is complete, you can safely reboot into the newly installed volume or  
2800 partition.

2801 1. On the **Main** tab of the navigation pane, click **System > Software Management**.

2802 The *Software Management Image List* screen opens.

2803 2. On the menu bar, click **Boot Locations**.

2804 The *Boot Locations* screen opens.

2805 3. In the *Boot Location* column, click the link representing the boot location you want to activate.

2806 The properties screen for the boot location opens.

2807 4. Click **Activate**.

2808 A confirmation screen opens.

2809 5. Click **OK** to initiate the reboot operation.

2810 The system presents progress messages during the restart operation.

2811 When the BIG-IP VE system reboot is complete, the system presents the login screen. To configure the  
2812 system, log in using an account that has administrative permissions.

2813 [2.4.3.2 License and Entitlement](#)

2814 If support is purchased from F5, it is associated with a particular BIG-IP system. A system with an active  
2815 support contract is considered entitled until the contract expires. To continue receiving support, the  
2816 contact must be renewed.

2817 Licenses are also associated with modules purchased to run a specific system. Model licenses are  
2818 considered add-ons to the main license for a system, and are automatically linked to the main BIG-IP  
2819 system license and eligible for technical support if that system is entitled.

2820 Major software upgrades are only supported for entitled systems and require relicensing of the BIG-IP  
2821 system. Minor upgrades do not require relicensing.

2822 [2.4.3.2.1 Viewing and verifying a BIG-IP system license](#)

2823 Test the validity of the BIG-IP software license by obtaining license information in any of the following  
2824 ways:

2825 

- view license information at the command line

2826 

- request a product license profile from F5

2827       ▪ view license profile in BIG-IP iHealth®

2828       ▪ view license profile in the Configuration utility

2829       ▪ At the command line, type the following command: `tmsh show /sys license`

2830 Output displays licensing information for the BIG-IP system should include a list of active modules. For a  
2831 system with a valid license, output appears similar to the following example:

#### 2832 [2.4.3.2.2 Provisioning licenses](#)

2833 If a license is installed for an add-on module on a BIG-IP system, you must provision resources for the  
2834 module.

2835 Until provisioned, module function is limited in the following ways:

2836       ▪ the system does not perform the functions of the licensed module

2837       ▪ items related to the module do not appear in Configuration utility menus

2838       ▪ the TMOS Shell (tmsh) does not present or permit configuration of objects related to the  
2839 module.

2840       ▪ the bigstart status command returns output similar to the following example for daemons  
2841 related to the unprovisioned module: `<daemon_name> down, Not provisioned` For information  
2842 on provisioning modules, refer to “Modules.”

2843 When you upgrade a BIG-IP system, the install script verifies the Service Check Date with the license  
2844 check date of the version being installed. If the service check date is missing or the verification process  
2845 finds your license pre-dates the software’s release date, a line displays in the `/var/log/liveinstall.log` with  
2846 a note about the service check date verification, and the installation of the software may continue.

#### 2847 [2.4.3.2.3 Reactivating a BIG-IP System License](#)

2848 F5 recommends reactivating the BIG-IP system license before conducting a software upgrade.

2849 Follow these steps to reactivate a BIG-IP system license using the Configuration utility:

2850       1. Navigate to System > License.

2851       2. Click **Re-activate**.

2852       3. In the Activation Method area, select **Automatic** (requires outbound connectivity).

2853       4. Click **Next**.

#### 2854 [2.4.3.2.4 Moving a BIG-IP VE license](#)

2855 BIG-IP VE licenses are permanently associated with the virtual instance. To move a license, contact F5  
2856 Technical Support for assistance. However, with BIG-IP 12.1.3.3 and BIG-IP 13.1 and later, you can move  
2857 the RegKey without contacting support by revoking the instance’s license from tmsh, the Configuration  
2858 utility, and iControl/REST by using the ‘`tmsh revoke sys license`’ command on that virtual instance. This  
2859 action revokes the license and unlocks the RegKey—enabling the user to activate a new virtual machine.

2860 Call F5 Technical Support for assistance if the connection is lost and you want to move the license to the  
2861 current VE, if hypervisor crashes, or if you can't access the password or network address.

### 2862 [2.4.3.3 Backup and Data Recovery](#)

2863 BIG-IP software offers two supported methods for backing up and restoring the configuration: user  
2864 configuration set (UCS) archives and single configuration files. This guide focuses on using the UCS  
2865 archive only. To create, delete, upload, or download an archive, you must have either administrator or  
2866 resource administrator role privileges.

#### 2867 [2.4.3.3.1 Backup Configuration Data to a UCS Archive](#)

2868 A UCS archive contains BIG-IP configuration data that can fully restore a BIG-IP system in the event of a  
2869 failure or return material authorization.

2870 Each time you back up the configuration data, the BIG-IP system creates a new UCS archive file in the  
2871 `/var/local/ucs` directory. In addition to configuration data, each UCS file contains various configuration  
2872 files necessary for the BIG-IP system to operate correctly.

2873 A UCS archive contains the following types of BIG-IP system configuration data:

- 2874     ▪ system-specific configuration files (traffic management elements, system and network  
2875       definitions, and others)
- 2876     ▪ product licenses
- 2877     ▪ user accounts and password information
- 2878     ▪ DNS
- 2879     ▪ zone files
- 2880     ▪ installed SSL keys and certificates

2881 To easily identify the file, include the BIG-IP host name and current time stamp as part of the file name.

2882 F5 recommends keeping a backup copy of the UCS archives on a secure remote server. To restore the  
2883 BIG-IP system if you can't access the `/var/local/ucs` directory on the BIG-IP system, upload the backup  
2884 file from the remote server, and use it to restore your system.

#### 2885 [2.4.3.3.2 To create a UCS archive using the Configuration utility](#)

2886 When creating a new archive, unless otherwise directed, the BIG-IP system automatically stores it in  
2887 `/var/local/ucs` directory—a default location. You can create as many archives as you want, but each  
2888 archive must have a unique file name.

2889 All boot locations on a BIG-IP system use the same `/shared` directory, making it a good choice for a UCS  
2890 save location. Saving an archive to the `/shared` directory allows you to boot to another boot location and  
2891 access the archive, and can greatly simplify the recovery from a variety of issues.

- 2892 1. Navigate to **System > Archives**.
- 2893 2. Click **Create**.
- 2894 3. Type a unique file name.
- 2895 4. To encrypt the archive for Encryption, click **Enabled**.
- 2896 5. To include private keys in the BIG-IP system, for Private Keys, click **Include**. If you choose to
- 2897 include private keys, store the archive file in a secure environment.
- 2898 6. Click **Finished**.
- 2899 7. Click **OK** after the data is backed up and the file is created.

2900 [2.4.3.3.3 To download and copy an archive to another system using the Configuration utility](#)

- 2901 1. Navigate to **System > Archives**.
- 2902 2. Click the UCS file name you want to download.
- 2903 3. In Archive File, click Download <filename>.ucs.
- 2904 4. Save the file.
- 2905 5. Find the file in your computer's Downloads folder and copy it.

2906 [2.4.3.3.4 Restoring Configuration Data from a UCS Archive](#)

2907 If the BIG-IP System configuration data becomes corrupted, you can restore the data from the archive

2908 currently stored in the directory `/var/local/ucs`.

2909 When restoring configuration data, F5 recommends running the same version of the BIG-IP software on

2910 the BIG-IP system from which it was backed up.

2911 F5 also recommends restoring a UCS file to another platform of the same model where the UCS file was

2912 created. Certain core hardware changes can cause a UCS to load properly on dissimilar hardware,

2913 requiring manual intervention to correct.

2914 [2.4.3.3.5 To restore a configuration in a UCS archive using the Configuration utility](#)

- 2915 1. Navigate to **System > Archives**.
- 2916 2. Click the name of the UCS archive you want to restore.
- 2917 3. To initiate the UCS archive restore process, click **Restore**.
- 2918 When the restoration process is completed, examine the status page for any reported errors
- 2919 before proceeding to the next step.
- 2920 4. To return to the Archive List page, click **OK**.

2921 If you receive activation errors after restoring a UCS archive on a different device, you must reactivate  
2922 the BIG-IP system license. Restarting the system ensures that the configuration is fully loaded after  
2923 relicensing,

#### 2924 [2.4.3.3.6 Downloading a UCS Archive to a Remote System](#)

2925 Downloading a copy of an existing archive to a remote system protects the configuration data should  
2926 you need to restore your BIG-IP system and be unable to access the `/var/local/ucs` directory on the BIG-  
2927 IP system.

2928 To download an existing archive, first display the properties of the archive to specify the complete path  
2929 name of the location where you want to save the archive copy.

- 2930 1. Navigate to **System > Archives**.
- 2931 2. Click the name of the archive that you want to view.  
2932 The General Properties for that archive display.
- 2933 3. Click **Download**: `<ucs filename>`.
- 2934 4. Click **Save**.

2935 The BIG-IP system downloads a copy of the UCS file to the system from which you initiated the  
2936 download.

#### 2937 [2.4.3.3.7 Uploading a UCS Archive from a Remote System](#)

2938 If a UCS archive on your BIG-IP system is unavailable or corrupted, upload a previously created archive  
2939 copy from a remote or backup system to replace it.

- 2940 1. Navigate to **System > Archives**.
- 2941 2. Click **Upload**.
- 2942 3. Type the complete path and file name of the archive that you want to upload onto the BIG-IP  
2943 system.  
2944 If you do not know the path or file name, click **Browse** and navigate to the location.
- 2945 4. Click **Upload**.

2946 The specified archive uploads to the `/var/local/ucs` directory on the BIG-IP system.

#### 2947 [2.4.3.3.8 Deleting a UCS Archive](#)

2948 Use the Configuration utility to delete any archive on the BIG-IP system that is stored in the directory  
2949 `/var/local/ucs`.

- 2950 1. Navigate to **System > Archives**.

2951 2. Select the check box next to the name of the file you want to delete.

2952 3. Click **Delete**.

2953 4. Click **Delete** again.

2954 The archive is deleted from the `/var/local/ucs` directory on the BIG-IP system.

#### 2955 2.4.3.4 Log Files and Alerts

2956 This section provides context for our recommended procedures in the form of overviews and  
2957 supplemental information, including the following topics:

- 2958 • Config for Syslog
- 2959 • Set up SMTP for email alerts

##### 2960 2.4.3.4.1 Managing Log files on a BIG-IP System

2961 Log files track usage or troubleshoot issues—if left unmanaged, they can grow to an unwieldy size. The  
2962 BIG-IP system uses a utility called logrotate to manage local log files. The logrotate script deletes log files  
2963 older than the number of days specified by the Logrotate.LogAge database variable. By default, the  
2964 variable is set to eight. Therefore, the system is configured to delete archive copies that are older than  
2965 eight days.

2966 To modify the Logrotate.LogAge database variable:

- 2967 1. Log in to tmsh at the command line by typing the following command: `tmsh`
- 2968 2. Modify the age at which log files are eligible for deletion by using the following command  
2969 syntax: `modify /sys db logrotate.logage value <value 0 - 100>`
- 2970 3. Save the change by typing the following command: `save /sys config`

##### 2971 2.4.3.4.2 Audit Logging

2972 Audit logging is an optional way to log messages pertaining to configuration changes that users or  
2973 services make to the BIG-IP system configuration. Audit logging is also known as master control  
2974 program.

#### 2975 LOG FILES AND ALERTS—PROCEDURES

2976 (MCP) Audit Logging. As an option, you set up audit logging for any tmsh commands that users type on  
2977 the command line.

2978 For MCP and tmsh audit logging, select a log level. The log levels will not affect the severity of the log  
2979 messages but may affect the initiator of the audit event.

2980 **2.4.3.5 Technical Support**

2981 In addition to Support Centers around the world, there are many technical resources available to  
2982 customers.

2983 **2.4.3.5.1 Phone Support**

2984 Open a Case at any of the Network Support Centers:

- 2985       ▪ 1-888-882-7535 or (206) 272-6500
- 2986       ▪ International contact numbers: [http://www.f5.com/training-support/customer-](http://www.f5.com/training-support/customer-support/contact/)  
2987       [support/contact/](http://www.f5.com/training-support/customer-support/contact/)

2988 **2.4.3.5.2 AskF5 - Web Support**

2989 F5 self-support portal: <http://www.askf5.com>

2990 **2.4.3.5.3 DevCentral - F5 User Community**

2991 More than 360,000 members—including F5 engineering resources—are actively contributing, sharing  
2992 and assisting our peers.

2993 <http://devcentral.f5.com>

2994 **2.4.3.5.4 BIG-IP iHealth**

2995 BIG-IP iHealth comprises BIG-IP iHealth Diagnostics and BIG-IP iHealth Viewer. BIG-IP iHealth Diagnostics  
2996 identifies common configuration problems and known software issues. It also provides solutions and  
2997 links to more information. With BIG-IP iHealth Viewer, you can see the status of your system at-a-glance,  
2998 drill down for details, and view your network configuration.

2999 <https://ihealth.f5.com/>

3000 **2.4.3.5.5 Subscribing to TechNews**

3001 AskF5 Publications Preference Center provides email publications to help keep administrators up-to-  
3002 date on various F5 updates and other offerings:

- 3003       ▪ TechNews Weekly eNewsletter Up-to-date information about product and hotfix releases, new  
3004       and updated articles, and new feature notices.
- 3005       ▪ TechNews Notifications Do you want to get release information, but not a weekly eNewsletter?  
3006       Sign up to get an HTML notification email any time F5 releases a product or hotfix.
- 3007       ▪ Security Alerts Receive timely security updates and ASM attack signature updates from F5.

3008 **To subscribe to these updates:**

- 3009       1. Go to the Communications Preference Center ([https://interact.f5.com/F5-Preference-](https://interact.f5.com/F5-Preference-Center.html)  
3010       [Center.html](https://interact.f5.com/F5-Preference-Center.html)).

- 3011            2. Under My preferences click **Show**.
- 3012            3. Select the updates you want to receive.
- 3013            4. Click **Submit**.

3014    [2.4.3.5.6 AskF5 recent additions and updates](#)

3015    You can subscribe to F5 RSS feeds to stay informed about new documents pertaining to your installed  
3016    products or products of interest. The Recent additions and updates page on AskF5 provides an overview  
3017    of all the documents recently added to AskF5.

3018    New and updated articles are published over RSS. You can configure feeds that pertain to specific  
3019    products, product versions, and/or document sets. You can also aggregate multiple feeds into your RSS  
3020    reader to display one unified list of all selected document.

3021    **2.5 Symantec SSL Visibility Appliance**

3022    The Symantec SSL Visibility appliance is a high-performance transparent proxy for SSL network  
3023    communications. It enables a variety of applications to access the plaintext (that is, the original  
3024    unencrypted data) in SSL encrypted connections, and is designed for security and network appliance  
3025    manufacturers, enterprise IT organizations, and system integrators. Without compromising any aspect  
3026    of enterprise policies or government compliance, the SSL Visibility appliance permits network appliances  
3027    to deploy with highly granular flow analysis while maintaining line rate performance.

3028    **2.5.1 Day-0: Install and Standard Configuration**

3029    **2.5.1.1 Prerequisites**

- 3030            ▪ 120V or 220V Power Source
- 3031            ▪ computer with browser access to activate license and configure appliance
- 3032            ▪ putty or a terminal emulator
- 3033            ▪ four-post equipment rack with a depth of 27.75" to 37.00" with square mounting holes
- 3034            ▪ category 5E network cables or better (Category 6 or 6A)
- 3035            ▪ license key for SSL Visibility appliance
- 3036            ▪ MySymantec account
- 3037            ▪ DNS Server
- 3038            ▪ SSL VISIBILITY running version 3.X

3039 **2.5.1.2 Unpacking the Appliance**

3040 Before racking and configuring the SSL Visibility Appliance, ensure the following contents are included in  
3041 the SSL Visibility shipping package:

	SV800	SV1800	SV2800	SV3800
External power supply with AC power cord	√			
Two AC power cords		√	√	√
Rack-mount rail kit		√	√	√
Rack-mount ears with fasteners		√	√	√
<i>Safety and Regulatory Compliance Guide</i>	√	√	√	√
<i>Quick Start Guide (this document)</i>	√	√	√	√
Software License Agreement	√	√	√	√
Hardware Warranty	√	√	√	√

3042

3043 **2.5.1.3 Rack-Mount the Appliance**

3044 The list below shows the requirements to install the SSL Visibility Appliance.

- 3045     ▪ At least 1U rack space (deep enough for a 27" device)–power and management ports at rear
- 3046     ▪ Phillips (cross head) screwdriver
- 3047     ▪ Weight Capacity: 28lb (12.7kg)
- 3048     ▪ Dimensions: 17.5" (W) x 19.5" (D) x 1.75" (H) (444.5mm x495.3mm x 44.5mm)
- 3049     ▪ Two available power outlets (110 VAC or 220-240 VAC)
- 3050     ▪ Two IEC-320 power cords (normal server/PC power cords) should the supplied power cords not  
3051         be suitable for your environment
- 3052     ▪ Cooling for an appliance with two 450W power supply units

3053 To see detailed instructions for installing the SSL Visibility in a rack, please refer to Symantec’s Quick  
3054 Start guide located at the below link:

3055 [https://symwisedownload.symantec.com//resources/sites/SYMWISE/content/live/DOCUMENTATION/10000/DOC10294/en\\_US/SSL\\_VISIBILITY\\_Quick\\_Start\\_Guide.pdf?\\_gda\\_ =1556050986\\_e4bd9c26d33192a730d884f8137ce9e6](https://symwisedownload.symantec.com//resources/sites/SYMWISE/content/live/DOCUMENTATION/10000/DOC10294/en_US/SSL_VISIBILITY_Quick_Start_Guide.pdf?_gda_ =1556050986_e4bd9c26d33192a730d884f8137ce9e6)

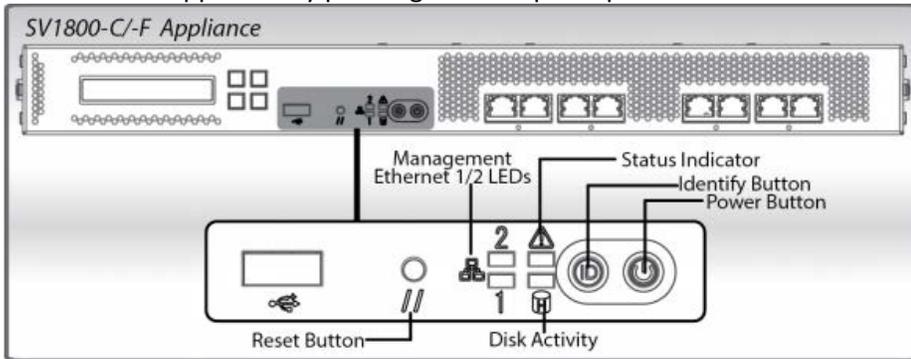
3058 **2.5.1.4 Connect Cables**

3059 To connect the appliance’s cables:

- 3060 1. Connect a network cable between the **Management Ethernet 1** port, on the rear of the SSL  
 3061 VISIBILITY appliance, and Datacenter Secure network.  
 3062 **Warning:** When deploying the SV1800, SV2800, and SV3800 appliances, do not connect  
 3063 to the Management Ethernet 2 port. This port is not functional.  
 3064 2. Connect the two AC power cords to the appliance's AC power inlets on the rear panel. Two  
 3065 power supplies are provided for redundant operation.  
 3066 3. Connect the other ends of the power cords to a 120V or 220V power source.

3067 **2.5.1.5 Power on the Appliance and Verify LEDs**

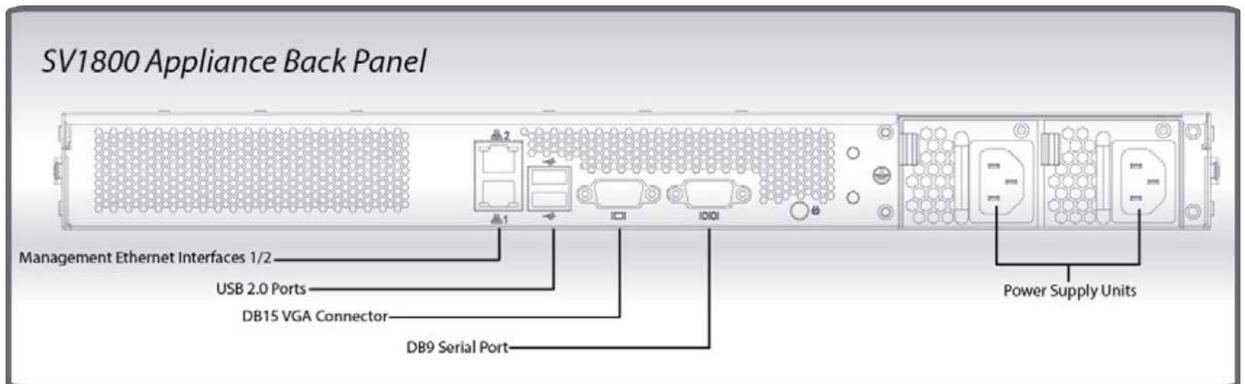
- 3068 1. Confirm the appliance's power cord or power cords are securely connected to a 120V or 220V  
 3069 power source.  
 3070 2. Power on the appliance by pressing its front-panel power button.



- 3071 3. As the appliance boots verify the following:  
 3072  
 3073 ○ The LCD displays startup messages while the appliance boots (Appliance Startup,  
 3074 Validating Firmware, Appliance Boot, etc.).  
 3075 ○ The System Status indicator for the SV1800 changes from red to off.  
 3076 ○ The LEDs for the Management Ethernet port (connected to a management workstation)  
 3077 light up.  
 3078 ○ When the boot process is complete, the LCD displays the appliance's model, software  
 3079 version, and the Up/Down arrows.

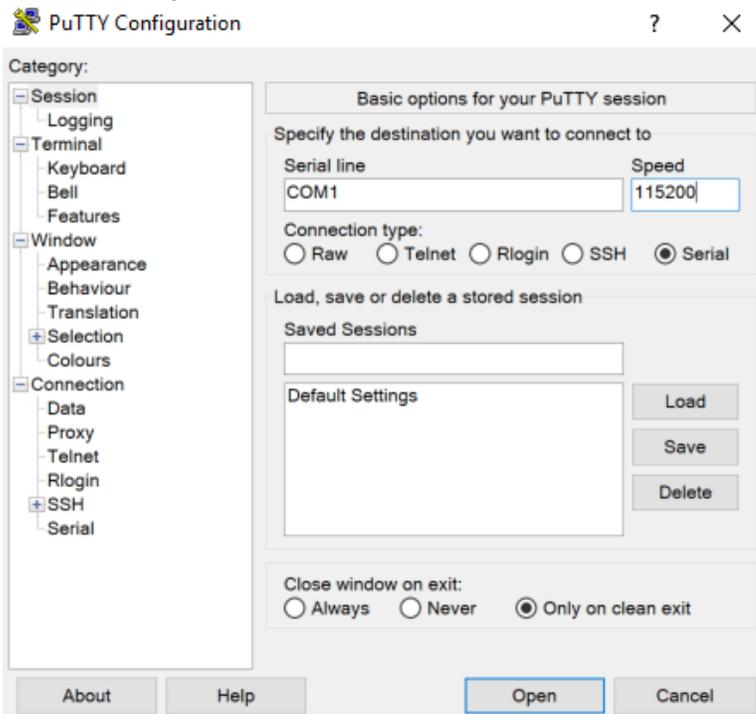
3080 **2.5.1.6 Initial Appliance Configuration**

- 3081 1. To perform initial configuration of the SSL Visibility Appliance, connect a serial cable to the **DB9**  
 3082 **Serial port** on the rear of the Appliance.



3083  
3084  
3085

2. On the management laptop, open up the PuTTY Application and select a **Connection type** of **Serial** with a **Speed** of **115200**.



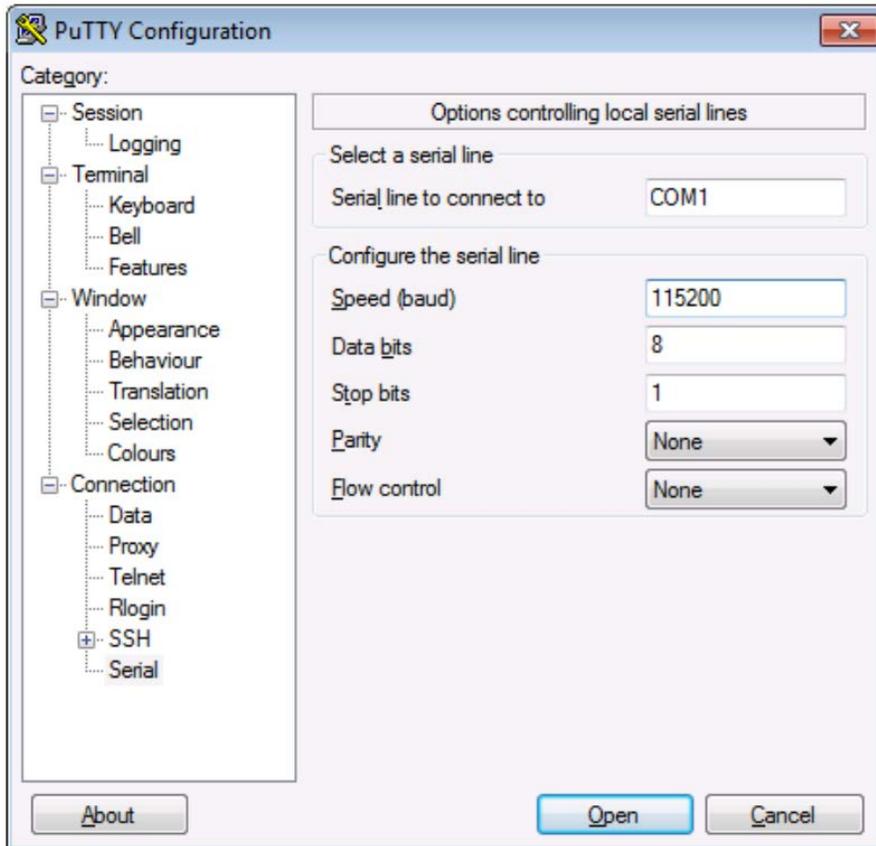
3086

3. Navigate to the **Serial** Category on the bottom left side of the window.
4. Configure the serial connection to support the SSL Visibility Appliance's console speeds by selecting the following options:

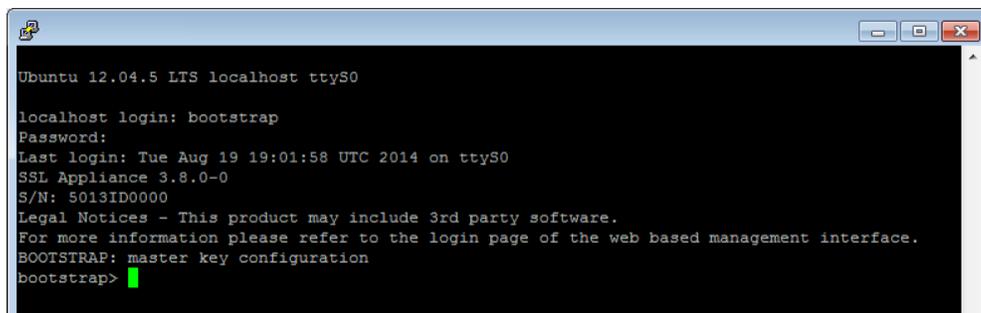
3090  
3091  
3092

- **Speed (baud): 115200**
- **Data bits: 8**
- **Stop bits: 1**

- 3093           ○ **Parity: None**
- 3094           ○ **Flow Control: None**



- 3095
- 3096           5. Login into the appliance by using the default credentials of:
- 3097           ○ **Username: bootstrap**
- 3098           ○ **Password: bootstrap**



- 3099
- 3100           6. Next, create the master key by running the command:
- 3101           master key create

```
bootstrap> master key create
Setting master key configuration.
Waiting for master key generation.
....
BOOTSTRAP: create initial user account(s)
bootstrap>
```

3102  
3103  
3104

7. Create a new user by running the command:  
user add admin manage-pki manage-appliance manage-policy audit

```
bootstrap>
bootstrap> us
user show
user list
user remove
user add
bootstrap> user add ?
[name] = <arg> : User full name
[password] = <arg> : User password
<arg1> : User ID to add
===== optional flags =====
[manage-pki] : Add 'Manage PKI' role
[manage-appliance] : Add 'Manage Appliance' role
[manage-policy] : Add 'Manage Policy' role
[audit] : Add 'Auditor' role

bootstrap> user add admin manage-pki manage-appliance manage-policy audit
Enter new user password:
Re-enter new user password:
Added user 'admin'.
BOOTSTRAP: completed
bootstrap>
```

3105  
3106  
3107  
3108  
3109  
3110

Tip: This step created a single admin user account with all four roles allocated to it. The only requirements for completing the bootstrap phase are that there is a user account with the Manage Appliance role and a user account with the Manage PKI role. These may be the same or different accounts. In most cases, creating a single account with all four roles is the simplest approach.

3111  
3112  
3113  
3114  
3115

8. Run the following command to configure the management network interface with a static IP address:  
network set ip 192.168.1.95 netmask 255.255.255.0 gateway 192.68.1.1
9. Reboot the system for the changes to take effect (confirm that you wish to reboot) with the following command: platform reboot

```
admin>
admin> platform reboot
Reboot appliance? (enter 'yes' to confirm): yes
```

3116  
3117  
3118

10. On reboot, confirm that the “SSL Visibility startup stage 3: CONFIRMED” is displayed as shown below.

```
fscck from util-linux 2.20.1
data: clean, 60/3489792 files, 266044/13950976 blocks
The disk drive for /var/log is not ready yet or not present.
Continue to wait, or Press S to skip mounting or M for manual recovery
fscck from util-linux 2.20.1
fscck from util-linux 2.20.1
fscck from util-linux 2.20.1
coredump: clean, 11/436320 files, 63995/1743872 blocks
ui: clean, 208/65536 files, 17408/262144 blocks

log: clean, 41/262144 files, 51515/1048576 blocks
* Using makefile-style concurrent boot in runlevel S
* Using makefile-style concurrent boot in runlevel 2
SSLV startup stage 1: housekeeping
* Starting NTP server ntpd [ OK ]
* Loading cpufreq kernel modules... [ OK ]
* CPU0... * CPU1...
* CPU2...
* CPU3...
* CPUFreq Uti

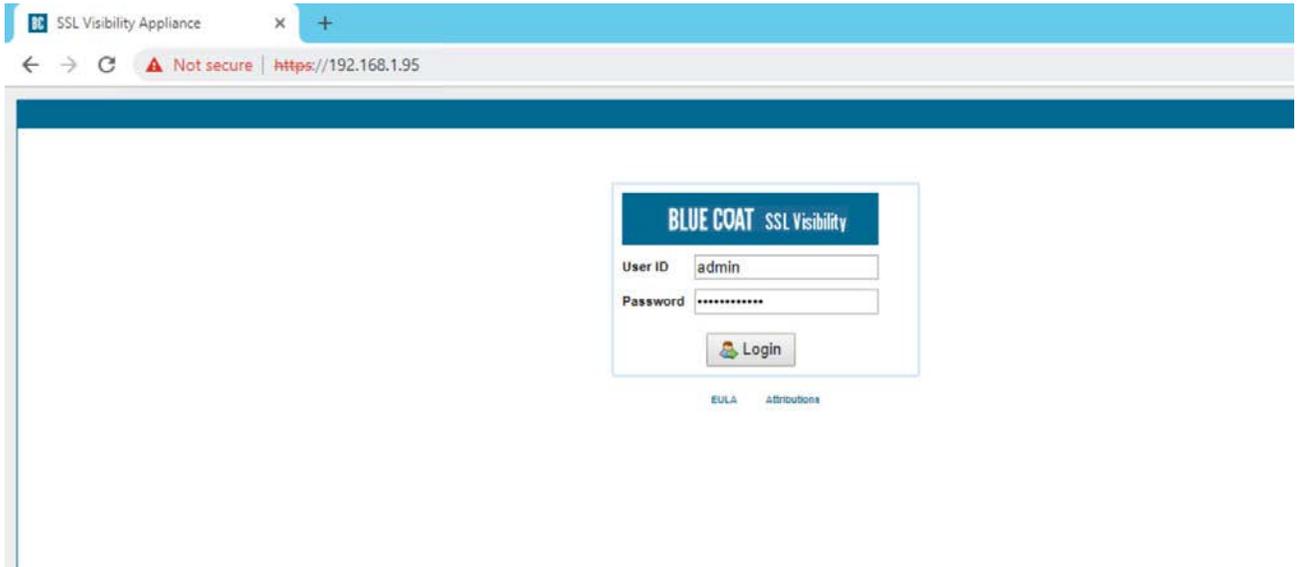
lities: Setting ondemand CPUFreq governor... [ OK ]

localhost login: Verified OK
Verified OK
Verified OK
Validating firmware...
NFE is up-to-date
BIOS is up-to-date
SSLV startup stage 3: CONFIRMED
```

3119  
3120  
3121

11. Confirm you can log in to the appliance via your browser. Log in via a web browser, using the format `https://192.168.1.95`. Log in with the username and password you created.

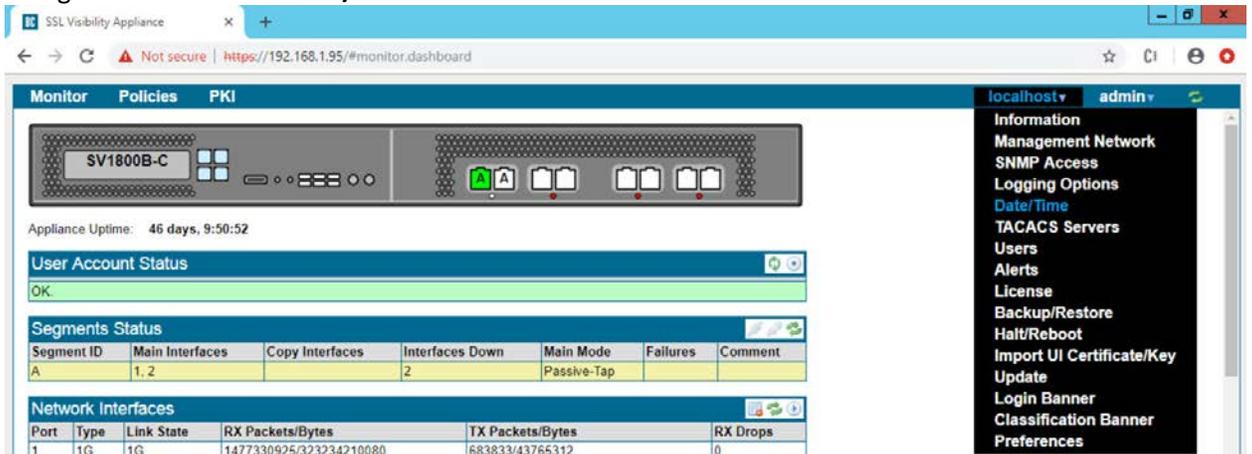
3122



### 3123 2.5.1.7 Date and Time (NTP)

3124 1. To configure Date and Time, login into the WebUI by browsing to *https://192.168.1.95*.

3125 2. Navigate to **localhost > Date/Time**.



3126

3127 3. Click on the Add button  under NTP Servers.

3128 4. In the server field type `time.nist.gov` and click **OK**.

- 3129  
3130
5. Click **Apply Changes** to save the new NTP server.

### 3131 2.5.1.8 Additional Configuration

3132 To add a host name and DNS for the SSL Visibility Appliance, perform the following steps:

- 3133  
3134
1. Log in to the SSL Visibility by opening a web browser and navigating to *https://192.168.1.95*.
  2. From the **Dashboard** page navigate to **localhost > Management Network**.

Segment ID	Main Interfaces	Copy Interfaces	Interfaces Down	Main Mode	Failures	Comment
A	1, 2		2	Passive-Tap		

Port	Type	Link State	RX Packets/Bytes	TX Packets/Bytes	RX Drops
1	1G	1G	1477342332/323238764805	583835/43705440	0
2	1G	Down	8589/551865	1485232670/316784587304	0
3	1G	Unknown	0/0	1280811088/236683069790	0
4	1G	Unknown	0/0	0/0	0
5	1G	Unknown	0/0	0/0	0

- 3135
3. Click the **Edit** button  under the **Management Network** Field.
  4. Enter the following information into the fields:
    - **MTU: 1500**
    - **Host Name: SSL Visibility.int-nccoe.org**
    - **Primary Nameserver: 192.168.1.6**

3141

- 3142 5. Click **Apply Changes**.  
3143 6. Click **Reboot** to restart the system and apply changes (required).

### 3144 2.5.1.9 MySymantec Account Creation

- 3145 1. To create a MySymantec Account, navigate to the following link:  
3146 <https://login.symantec.com/sso/idp/SAML2>  
3147 2. Click the **Create an Account** tab.

The screenshot shows a web form for creating a MySymantec account. At the top, there are two tabs: "Sign in" (which is highlighted) and "Create an Account". Below the tabs, a message states: "An account is needed to access all of your Symantec products and services." The form contains several input fields: "Email address \*" with a help icon, "Confirm email address \*", "Create a secure password \*", "First name", "Last name", "Mobile phone number" (with a country dropdown menu showing "United States" and a help icon), and a "United States" dropdown menu. At the bottom, there is a checkbox labeled "I have read and agree to the Privacy Policy" and a blue "Create Account" button.

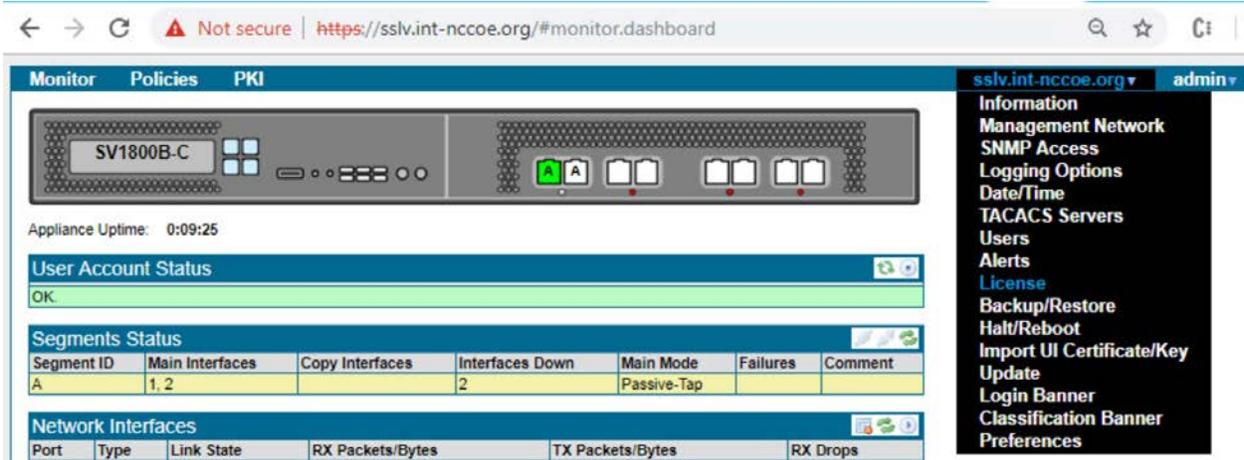
- 3148 3. Enter the requested information and click **Create Account**.  
3149

### 3150 2.5.1.10 License the SSL Visibility Appliance

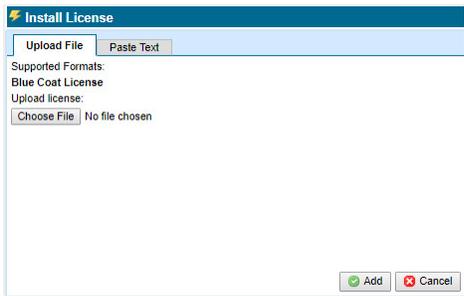
#### 3151 2.5.1.10.1 Download a Blue Coat License

- 3152 1. Using your BlueTouch Online account, log in to the Blue Coat Licensing Portal.  
3153 ([https://services.bluecoat.com/eservice\\_enu/licensing/register.cgi](https://services.bluecoat.com/eservice_enu/licensing/register.cgi)).  
3154 2. From the menu on the left side, select **SSL Visibility**, then select **License Download**.  
3155 3. When prompted, enter the serial number of your appliance, then press **Submit**.  
3156 4. Once the license is generated, press **Download License File** for the required SSL Visibility  
3157 Appliance.

- 3158 2.5.1.10.2 Install a Blue Coat License
- 3159 1. Select **SSL Visibility.int-nccoe.org > License**.



- 3160
- 3161 2. Click the **Add** button  in the **License** field.
- 3162 3. On the **Upload File** tab, use the **Choose File** button to browse to the license file location.



- 3163
- 3164 4. Click **Add**. You will see a confirmation message and the specific appliance platform model. The license
- 3165 is now installed, and all standard SSL Visibility Appliance features are operational.

## 3166 2.5.2 Day 1: Product Integration Configuration

### 3167 2.5.2.1 Prerequisites

- 3168 1. Install version 3.x on the SSL Visibility Appliance.
- 3169 2. Complete initial configuration as outlined in the Day 0 Section [2.5.1](#) above.
- 3170 3. Required Ports, Protocols and Services:
- 3171 SSL Visibility 3.x uses the following ports while operating—allow these ports when setting up SSL
- 3172 Visibility:
- 3173 Inbound Connection to SSL Visibility Appliance

Table 18

Service	Port	Protocol	Configurable	Source	Description
WebUI Admin GUI	443	TCP	No	User client	Management Interface WebUI service
SSH Admin CLI	22	TCP	No	User client	SSH Admin CLI service
Symantec/Blue Coat License	443	HTTPS	No	License server	Symantec/Blue Coat license service
SNMP management	161	UDP	No	User client	SNMP agent for SNMP management access
NTP	123	UDP	No	NTP server	NTP time synchronization service
DHCP	68	UDP	No	DHCP server	DHCP service
Remote Diagnostics Facility (RDF)	2024	TCP	No	RDF	Can be opened for support requests; normally closed

3174  
3175

Outbound Connections from SSL Visibility Appliance

Table 19

Service	Port	Protocol	Configurable	Destination	Description
SMTP/Secure SMTP	25, 465, 587, 525, 2526 *	TCP	Yes	SMTP server	SMTP alerts
Syslog	514, 601 * 6514 * 514 *	TCP TLS UDP	Yes	Syslog server	Remote syslog server

3176

DNS	53	TCP UDP	No	DNS server	Domain Name System service
SNMP Trap	162	UDP	No	SNMP Trap receiver	SNMP traps
Host Categorization (BCWF)	443	HTTPS	No	Symantec	Host categorization database
HSM	443	HTTPS	No	HSM appliance	HSM authentication and requests
TACACS+	49	TCP	Yes	TACACS server	TACACS+ authentication
NTP	123	UDP	No	NTP server list	Synchronization to customer-configured NTP server
DHCP	67	UDP	No	DHCP server	DHCP service
Diagnostics Upload	443	HTTPS	No	Symantec	Diagnostics upload service

3177  
3178

\*Common Values For this Port

3179

Required URLs

3180

Ensure connectivity from SSL Visibility to the following URLs:

Table 20

URL	Port	Protocol	Description
abrca.bluecoat.com	443	HTTPS TCP	Symantec CA
*.es.bluecoat.com	443	HTTPS TCP	License, validation, and subscription services
appliance.bluecoat.com	443	HTTPS TCP	Trust package downloads
upload.bluecoat.com	443	HTTPS TCP	Upload diagnostic reports to Symantec support

3181

3182 **2.5.2.2 Venafi Integration**

3183 Venafi TPP was used to copy known server key and certificates to the SSL Visibility appliance for TLS  
3184 decryption.

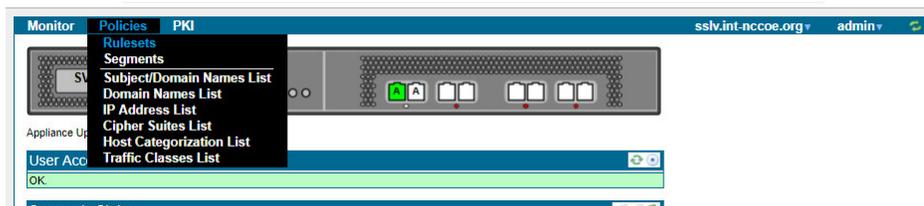
3185 For information on integration with Venafi TPP, see Section: [2.6.13.9](#).

3186 **2.5.2.3 Ruleset Creation**

3187 To ensure your SSL Visibility Appliance is connected and configured properly, create a basic ruleset to  
3188 test that traffic isn't getting blocked. To perform this test, create a ruleset with a Catch All Action of Cut  
3189 Through.

3190 Note: At least one rule must be added to the ruleset for SSL Visibility Appliance to start processing SSL  
3191 traffic.

- 3192 1. Select **Policies > Rulesets**.



3193

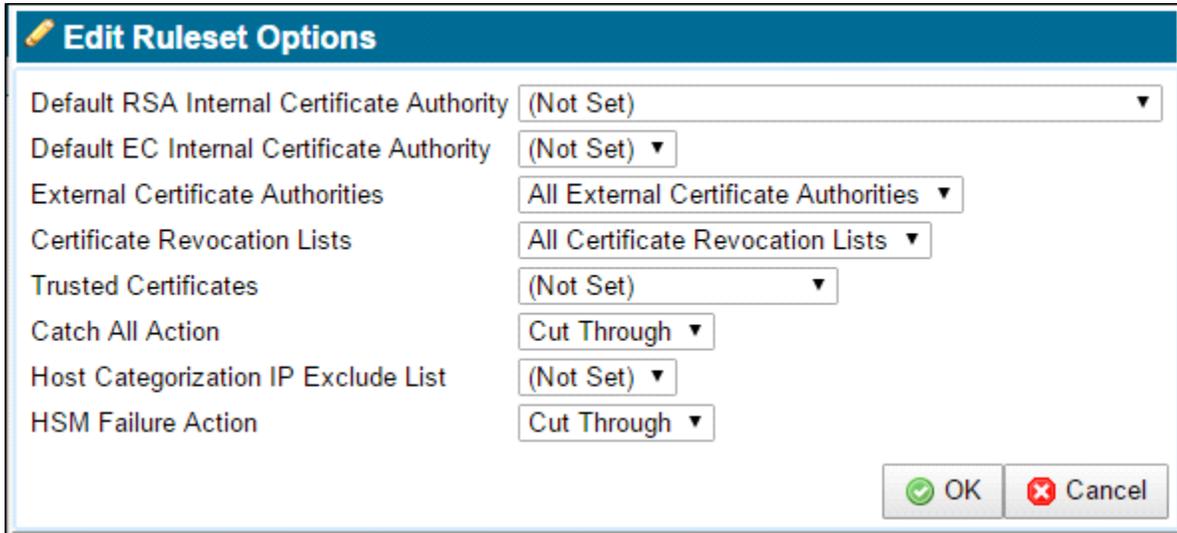
- 3194 2. In the **Rulesets** panel, click the **Add**  icon.

- 3195 3. In the **Add Ruleset** window, enter a name for the ruleset and click **OK**.



3196

3197 4. In the **Ruleset Options** panel, click the **Edit**  icon.



3198

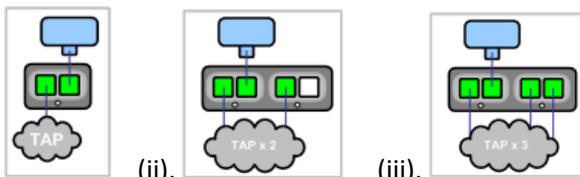
3199 5. Confirm the **Catch All Action** is **Cut Through**.

3200 6. **Apply** the Policy Changes.

### 3201 2.5.2.4 Segment Creation

3202 Note: Before creating the segment, determine your deployment mode and create a ruleset for the  
3203 segment.

3204 The following pictures demonstrate various passive tap deployment types:



3205 (i).

(ii).

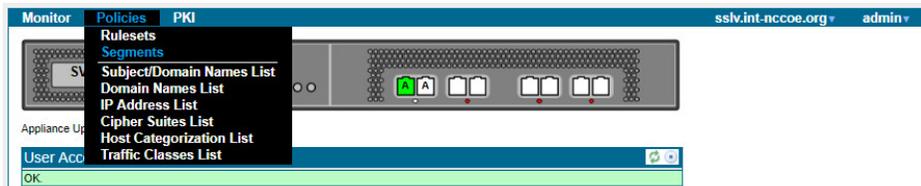
(iii).

3206 For purpose of this document we used (i).

3207 Note: The latter two tap modes combine traffic from two or three network taps onto a single SSL  
3208 Visibility Appliance segment. These ports are called *aggregation ports*.

3209 2.5.2.4.1 Add a Segment

3210 1. Select **Policies > Segments**.



3211

3212 2. Click the **Add**  icon in the **Segments** field.

3213 3. Click **Edit** to select the Mode of Operation.



3214 4. For Mode of Operation, choose **Passive Tap** mode.

3215 5. Click **OK**.

3216 6. Select the **Ruleset** you previously created.

3217 7. Choose the desired **Session Log Mode**.

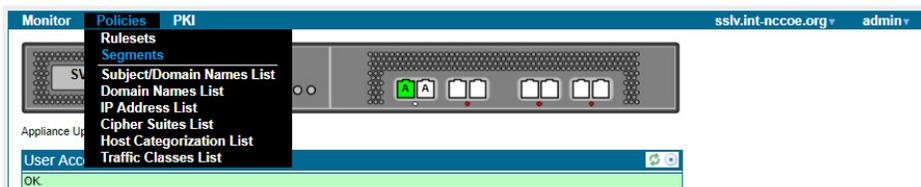
3218 8. Enter a brief description of the segment in the **Comments** box.

3219 9. Click **OK**. The new segment appears in the *Segments* panel.

3220 10. **Apply** the Policy Changes.

3221 2.5.2.4.2 Activate a Segment

3222 1. Select **Policies > Segments**.



3223

3224 2. In the **Segments** panel, select the segment to activate.

3225 3. Click the **Activate**  icon. The Segment Activation window displays.

3226 Note: During segment activation, a series of screens appear that allow you to select the ports  
3227 the segment will use, and any copy ports and modes where the copy ports will operate. Connect  
3228 any copy ports to your passive security devices (for example, Symantec DLP Network Monitor,  
3229 Security Analytics, or an IDS).

- 3230 4. Follow the prompts. Once the segment is active, the system dashboard displays a green  
 3231 background for the segment, and there are entries under Main Interfaces and Copy Interfaces (if  
 3232 applicable to your deployment).
- 3233 5. **Apply** the Policy Changes.

3234 **2.5.2.5 Verification**

3235 This section walks through verifying that the SSL Visibility is seeing SSL traffic without blocking it (cut  
 3236 through).

- 3237 1. To see a list of recent SSL sessions, select **Monitor > SSL Session Log**.
- 3238 2. Look for the domains of the servers that were accessed, and observe the value in the Action  
 3239 column. Since the initial rule you created cuts through all traffic, the Action should say **Cut**  
 3240 **Through** for all sessions.

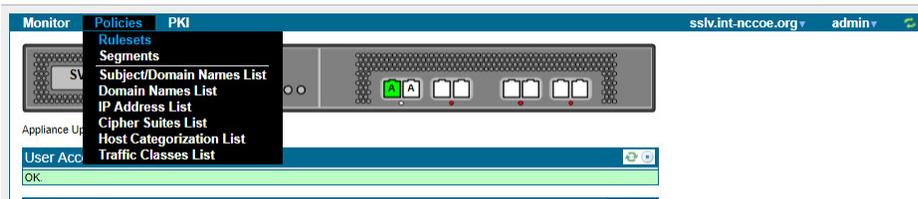
Start Time	Segment ID	SrcIP:Port	DstIP:Port	Domain Name	Certificate Status	Cipher Suite	Action	Status
Mar 18 22:37:07.723	A	24.154.127.184:33387	23.210.249.115:443	sb.monetate.net	Valid	TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA	Cut Through	Success
Mar 18 22:36:07.825	A	24.154.127.184:51898	74.125.28.104:443	Multiple domains	Valid	TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_CHACHA20_POLY1305_SHA256	Cut Through	Success
Mar 18 22:29:25.054	A	24.154.127.184:33383	23.210.249.115:443	Multiple domains	Valid	TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA	Cut Through	Success
Mar 18 22:29:18.565	A	24.154.127.184:33382	23.210.249.115:443	Multiple domains	Valid	TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA	Cut Through	Success
Mar 18 22:28:49.863	A	24.154.127.184:33381	23.210.249.115:443	Multiple domains	Valid	TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA	Cut Through	Success
Mar 18 22:28:36.421	A	24.154.127.184:51533	173.194.46.52:443	Multiple domains	Valid	TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_CHACHA20_POLY1305_SHA256	Cut Through	Success
Mar 18 22:28:18.818	A	24.154.127.184:33379	23.210.249.115:443	Multiple domains	Valid	TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA	Cut Through	Success
Mar 18 22:27:37.563	A	24.154.127.184:51891	74.125.28.104:443	Multiple domains	Valid	TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_CHACHA20_POLY1305_SHA256	Cut Through	Success
Mar 18 22:25:07.776	A	24.154.127.184:52072	74.125.28.105:443	Multiple domains	Valid	TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_CHACHA20_POLY1305_SHA256	Cut Through	Success
Mar 18 22:24:15.029	A	24.154.127.184:59475	74.125.28.106:443	Multiple domains	Valid	TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_CHACHA20_POLY1305_SHA256	Cut Through	Success

3241 **2.5.2.5.1 Create a Rule to Test Decryption**

3242 To test the SSL Visibility Appliance is decrypting SSL traffic, add a rule that decrypts everything from  
 3243 a specific source IP (e.g., your laptop).

3245 Note: At least one rule must be added to the ruleset for SSL Visibility Appliance to start processing  
 3246 SSL traffic.

- 3247 1. Select **Policies > Rulesets**.



- 3248
- 3249 2. In the **Rulesets** panel, select the ruleset that was previously created.

- 3250 3. In the **Rules** panel, click the **Insert**  icon to add a new rule. The **Insert Rule** dialog displays.
- 3251 4. For Action, select **Decrypt (Certificate and Key Known)**.
- 3252 5. Select one of the following:
- 3253 ○ If you imported one certificate, select **Known Certificate with Key**, and choose the
  - 3254 certificate you imported.
  - 3255 ○ If you imported multiple certificates, select **Known Certificates with Keys and All Known**
  - 3256 **Certificates with Keys**.
- 3257 6. For **Source IP**, enter the IP address of your computer.
- 3258 7. Click **OK**.
- 3259 8. **Apply** the Policy Changes.
- 3260 9. Next Step: Use the SSL Session Log to verify that the SSL Visibility Appliance is decrypting
- 3261 properly.

#### 3262 2.5.2.5.2 Verify Decryption

3263 View the SSL Session log to test, and verify the SSL Visibility Appliance is decrypting traffic according

3264 to the rules you created.

- 3265 1. Access a variety of websites or internal SSL servers. If you have created policies for specific host
- 3266 categories, domains, IP addresses, etc., visit websites that test these policies.
- 3267 2. To see a list of recent SSL sessions, select **Monitor > SSL Session Log**.
- 3268 3. Look for the domains of the websites/servers you visited, and observe the value in the Action
- 3269 column. Is the value you expected listed? For example, if you wanted the SSL Visibility Appliance
- 3270 *not* to decrypt a particular type of traffic, does the Action say Cut Through? For sessions
- 3271 designated as decrypted, does the Action say Decrypt? If unexpected values appear, review your
- 3272 policies.

3273 Note: When a session is decrypted, the Action column will show either *Resign Certificate* (if the

3274 deployment is using the certificate resigning method) or *Certificate and Key Known* (if you have

3275 imported known certificates and keys).

Start Time	Segment ID	SrcIP:Port	DstIP:Port	Domain Name	Certificate Status	Cipher Suite	Action	Status
Mar 12 18:11:11.084	A	192.168.1.16:63463	192.168.3.87:443	ws1.int-nccoe.org	Valid	TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384	Decrypt (Certificate and Key known)	TCP queue processing timeout
Mar 12 18:11:09.816	A	192.168.1.16:63475	192.168.3.87:443	ws1.int-nccoe.org	Valid	TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384	Decrypt (Certificate and Key known)	Success
Mar 12 18:11:05.078	A	192.168.1.16:63463	192.168.3.87:443	ws1.int-nccoe.org	Valid	TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384	Decrypt (Certificate and Key known)	Success
Mar 12 18:10:56.372	A	192.168.1.81:63892	192.168.1.95:443	192.168.1.95	Self Signed	TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA	Drop	Success
Mar 12 18:10:56.286	A	192.168.1.81:63891	192.168.1.95:443	192.168.1.95	Self Signed	TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA	Drop	Success
Mar 12 18:10:56.274	A	192.168.1.81:63890	192.168.1.95:443	192.168.1.95	Self Signed	TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA	Drop	Success
Mar 12 18:10:56.264	A	192.168.1.81:63889	192.168.1.95:443	192.168.1.95	Self Signed	TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA	Drop	Success
Mar 12 18:10:56.257	A	192.168.1.81:63888	192.168.1.95:443	192.168.1.95	Self Signed	TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA	Drop	Success
Mar 12 18:10:56.243	A	192.168.1.81:63887	192.168.1.95:443	192.168.1.95	Self Signed	TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA	Drop	Success
Mar 12 18:10:56.233	A	192.168.1.81:63886	192.168.1.95:443	192.168.1.95	Self Signed	TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA	Drop	Success
Mar 12 18:10:52.484	A	192.168.4.199:56169	192.168.3.88:443	ws2.int-nccoe.org	Valid	TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384	Cut Through	Decrypt not possible
Mar 12 18:10:39.083	A	192.168.1.16:63430	192.168.3.87:443	SN1.ws1.int-nccoe.org	Valid	TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256	Drop	Success
Mar 12 18:10:32.485	A	192.168.4.199:56133	192.168.3.88:443	ws2.int-nccoe.org	Valid	TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384	Cut Through	Decrypt not possible
Mar 12 18:10:26.375	A	192.168.1.81:63838	192.168.1.95:443	192.168.1.95	Self Signed	TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA	Drop	Success
Mar 12 18:10:26.296	A	192.168.1.81:63837	192.168.1.95:443	192.168.1.95	Self Signed	TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA	Drop	Success
Mar 12 18:10:26.283	A	192.168.1.81:63836	192.168.1.95:443	192.168.1.95	Self Signed	TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA	Drop	Success

3276 2.5.2.5.3 Other Ways to Learn About this Deployment Method

3277 Download a PDF (<https://origin-symwisedownload.symantec.com/resources/webguides/SSL>  
 3278 [Visibility/SSL Visibility](https://origin-symwisedownload.symantec.com/resources/webguides/SSL) first\_steps/Content/PDFs/Deployment6.pdf)

3279 View a video tutorial ([https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=qxSDDXhE\\_B8&feature=youtu.be](https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=qxSDDXhE_B8&feature=youtu.be))

## 3280 2.5.3 Day N: Ongoing Security Management and Maintenance

### 3281 2.5.3.1 Alerting & Monitoring

#### 3282 2.5.3.1.1 Alerts

3283 Use the Alerts panels to configure the email details the system will use to send out alerts, monitor  
 3284 events, and assess the conditions where an alert is generated. Click **Edit** to bring up the upper Edit Alert  
 3285 Mail Configuration window to construct details of the email system.

#### 3286 2.5.3.1.2 SNMP Support

3287 The SSL Visibility Appliance supports the more secure SNMP version 3, which maintains authentication  
 3288 and encryption for SNMP monitoring. Symantec recommends disabling SNMP versions 1 and 2c, and  
 3289 the default options of using AES for encryption, and SHA for authentication for SNMP version 3.

3290 For more details, see the SSL Visibility Appliance 3.x Administration & Deployment Guide

3291 [https://symwisedownload.symantec.com//resources/sites/SYMWISE/content/live/DOCUMENTATION/1](https://symwisedownload.symantec.com//resources/sites/SYMWISE/content/live/DOCUMENTATION/1000/DOC11119/en_US/SSL)  
 3292 [1000/DOC11119/en\\_US/SSL](https://symwisedownload.symantec.com//resources/sites/SYMWISE/content/live/DOCUMENTATION/1000/DOC11119/en_US/SSL)

3293 [VISIBILITY Admin 31231.pdf?\\_gda\\_ =1556286966\\_fb942bb8532ca7c1a67d0e2720faa76d](https://symwisedownload.symantec.com//resources/sites/SYMWISE/content/live/DOCUMENTATION/1000/DOC11119/en_US/SSL)

#### 3294 2.5.3.1.3 Logging Options

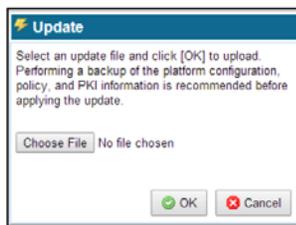
3295 Use **Platform Management (SSL Visibility-int.nccoe.org) > Logging Options** to enable or disable WebUI  
 3296 TLS logging and to configure remote syslog servers.

3297 Use Logging Options to include Web UI TLS trusted channel establishment and termination logs in the

3298 System Log. These events are not included in the System Log by default.

### 3299 2.5.3.2 Software Update

3300 Use the **Update** menu item to load and apply a file that will update the system software. Update files  
3301 are digitally signed and checked before being applied to the system. An invalid update file will not be  
3302 applied.



3303  
3304 Click **Choose File** to open a window where you browse the system and select the update file to use. Click  
3305 **OK**, and the file is checked; if valid, it is copied to the system and applied.

## 3306 2.6 Venafi Trust Protection Platform (TPP)

### 3307 2.6.1 Prerequisites

3308 Venafi TPP requires the following in order to be installed:

- 3309     ▪ Windows Server
- 3310     ▪ Microsoft SQL Server Database
- 3311     ▪ Hardware Security Module (if one will be used)
- 3312     ▪ Microsoft .NET Framework

### 3313 2.6.2 Installation

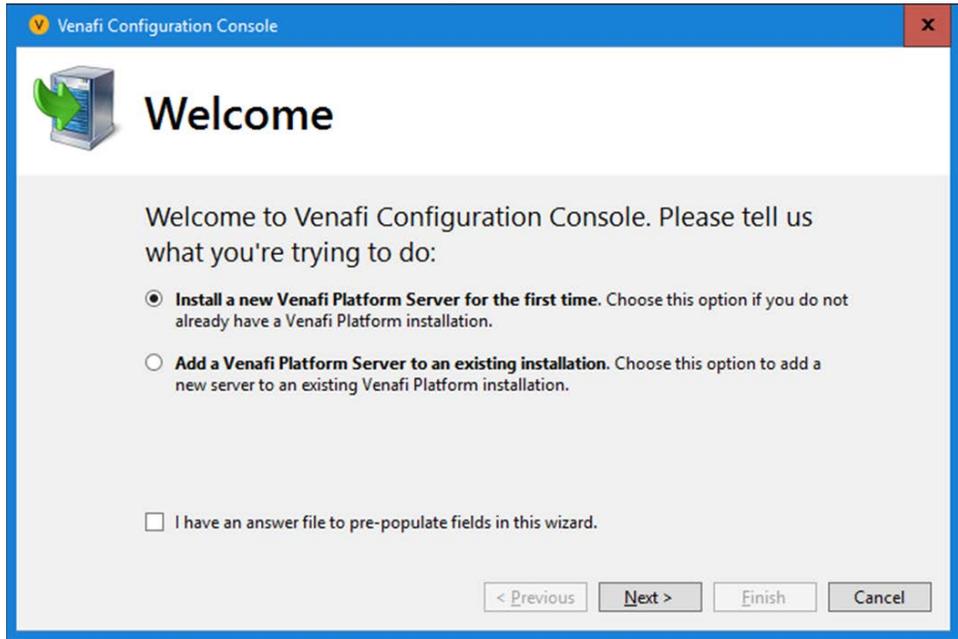
3314 We installed Venafi TPP on Microsoft Windows Server 2012. Before starting the Venafi TPP installation,  
3315 make sure you have configured your database and HSM.

3316 The installation can be automated via a configuration file or manually performed with an installation  
3317 wizard. The automated installation configuration file for installation into the production environment is  
3318 typically created based on the Venafi TPP deployment in the DEV testing environment and placed in the  
3319 user acceptance environment to formally test it. We recommend using the automated installation to  
3320 reduce the possibility of errors during the installation into the production environment.

3321 Because we were only configuring a single server in our lab environment, we manually installed and  
3322 configured the product using the wizard. To install the Venafi TPP binaries and supporting files using the  
3323 wizard, follow steps 1-7 in the *Venafi Trust Protection Platform Installation Guide* chapter titled  
3324 “Installing using the Venafi Configuration Console wizard.”

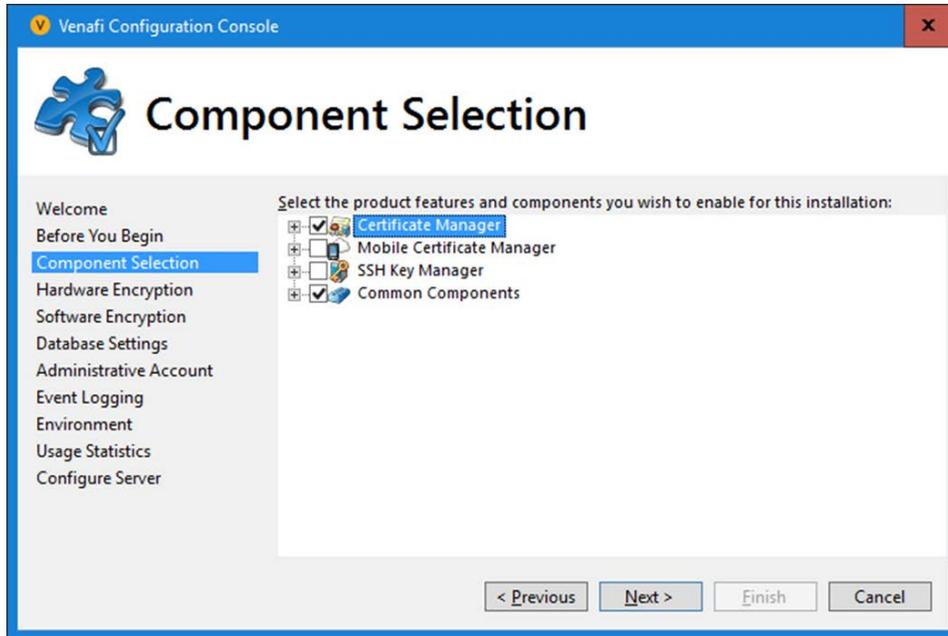
3325 Following step 7, the Venafi Configuration Console is automatically launched and is explained in steps 8-  
3326 22 where specific integrations with the HSM and database are performed. We performed the following  
3327 steps in our implementation:

3328 1. At the prompt for first time or existing installation, select “first-time installation.”



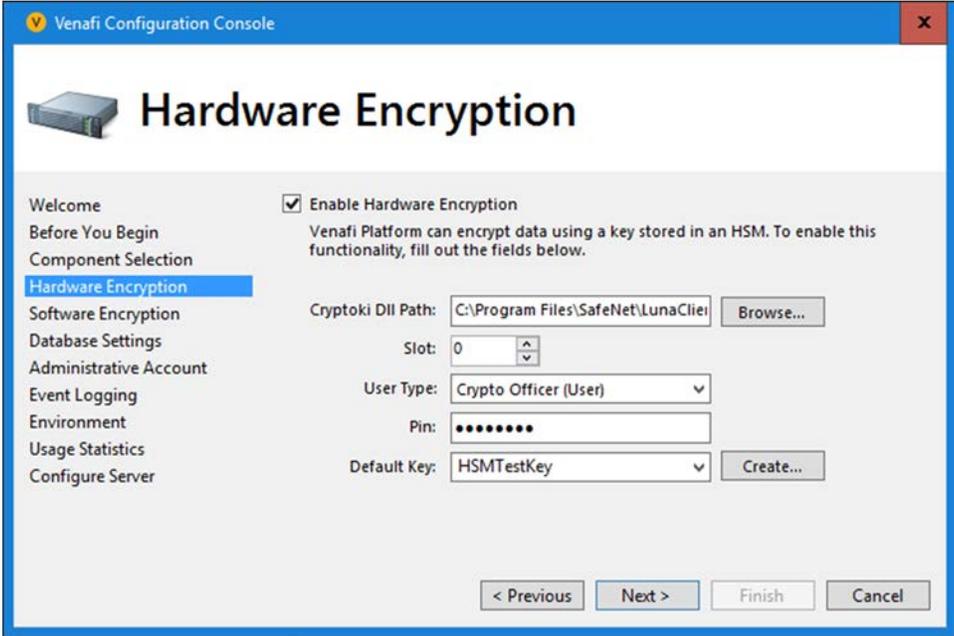
3329

- 3330 2. The Venafi Certificate Manager manages TLS server certificates, so it was selected. The Mobile  
3331 Certificate and SSH Key Managers were not enabled.



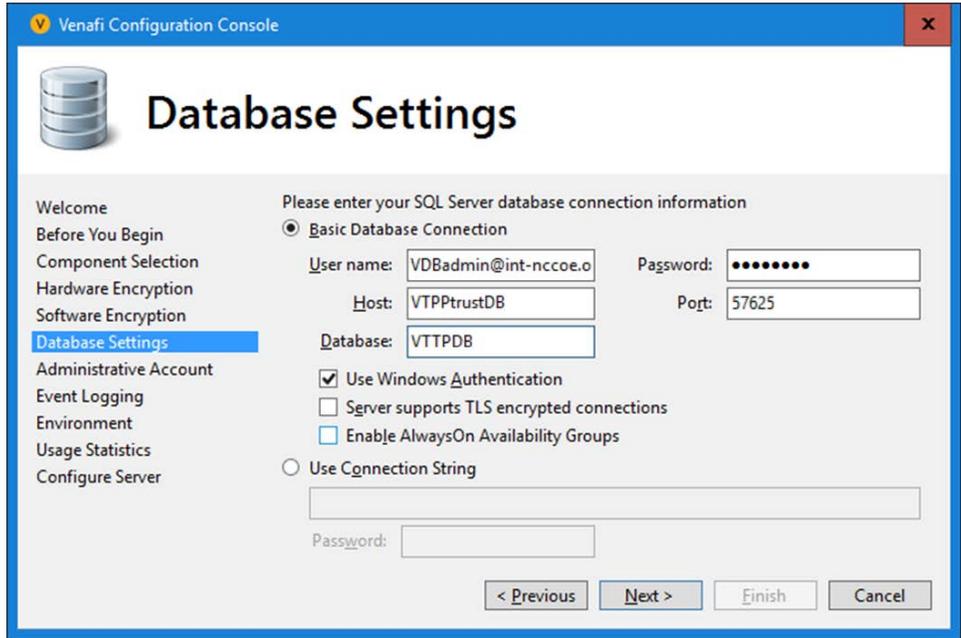
3332

- 3333 3. We recommend using an HSM with Venafi TPP to protect the symmetric key that encrypts  
3334 private keys and credentials in the Venafi TPP database. In our implementation, we integrated  
3335 with the SafeNet AT HSM. We entered the following configuration:

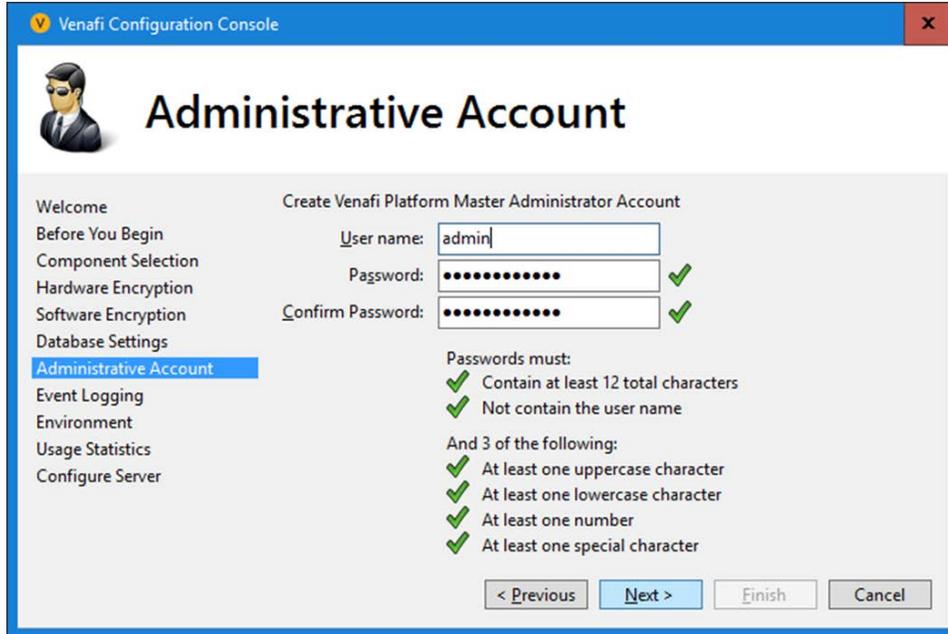


3336

- 3337  
3338  
3339
4. Windows authentication was used to authenticate to Microsoft SQL Server from Venafi TPP. Windows authentication is recommended, because it consolidates user account management, including control of password rules, failed logins, etc.

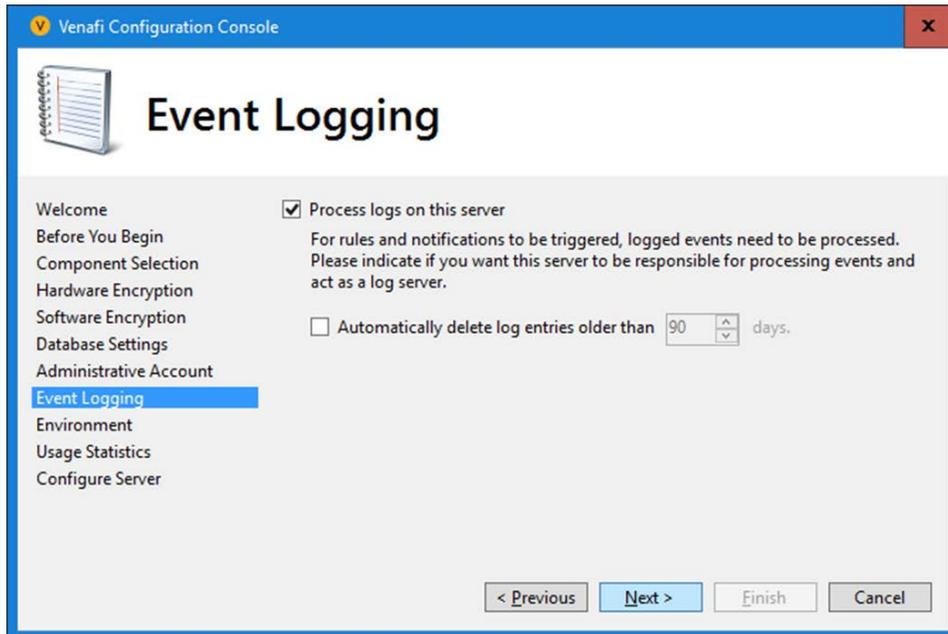


- 3341 5. The initial Master Administrator account username was set to “admin,” and the password was  
3342 also set.



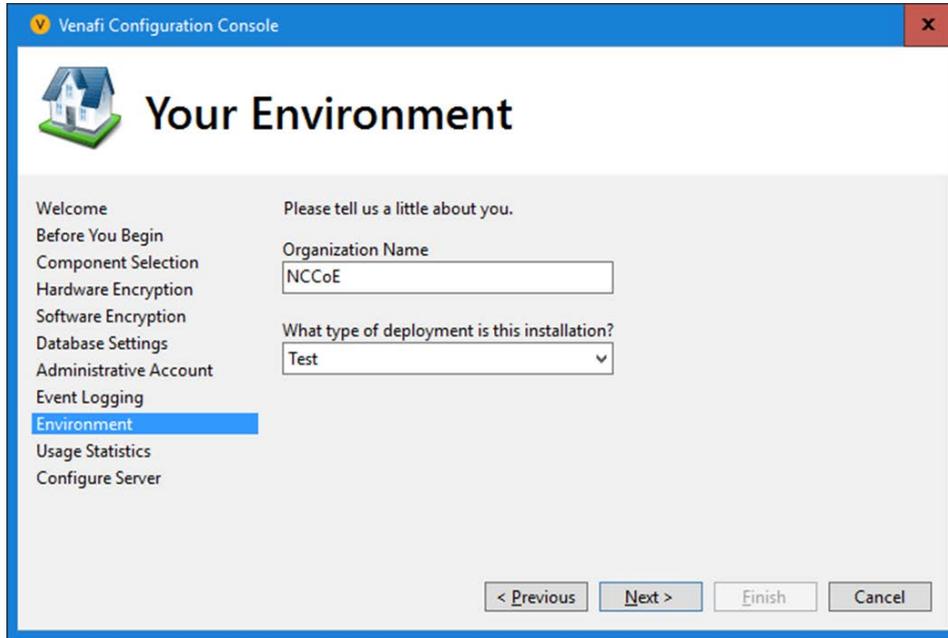
3343

- 3344 6. The Venafi TPP server was configured to process logs, as it was the only server in the  
3345 environment.



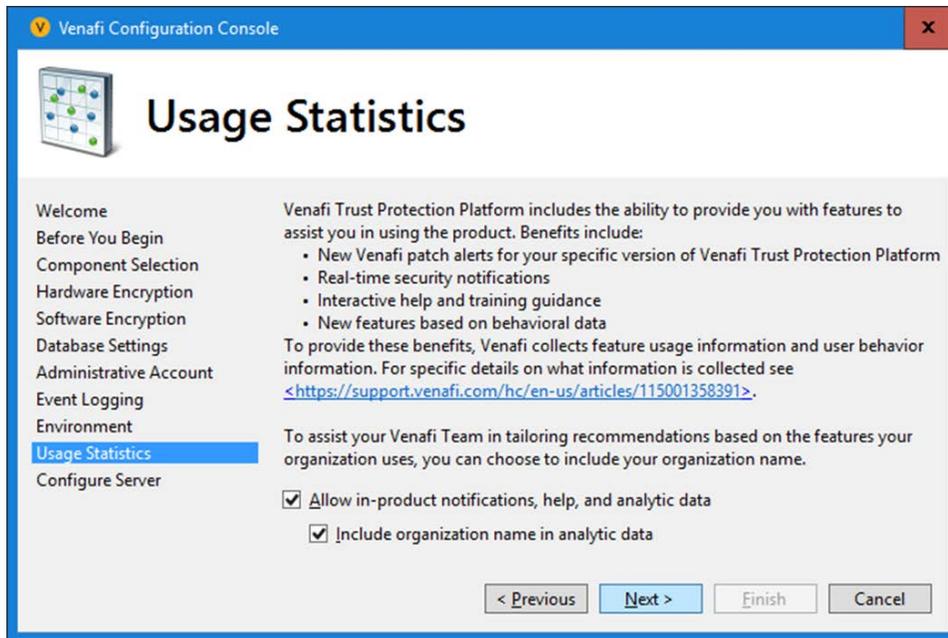
3346

3347 7. The organization name was set to "NCCoE"; the environment was set to "Test."



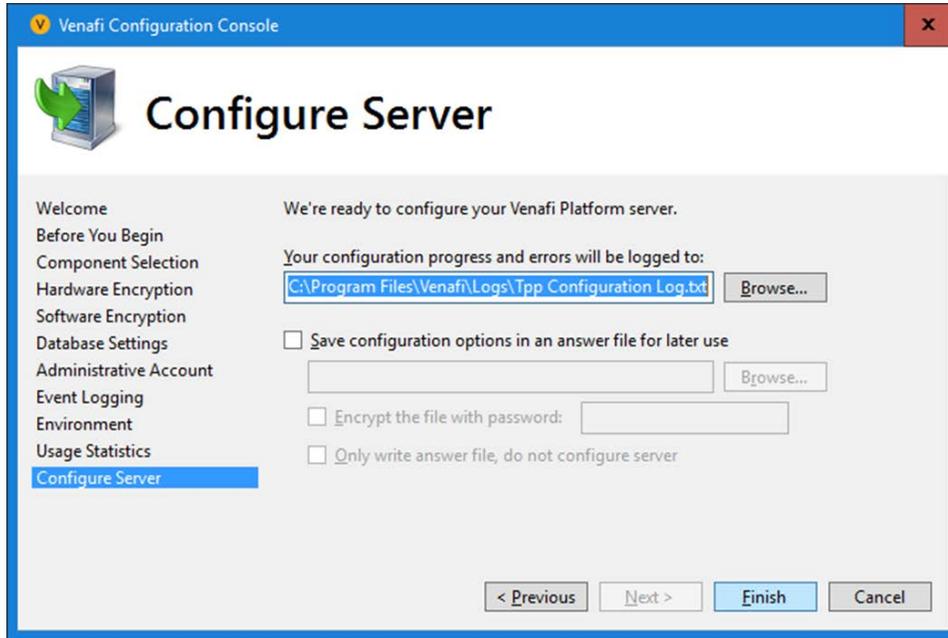
3348

3349 8. The collection of usage statistics was enabled.



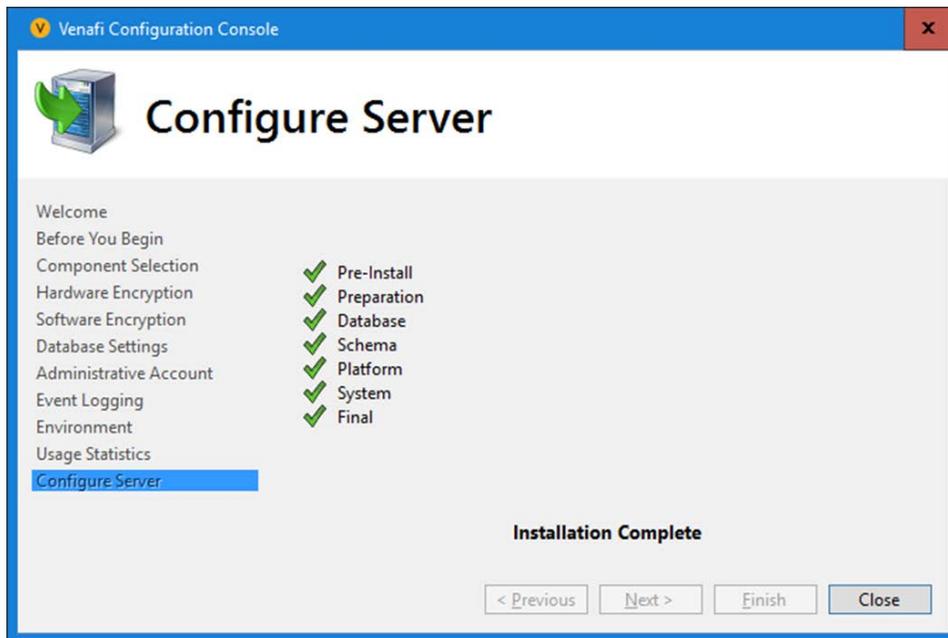
3350

3351 9. The default log file location was used.



3352

3353 10. The Finish button was selected, and the configuration of the Venafi TPP server was completed  
3354 successfully.



3355

3356 **2.6.3 CA Integration**

3357 In our implementation, we integrated Venafi TPP with two CAs: DigiCert was used for publicly trusted  
3358 certificates, and Active Directory Certificate Services for internally trusted certificates.

3359 **2.6.3.1 DigiCert**

3360 To configure integration with DigiCert so that Venafi TPP can automatically enroll for and retrieve  
3361 certificates, follow the instructions in the “DigiCert CertCentral” section of the *Venafi Trust Protection*  
3362 *Platform Certificate Authority and Hosting Platform Integration Guide*.

3363 In our implementation, we used DigiCert Multi-SAN SSL certificates. The following configuration was  
3364 used:

The screenshot shows a configuration form for a DigiCert certificate. The fields and their values are as follows:

- \* Product Name: Standard SSL (dropdown menu)
- \* Organization: National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence (dropdown menu)
- Manual Approval:
- Subject Alt Name Enabled:
- Signature Algorithm: SHA256 (dropdown menu)
- Organizational Unit Override: (empty text box)
- Allow Reissuance:
- Renewal Window (days): 90 (text input)
- Certificate Transparency: Send certificates to a CT log server (dropdown menu)
- \* Validity Period: 1 year (dropdown menu)
- Allow Users to Specify End Date:

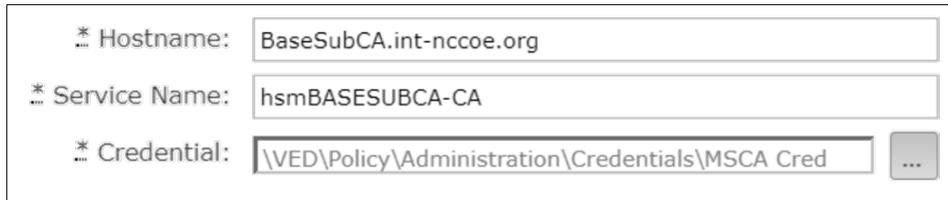
3365

3366 **2.6.3.2 Active Directory Certificate Services**

3367 We used Microsoft AD CS to issue certificates to TLS servers inside the lab firewall. To configure  
3368 integration with AD CS so Venafi can automatically enroll for and retrieve certificates, follow the  
3369 instructions in the “Microsoft Active Directory Certificate Services (AD CS) - Enterprise and Standalone—

3370 CA template configuration” section of the *Venafi Trust Protection Platform Certificate Authority and*  
3371 *Hosting Platform Integration Guide*.

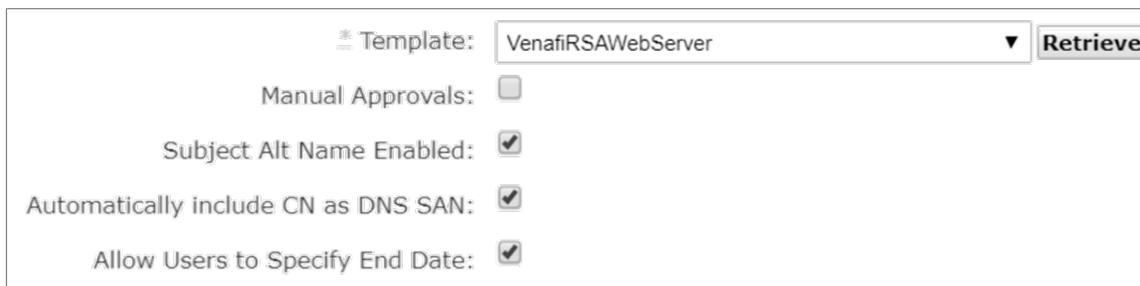
3372 In our implementation, we configured the host name, service name, and credential information in  
3373 Venafi TPP to access the ADCS Issuing CA:



A screenshot of a configuration form with three rows. The first row is labeled "Hostname:" and contains the text "BaseSubCA.int-nccoe.org". The second row is labeled "Service Name:" and contains the text "hsmBASESUBCA-CA". The third row is labeled "Credential:" and contains the text "\\VED\Policy\Administration\Credentials\MSCA Cred" followed by a small grey button with three dots.

3374

3375 In our implementation, a certificate template named “VenafiRSAWebServer” was configured in ADCS to  
3376 issue TLS server certificates. The CA template object we used in Venafi TPP to request certificates  
3377 pointed to this template in ADCS and had the following configuration:



A screenshot of a configuration form for a certificate template. It features a dropdown menu labeled "Template:" with "VenafiRSAWebServer" selected and a "Retrieve" button to its right. Below this are four checkboxes: "Manual Approvals:" (unchecked), "Subject Alt Name Enabled:" (checked), "Automatically include CN as DNS SAN:" (checked), and "Allow Users to Specify End Date:" (checked).

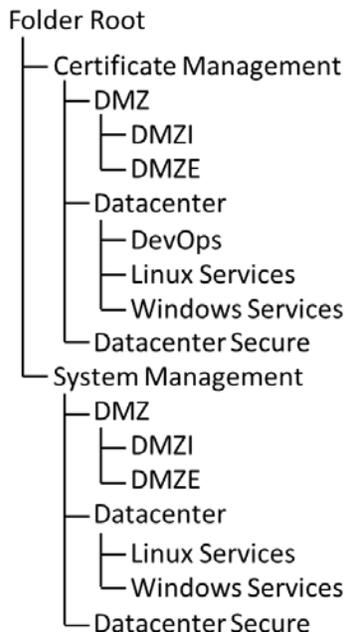
3378

3379 We recommend enabling “Subject Alt Name Enabled” and “Automatically include CN as DNS SAN,” as  
3380 SANs in lieu of using CNs. Including a CN and SAN in certificates ensures backward compatibility with  
3381 older clients that only support CNs and compatibility with newer clients that require SANs.

## 3382 2.6.4 Folder Creation

3383 To create a folder hierarchy for organizing certificate, application, and device objects, refer to the  
3384 section titled “Managing your policies (folders)” in the *Venafi Trust Protection Platform Administration*

3385 *Guide*. The following folder structure was created in our implementation of Venafi TPP to match the  
3386 three fictitious departments of certificate owners in the lab:



3387

## 3388 2.6.5 Custom Fields

3389 Follow the instructions in the section titled “Working with Custom Fields” in the *Venafi Trust Protection*  
3390 *Platform Administration Guide* to define additional metadata fields for certificates and other objects.

3391 Two custom fields were defined in our Venafi TPP implementation: Biz Owner and Cost Center.

3392 We configured the Biz Owner custom field with a field type of “Identity” to allow the selection of user  
3393 identities in AD.

3394 The Cost Center custom field was configured with a “String” field type, including a regex to validate that  
3395 the cost centers that were entered matched the pattern of two letters, one dash, and four numbers.

3396 (e.g., AB-1234). A custom error message displays if a cost center doesn't match the regex pattern  
3397 entered by a user.

The screenshot shows a configuration form for a certificate field named 'Cost Center'. The field type is 'String'. The validation template is set to 'Custom' with a regular expression of `\b[a-zA-Z]{2}\b-\b[0-9]{4}\b`. The 'Apply to...' section has 'Certificates' checked and 'Devices' unchecked. The customizable help text is 'Please provide the cost center for this certificate (e.g. WR-3201)'. The customizable error message is 'Cost centers must include two letters, a dash, and four numbers (e.g. WR-3201)'.

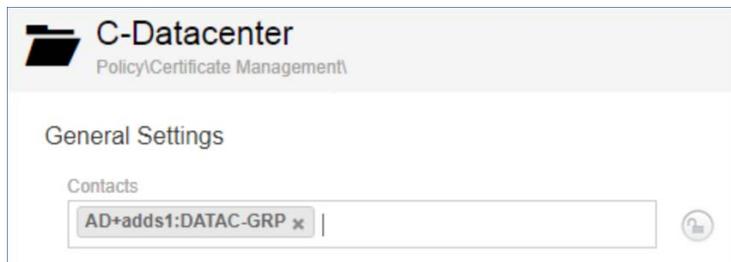
3398

## 3399 2.6.6 Assigning Certificate Owners

3400 The assignment of certificate owners was done with AD groups Venafi TPP folders in our  
3401 implementation, to ensure new certificates automatically had the correct owner assigned. The AD  
3402 groups were created to represent the certificate owners in the four fictitious departments in our  
3403 implementation. These groups were assigned as contacts and granted permissions at the folder level.

### 3404 2.6.6.1 Contacts

3405 For information about assigning Contacts to folders in Venafi TPP, refer to the section titled "General  
3406 configuration options" in the *Venafi Trust Protection Platform Administration Guide*. Each certificate  
3407 owner AD group was assigned as a contact to their respective Venafi TPP folder, so they would receive  
3408 notifications (e.g., impending expirations, errors, etc.).

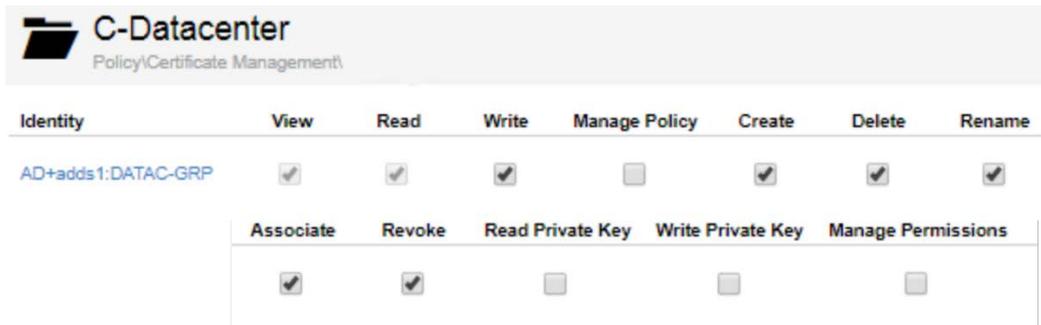


3409

3410 **2.6.6.2 Permissions**

3411 For instructions on assigning permissions in Venafi TPP, refer to the section titled “Assigning permissions  
3412 to objects in Aperture” in the *Venafi Trust Protection Platform Administration Guide*. In our  
3413 implementation, we assigned each group representing a certificate owner View, Read, Write, Create,  
3414 Delete, Rename, Associate, and Revoke.

3415 For example, the DATAC-GRP was assigned the following privileges to the C-Datacenter folder in our  
3416 implementation of Venafi TPP.



The screenshot shows the permissions for the 'C-Datacenter' folder. The permissions are assigned to the group 'AD+adds1:DATAC-GRP'. The permissions are as follows:

Identity	View	Read	Write	Manage Policy	Create	Delete	Rename
AD+adds1:DATAC-GRP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Associate	Revoke	Read Private Key	Write Private Key	Manage Permissions
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

3417

3418 **2.6.7 Setting Policies**

3419 For information about defining policies on folders in Venafi TPP, refer to the chapter titled “Using  
3420 policies to manage encryption assets” in the *Venafi Trust Protection Platform Administration Guide*.

3421 In our Venafi TPP implementation, the following policies were set:

- 3422     ▪ The Organization, City/Locality, State/Province, and Country fields within Subject DNs were  
3423     locked on a top-level folder, so that those values were required in certificates across all groups.

Subject DN

Organizational Units

Organization

City/Locality

State/Province

Country

3424

3425 ▪ Specific domains were whitelisted. See the Domain Whitelisting section [2.6.8](#) of this document  
 3426 for more information.

3427 ▪ Approvers were assigned and locked at the folder level. See the “Workflow – RA Reviews”  
 3428 Section [2.6.9](#) of this document for more information.

3429 ▪ The key length was set to 2048 on the Certificate Management folder and locked.

Key Size

3430

3431 ▪ The following policies for certificate authorities were configured:

3432 • The internal Issuing CA was enforced on the following folders to ensure only internally  
 3433 issued certificates could be used:

3434 ○ DMZI

3435 ○ Datacenter

3436 ○ Datacenter Secure

CA Template

3437

- 3438           ○ The publicly trusted DigiCert Multi-SAN CA was enforced on the DMZE folder to ensure  
3439           only publicly trusted EV certificates could be provisioned to the public facing interfaces  
3440           of the F5 LTM.



3441

## 3442 2.6.8 Domain Whitelisting

3443 To limit security exposure, control the domains for which certificates can be issued. For instructions on  
3444 configuring the domains for which certificates can be requested in Venafi TPP (domain whitelisting),  
3445 refer to the section titled “To configure certificate policy on a folder” in the *Venafi Trust Protection*  
3446 *Platform Certificate Management Guide*.

3447 In our implementation, we allowed two internal domains (int-nccoe.org and ext-nccoe.org) for all  
3448 folders that contained internal resources in Venafi TPP.



3449

3450 In the DMZE folder containing all the external resources, we also allowed the externally accessible  
3451 domain (tls.nccoe.org).



3452

3453 **2.6.9 Workflow – RA Reviews**

3454 For instructions on configuring workflow gates in Venafi TPP, refer to the section titled “Creating a  
3455 certificate workflow” in the *Venafi Trust Protection Platform Certificate Management Guide*. In our  
3456 implementation, we established a workflow gate for the Datacenter Secure zone. To do so, perform the  
3457 following steps:

- 3458 1. Create a workflow object. Assign the stage to “0.” Select “Approver assigned to object” for  
3459 Request Approval From.

\* If Stage is: 0

If Application or Trust Store is: [dropdown]

Inject Commands:

Commands: [text area]

*Commands will be evaluated for macros. If the command includes a single "\$", and is not intended to be used as a macro, then "\$" should be replaced with "\$\$."*

Request Approval:

Request Approval From:  Approver assigned to object  
 Specified approver  
 Specify approver via macro

Specified Approver(s): [list box]

Approver Macro: [text area]

Approval Reason Code: Stage 0 - Certificate Review [dropdown]

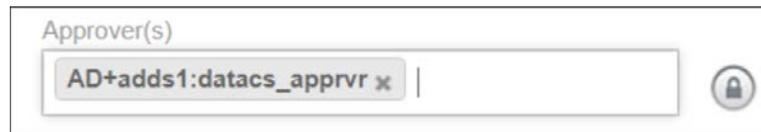
3460

3461 2. Assign the workflow to the Datacenter Secure folder policy.



3462

3463 3. Assign the appropriate AD group (datacs\_apprvr) to the **Approver(s)** for certificates on the  
3464 Datacenter Secure folder.



3465

## 3466 2.6.10 CA Import

3467 Once folder structure, policies, certificate owners, and other configurations are completed, begin  
3468 building the inventory of certificates—start by importing certificates from the ADCS-issuing CA.

3469 For instructions on configuring imports from ADCS, refer to the chapter titled “Importing certificates  
3470 from a certificate authority” in *Venafi Trust Protection Platform Administration Guide*.

3471 In our implementation, we configured Venafi TPP to import certificates from a particular ADCS template  
3472 named, “WebBulkCertTemplate.” We included expired—not revoked—certificates. We chose not to  
3473 define any placement rules and placed all certificates into a single folder named **ADCS Import**.

**CA Configuration**

CA Type  
Microsoft CA

**Get templates from Microsoft CA**

Hostname or IP Address  
BaseSubCA.int-nccoe.org

Credentials  
\\VED\Policy\Administration\Credentials\MSCA Cred

Service Name  
hsmBASESUBCA-CA **Get Templates**

Select templates to import  Import all templates

CA Templates Found	Selected for this Import
	WebBulkCertTemplate

Include:  Expired certificates  Revoked certificates

**Placement Rules** [+ Add New Rule](#)

There are currently no placement rules

If no rule(s) apply,

put certificates in: \\VED\Policy\Certificate Management\ADCS I **...**

ignore certificates and do not place them in a policy

Automatically place certificates into policy when importing?

Yes  No, let me preview first in Summary

3474

3475 A total of 523 certificates were imported from the ADCS issuing CA.

3476 **2.6.11 Network Discovery**

3477 It's possible to accomplish network discovery scanning for TLS server certificates in several ways,  
3478 including using existing vulnerability assessment tools or the certificate management solution. In our  
3479 implementation, we used Venafi TPP to perform network discovery scans using two different methods:  
3480 scanning using Venafi TPP servers and the Scanafi utility.

3481 **Venafi TPP Server**

3482 In our implementation, we used Venafi TPP servers to perform network discovery scans in the  
3483 Datacenter and Datacenter-Secure network zones. For instructions on performing network discoveries  
3484 with Venafi TPP servers, see the chapter titled "Discovering certificates and keys" in the *Venafi Trust*  
3485 *Protection Platform Certificate Management Guide*.

3486 **2.6.11.1 Scanafi**

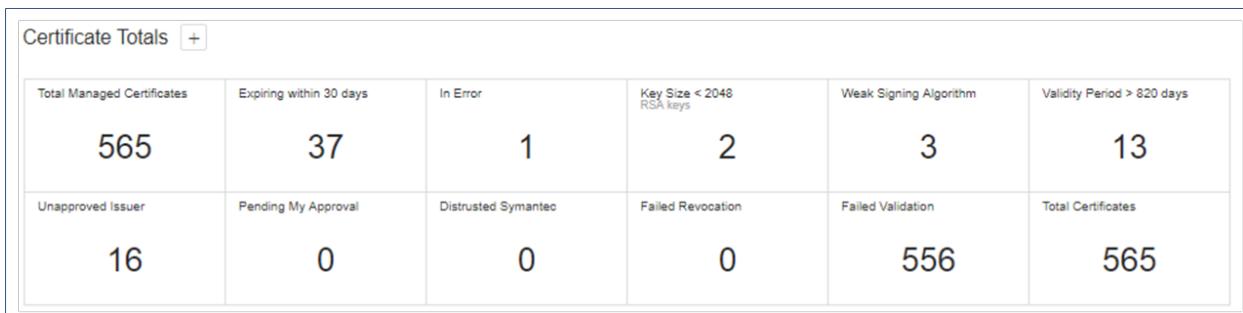
3487 For information on using Scanafi to perform network discovery scans, refer to the section titled  
3488 "Automatically calling Discovery/Import from Scanafi" in *Venafi Trust Protection Platform Web SDK*  
3489 *Developer's Guide*.

3490 In our implementation, we installed Scanafi on a Fedora Linux system in the DMZ network zone. The  
3491 following command was used to execute a network discovery scan.

```
3492 ./scanafi_linux_x64 --tppurl=https://venafil.int-nccoe.org \  
3493 --tppuser=vscanuser --tpppass=***** --range=192.168.4.0/23 \  
3494 --zone="\VED\Policy\Certificate Management\UNKNOWN ORIGIN" \  
3495 --certonly
```

3496 **2.6.12 Identify Certificate Risks/Vulnerabilities**

3497 Following the import of certificates from the ADCS-issuing CA and the network discovery scans, we used  
3498 the Venafi TPP dashboard to identify certificate risks and vulnerabilities. The following shows the  
3499 dashboard micro-widgets for our implementation.



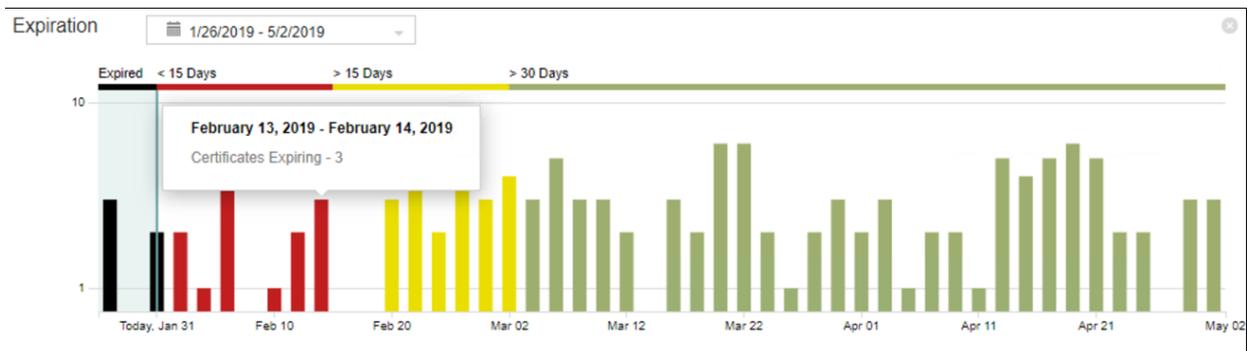
Certificate Totals +					
Total Managed Certificates	Expiring within 30 days	In Error	Key Size < 2048 RSA keys	Weak Signing Algorithm	Validity Period > 820 days
565	37	1	2	3	13
Unapproved Issuer	Pending My Approval	Distrusted Symantec	Failed Revocation	Failed Validation	Total Certificates
16	0	0	0	556	565

3500

3501 We used this information to identify certificates not compliant with policy (e.g., certificates issued by  
3502 unapproved CAs or with weak lengths), so they could be replaced.

3503 The dashboard was also used to identify outage risks related to certificate expirations. The following  
3504 figure displays the Expiration widget of the dashboard that shows the expiration profile for certificates  
3505 in our implementation.

3506 **Figure 2-2 Venafi Dashboard Expiration Widget showing the Certificate Expiration Profile**



3507

## 3508 2.6.13 Automate Management

### 3509 2.6.13.1 F5 BIG-IP LTM

#### 3510 2.6.13.1.1 Discover Existing F5 Certificates and Manage

3511 Venafi TPP can automatically discover existing certificates and configuration through its Onboard  
3512 Discovery feature. Because most organizations have F5 systems with existing certificates installed, this is  
3513 a common process for F5 systems we used in our implementation, which included the following steps:

- 3514 1. Create an Onboard discovery job to discover certificates on F5 systems. For instructions on how  
3515 to create Onboard Discovery jobs, refer to the section titled "Using Onboard Discovery" in the  
3516 *Venafi Trust Protection Platform Certificate Management Guide*.
- 3517 2. Create a device object in Venafi TPP with the address and credentials for the F5 device on which  
3518 you want to discover and manage certificates.

3519

Hostname/Address:	<input type="text" value="192.168.3.85"/>
Provisioning Mode:	<input type="text" value="Agentless"/>
Concurrent Connection Limit:	<input type="text" value="1"/>
Device Credential:	<input type="text" value="VED\Policy\System Management\A-Credentials\F5"/>

3520 3. Run the F5 Onboard Discovery job by clicking **Run Now**.

Job Name	Description	Next Run	Last Run	Type	Results	Status	
F5 Onboard Discovery F5 LTM Advanced	Discover certs and configuration on F5 Big-IP in DMZ	Manual	1/31/2019 1:02 PM (-05:00 UTC)	Onboard Discovery	Certificates: 1	Complete	Run Now

3521  
3522 4. Ensure the discovered certificate(s) are set to automatically renew when they are nearing  
3523 expiration.

Automatic Renewal?\*

Yes

3524 5. With this discovered configuration, including the certificate, Venafi TPP was set to automatically  
3525 replace the existing certificate with a new certificate prior to expiration.

3526 [2.6.13.1.2 Install a New Certificate on F5](#)

3527 In our implementation, Venafi TPP was used to enroll for and install a new certificate on the F5 LTM in  
3528 the DMZ. The following steps were used to perform these operations:

3529 1. Create a new certificate object in the Venafi TPP Aperture console.

Create a New Certificate

3530 2. Select the appropriate folder.

Certificate Folder\* ?

Policy \ Certificate Management \ C-DMZ \ DMZE

3531 3. Select a name for the certificate.

Nickname\* ?

app1.tls.nccoe.org

- 3532 4. Select the “Provisioning” Management Type to configure the certificate for automated  
3533 management.

Management Type\* ?

Provisioning ▼

- 3534 5. Enter the CN for the certificate.

Common Name ?

app1.tls.nccoe.org

- 3535 6. Enter the SANs for the certificate.

Subject Alternative Names (DNS)

app1.tls.nccoe.org x |

- 3536 7. Configure the certificate for automatic renewal and installation when it is nearing expiration.

Automatic Renewal?\*

Yes ▼

- 3537 8. Add a new installation for the certificate, and indicate that management will be automated for  
3538 that installation.

3539  **Track, validate, and automate installation of this certificate**

- 3540 9. Select the F5 device where the certificate will be installed.

Find Existing Device [Create New Device](#)

Policy \ System Management \ S-DMZ \ DMZE \ F5LB1 ▼

3541

- 3542 10. Indicate that the Installation Type is “F5 BIG-IP Local Traffic Manager.”

Installation Type

F5 BIG-IP Local Traffic Manager ▼

3543

3544 11. The certificate we were installing was not for securing the administrative interface to the F5  
3545 LTM, therefore, we selected “No” for the Device Certificate.

Device Certificate  Yes  No

3546  
3547 12. We indicated that Venafi TPP should update the profile when the new certificate was installed.  
3548 This ensures the configuration was properly set up to use the new certificate.

Force Profile Update  Yes  No

3549  
3550 13. We instructed Venafi TPP to install the CA certificates with the new certificate—enabling clients  
3551 connecting to the F5 to validate the certificate signature with the chain.

Install Chain  Yes  No

3552  
3553 14. We chose to have Venafi TPP bundle the CA certificates with the new certificate (in the same file  
3554 on the F5 device).

Bundle Certificates  Yes  No

3555  
3556 15. An HSM was not installed on the F5 device we were using, so we indicated this to Venafi TPP.

Use FIPS  Yes  No

3557  
3558 16. We instructed Venafi TPP to overwrite the existing certificate each time it installed a new  
3559 certificate (prior to expiration).

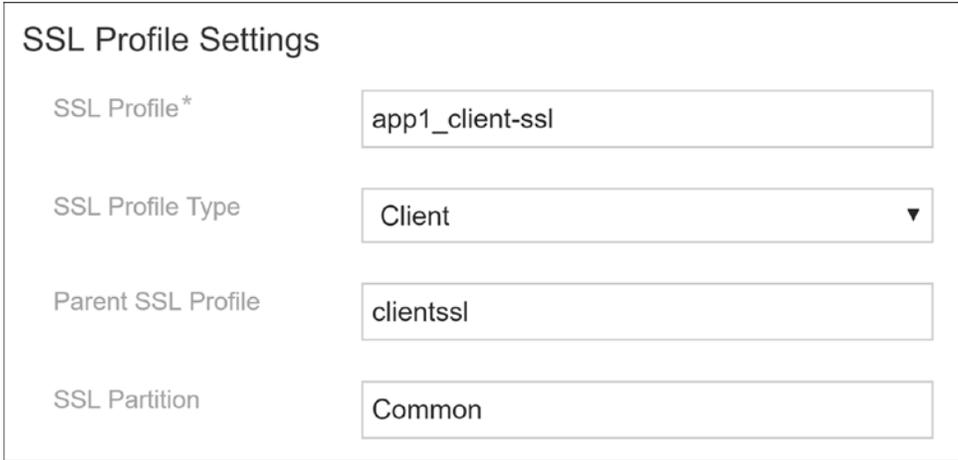
Overwrite Certificate and Key  Yes  No

3560  
3561 17. We instructed Venafi TPP to delete the existing certificate when the new certificate was  
3562 installed.

Delete Previous Cert and Key  Yes  No

3563

3564 18. To ensure the certificate was associated with the correct SSL profile on the F5 LTM, we  
3565 configured the following:



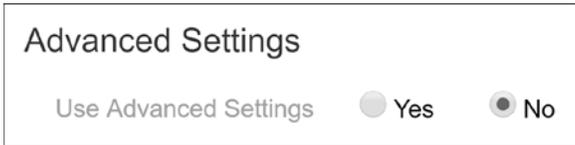
The screenshot shows a configuration form titled "SSL Profile Settings". It contains four fields: "SSL Profile\*" with the value "app1\_client-ssl", "SSL Profile Type" with a dropdown menu set to "Client", "Parent SSL Profile" with the value "clientssl", and "SSL Partition" with the value "Common".

3566  
3567 19. We provided Venafi TPP information about the virtual server where the certificate should be  
3568 associated.



The screenshot shows a configuration form titled "Virtual Server Settings". It contains two fields: "Virtual Server\*" with the value "app1\_vs" and "Virtual Server Partition" with the value "Common".

3569  
3570 20. We indicated to Venafi TPP that we did not use mutual authentication or other advanced  
3571 features on the F5 LTM.



The screenshot shows a configuration form titled "Advanced Settings". It contains a single field: "Use Advanced Settings" with two radio buttons, "Yes" and "No". The "No" radio button is selected.

3572  
3573 21. After configuring these settings, we clicked **Save**.

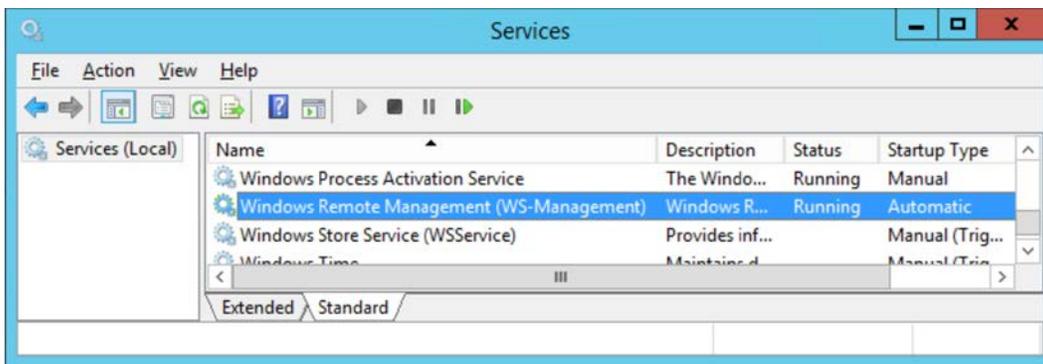


3574  
3575 22. Click **Renew Now** on the certificate to start to enroll a new certificate and to install it on the F5  
3576 LTM with these configuration settings.

3577 **2.6.13.2 Microsoft IIS – Agentless**

3578 The Microsoft IIS system we used in our implementation to demonstrate automated management had  
3579 an existing certificate. Venafi TPP can automatically discover existing certificates and configuration  
3580 through its Onboard Discovery feature. Consequently, the following process was used:

- 3581 1. Create an Onboard discovery job to discover certificates on Microsoft IIS systems. For  
3582 instructions on how to create Onboard Discovery jobs, refer to the section titled “Using Onboard  
3583 Discovery” in the *Venafi Trust Protection Platform Certificate Management Guide*.
- 3584 2. Confirm Windows Remote Management (WinRM) service was running on the Windows server  
3585 hosting IIS.



- 3586
- 3587 3. Enable WinRM at the command line.

```
3588 C:\>winrm quickconfig
```

- 3589 4. Create a device object in Venafi TPP with the address of the Windows server hosting IIS and a  
3590 credential for Venafi TPP to authenticate to the system.

Hostname/Address:	<input type="text" value="192.168.3.5"/>
Provisioning Mode:	<input type="text" value="Agentless"/>
Concurrent Connection Limit:	<input type="text" value="1"/>
Device Credential:	<input type="text" value="\VED\Policy\System Management\A-Credentials\IIS2"/> ...

3591

- 3592 5. Execute the IIS Onboard Discovery job that applied to the folder where the device was located.  
 3593 The certificate and binding configuration on IIS were discovered.

Job Name	Next Run	Last Run	Type	Results	Status
IIS CAPI (IIS Bindings)	Manual	1/27/2019 8:09 PM (+00:00 UTC)	Onboard Discovery	Certificates: 1	Complete

3594

- 3595 6. The certificate is discovered.

The screenshot shows the Venafi TPP interface for a discovered server certificate. The certificate is for **iis2.int-nccoe.org** and was discovered on 1/27/2019 at 8:09 PM UTC. The certificate details are as follows:

Issuer	Common Name	Organization	Organizational Unit	City/Locality	State/Province	Country	Key Size
hsmBASESUBCA-CA	iis2.int-nccoe.org	NCCOE		Gaithersburg	Maryland	US	2048

Key Usage: Digital Signature, Key Encipherment (a0)  
 Enhanced Key Usage: Server Authentication (1.3.6.1.5.5.7.3.1)

3596

- 3597 7. In addition, IIS binding information is discovered, so that all the necessary configuration for  
 3598 automated management is populated in Venafi TPP.

The screenshot shows the Venafi TPP interface displaying the discovered IIS binding information. The binding is for **iis2.int-nccoe.org** and was discovered on 4/22/2019 at 1:00 AM (-04:00 UTC). The binding details are as follows:

Installation Type	Device	Contacts	Installation Status	SSL/TLS Validation Port
iis2.int-nccoe.org (443_iis2.int-nccoe.org) CAPI	iis2.int-nccoe.org	local:VTTPAdmin	Installation Validation Successful Last Checked: 4/22/2019 1:00 AM (-04:00 UTC)	443

3599

- 3600 8. To ensure the certificate automatically renews and is replaced when nearing expiration, confirm  
 3601 the certificate was set to automatically renew prior to expiration.

Automatic Renewal?\*

Yes

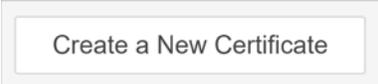
3602

3603 **2.6.13.3 Microsoft IIS with SafeNet AT HSM – Agentless**

3604 The Venafi TPP server was used to remotely trigger the generation of a key pair and CSR on the SafeNet  
 3605 AT HSM. The HSM is connected to the Microsoft IIS server in the Datacenter Secure zone and can enroll  
 3606 a certificate using the generated CSR. It can also install the certificate in the Windows server with the

3607 proper configuration for the Microsoft IIS server. The following steps are used to perform these  
3608 operations:

- 3609 1. Ensure the SafeNet AT HSM client is installed and configured on a Windows server hosting  
3610 Microsoft IIS. See Section [2.2.2.4](#) for instructions.
- 3611 2. Create a new certificate object in the Venafi TPP Aperture console.

3612 A rectangular button with a light gray border and a white background, containing the text "Create a New Certificate" in a dark gray font.

- 3613 3. Select the appropriate folder.

3614 A form field for selecting a certificate folder. It has a label "Certificate Folder\*" with a help icon. The text "Policy \ Certificate Management \ C-Datacenter Secure" is entered in the input box, followed by a close icon and a dropdown arrow.

- 3615 4. Select a name for the certificate.

3616 A form field for selecting a nickname. It has a label "Nickname\*" with a help icon. The text "IIS-SafeNet-HSM" is entered in the input box.

- 3617 5. Select the "Provisioning" Management Type to configure the certificate for automated  
3618 management.

3619 A form field for selecting a management type. It has a label "Management Type\*" with a help icon. The text "Provisioning" is selected in the dropdown menu.

- 3620 6. Enter the CN for the certificate.

3621 A form field for entering the common name. It has a label "Common Name" with a help icon. The text "hrhsm.int-nccoe.org" is entered in the input box.

- 3622 7. Enter the SANs for the certificate.

3623 A form field for entering subject alternative names (DNS). It has a label "Subject Alternative Names (DNS)". The text "hrhsm.int-nccoe.org" is entered in the input box, followed by a close icon.

3624 8. Configure the certificate for automatic renewal and installation when it is nearing expiration.

Automatic Renewal?\*

Yes ▼

3625  
3626 9. Add a new installation for the certificate and indicate that management is automated for that  
3627 installation.

**Track, validate, and automate installation of this certificate**

3628  
3629 10. Enter the address for the device where the certificate will be installed.

Device Address [Find Existing Device](#)

hrhsm.int-nccoe.org

3630  
3631 11. Select the folder where the device object should be created.

Choose Device Folder

Policy \ System Management \ S-Datacenter Secure ▼

3632  
3633 12. Indicate that the application type for the installation is “Windows CAPI & IIS.”

Installation Type

Windows CAPI & IIS ▼

3634  
3635 13. Select the credential to authenticate to the system for management operations.

Device Credential

Policy \ System Management \ A-Credentials \ HRhsm credential x ▼

3636  
3637 14. Enter a CAPI-friendly name for the certificate to be installed.

Friendly Name\*

HRhsm.int-nccoe.org

3638  
3639 15. Click **Renew Now** on the certificate to start generating a new key pair on the HSM and to start  
3640 getting a new corresponding certificate.

3641 **2.6.13.4 Apache – Agentless**

- 3642 1. Create a new certificate object in the Venafi TPP Aperture console. For instructions on creating a  
3643 new certificate, refer to “Creating a new certificate in Aperture” in *Venafi Trust Protection*  
3644 *Platform Working with Certificates*.
- 3645 2. Add an installation location for the certificate for the Apache where the certificate will be  
3646 installed. For instructions on adding an Apache installation in Aperture, refer to the section  
3647 titled “Creating an Apache application object” in the *Venafi Trust Protection Platform Certificate*  
3648 *Authority and Hosting Platform Configuration Guide*. Notable configuration information that we  
3649 used in our implementation, includes:  
3650 a. Set the private-key file location to correspond to the Virtual Host configuration on the  
3651 Apache server.

Private Key File*	<input type="text" value="/etc/pki/tls/private/private.key"/>
-------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------

- 3652 b. Set the certificate file location to correspond to the Virtual Host configuration on the  
3653 Apache server.

Certificate File*	<input type="text" value="/etc/pki/tls/certs/cert.crt"/>
-------------------	----------------------------------------------------------

- 3655 c. Set the CA certificate chain file location to correspond to the Virtual Host configuration  
3656 on the Apache server.

Certificate Chain File	<input type="text" value="/etc/pki/tls/certs/ca-chain.crt"/>
------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------

- 3658 d. Instruct Venafi TPP to update the CA chain.

Overwrite Existing Chain	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes	<input type="radio"/> No
--------------------------	--------------------------------------	--------------------------

- 3660 3. Click **Install** in the Actions menu to deploy the certificate to the Apache system.

3662 **2.6.13.5 Apache – ACME**

3663 Venafi TPP was configured as an ACME server in our implementation to support ACME-based requests  
3664 from internal systems. For instructions on using ACME with Venafi TPP, refer to the section titled “ACME  
3665 integration with Trust Protection Platform” in the *Venafi Trust Protection Platform Certificate*  
3666 *Management Guide*.

3667 **2.6.13.6 Configuring Venafi TPP for ACME**

3668 The following steps are needed for configuring Venafi TPP to request certificates using an ACME client.

- 3669 1. Configure Venafi TPP to enable the ACME server.
- 3670 a. The ACME server is not enabled by default in Venafi TPP.
- 3671 b. When ACME is enabled, select the folder where ACME-enrolled certificates are placed.
- 3672 c. Enter the address of the Venafi TPP server that will service ACME clients.

3673

- 3674 2. Assign an email address to the requesting account. The ACME protocol requires an email
- 3675 address be provided during the registration process. Venafi TPP must be able to find the entered
- 3676 email address in the local Venafi TPP identity directory or AD (depending on which directory is
- 3677 used).

3678 **2.6.13.7 Configuring Certbot for Apache**

3679 Certbot is the standard client use for ACME on many systems. Find instructions on installing certbot at

3680 the following address: <https://certbot.eff.org/>. We installed certbot on a Fedora Linux system to

3681 automate certificate requests and installation for Apache.

3682 We performed the following steps in our implementation.

- 3683 1. Ensure the virtual host is configured in Apache.
- 3684 2. Install certbot for Apache.

3685 `sudo dnf install certbot certbot-apache`

- 3686 3. The root certificate for the CA that issued the Venafi TPP server's certificate must be trusted on
- 3687 the system where certbot is run. This is done by adding it to one of the following files depending
- 3688 on the OS:

```
3689 /etc/ssl/certs/ca-certificates.crt", // Debian/Ubuntu/Gentoo etc.
3690 /etc/pki/tls/certs/ca-bundle.crt", // Fedora/RHEL 6
3691 /etc/ssl/ca-bundle.pem", // OpenSUSE
3692 /etc/pki/tls/cacert.pem", // OpenELEC
3693 /etc/pki/ca-trust/extracted/pem/tls-ca-bundle.pem", // CentOS/RHEL 7
```

3694 4. Run certbot to request a certificate. A certificate was installed on the Apache system.

```
3695 certbot certonly \
3696 --server "https://venafil.int-nccoe.org/vacme/v1/directory" \
3697 --cert-name apache1 --domains apache1.int-nccoe.org \
3698 --apache --email acmeuser@int-nccoe.org --no-eff-email
```

### 3699 2.6.13.8 Kubernetes

3700 Instructions for installing, configuring, and using Kubernetes are available on <https://kubernetes.io/>.

3701 We installed a three-node Kubernetes cluster on three CentOS Linux systems in the Datacenter network  
3702 zone in our implementation. We installed the following for the Kubernetes deployment:

- 3703     ▪ Docker version 18.09.3, build 774a1f4
- 3704     ▪ kubelet, kubeadm, and kubectl v1.13.4
- 3705     ▪ Weave (as our overlay network)

3706 Once these components were installed, we installed and configured cert-manager in Kubernetes to  
3707 automatically request certificates for ingresses in Kubernetes. We performed the following steps:

- 3708 1. Verified a user account with Venafi TPP WebSDK access and permissions to the folder(s) where  
3709 certificates are being requested from cert-manager (see the definition of the issuer below). We  
3710 created a user named “vapirequester” in AD for this purpose. The account was granted Create,  
3711 Write, Read, and View permissions to a folder named DevOps. We also granted that account  
3712 WebSDK access.

3713

Allow WebSDK Access: 

- 3714 2. Verified Jetstack Cert-Manager was installed with the necessary components to request  
 3715 certificates from Venafi TPP. This automatically creates a namespace named “cert-manager,”  
 3716 which we used for the rest of our configuration.

```
[ec2-user@kubemaster ~]$ kubectl describe deployment cert-manager -n cert-manager
Name: cert-manager
Namespace: cert-manager
CreationTimestamp: Wed, 06 Mar 2019 03:15:23 +0000
Labels: app=cert-manager
        chart=cert-manager-v0.6.0-venafi.0
        heritage=Tiller
        release=cert-manager
Annotations: deployment.kubernetes.io/revision: 2
             kubectl.kubernetes.io/last-applied-configuration:
             {"apiVersion":"apps/v1beta1","kind":"Deployment","metadata":
Selector: app=cert-manager,release=cert-manager
Replicas: 1 desired | 1 updated | 1 total | 1 available | 0 unavailable
StrategyType: RollingUpdate
MinReadySeconds: 0
RollingUpdateStrategy: 25% max unavailable, 25% max surge
Pod Template:
  Labels: app=cert-manager
         release=cert-manager
  Service Account: cert-manager
  Containers:
    cert-manager:
      Image: quay.io/jetstack/cert-manager-controller:venafi-0
      Port: <none>
      Host Port: <none>
      Args:
        --cluster-resource-namespace=$(POD_NAMESPACE)
        --leader-election-namespace=$(POD_NAMESPACE)
      Requests:
        cpu: 10m
        memory: 32Mi
      Environment:
        POD_NAMESPACE: (v1:metadata.namespace)
      Mounts: <none>
      Volumes: <none>
  Conditions:
    Type           Status  Reason
    ----           -
    Progressing    True    NewReplicaSetAvailable
    Available      True    MinimumReplicasAvailable
OldReplicaSets: <none>
NewReplicaSet: cert-manager-7d9f97d789 (1/1 replicas created)
Events: <none>
[ec2-user@kubemaster ~]$
```

- 3717
- 3718 kubectl apply -f https://raw.githubusercontent.com/jetstack \
- 3719 /cert-manager/venafi/contrib/manifests/cert-manager/with-rbac.yaml
- 3720 3. Created Kubernetes secret for authenticating to Venafi TPP.

```
3721 kubectl create secret generic tppsecret \
3722 --from-literal=username='vapirequester' \
3723 --from-literal=password='*****' \
3724 --namespace cert-manager
```

- 3725 4. Copied the Root CA certificate that the certificate on the Venafi TPP chains up to (this is used by  
 3726 cert-manager to validate the Venafi TPP certificate). This was copied to a file named *rootca.pem*.  
 3727 5. Generated a base64 representation of the Root CA certificate.

3728 `cat rootca.pem | base64 | tr -d '\n'`

- 3729 6. Created a yaml file (*tppvenafiissuer.yaml*) for the configuration for a cert-manager issuer that  
 3730 points to Venafi TPP. Note that the base64 representation of the Root CA certificate is placed  
 3731 after “caBundle:” with a single space separating (there is no carriage return). The “zone” sets  
 3732 the folder where the requested certificate will be placed.

```
3733 apiVersion: certmanager.k8s.io/v1alpha1
3734 kind: Issuer
3735 metadata:
3736   name: tppvenafiissuer
3737   namespace: cert-manager
3738 spec:
3739   venafi:
3740     zone: 'Certificate Management\C-Datacenter\DevOps'
3741     tpp:
3742       url: https://venafil.int-nccoe.org/vedsdk
3743       credentialsRef:
3744         name: tppsecret
3745       caBundle:
3746         LS0tLS1CRUdJTiBDRVJUSUZJQ0FURS0tLS0tCk1JSUMvVENDQWVXZ0F3SUJBZ0lRSnBydys5NUMyNnh
3747         Kd2FEeXFswUhXekFOQmdrcWhraUc5dzBCQVZrRkFEQVlKTVE4d0RRWURWUVFERXdaU1QwOVVRMEV3SG
3748         hjTk1UZ3dOeke1TWpNME1EUTVXaGNOTWpBd056QTVNak0xTURRNaPakFSTVE4d0RRWURWUVFERXdaU
3749         1QwOVVRMEV3Z2dFaU1BMEduDU3FHU01iM0RRRUJBUVVBQTRJQkR3QXdnZ0VLCkFvSUJBUURaaHxUXk3
3750         ckZrTnlWenZxSW5GeE4ydVBLTEJRdzl1Mk5kb1NmTXhMTVU5TlB4UUcwOVNyT1VlSSsKYmhkckJNeEt
3751         FbStzMm5PTUNTy3g2SDNldGp0UmtWU2pxQVZkYnQrVkn0TmtQWlZyTlRkaWlkOFV1TmRYy1dDMQpjmK
3752         M5RUVBNDVUOG94eG10TEkvd01ON2RaMHPwVldxSItvT1VLVGFIZWpRTFveUxYwKivU3AvZzFuUmFOM
3753         XhqCjFZV1lRQ2dCMWxVZ0lGQ3lXUzJJSmwvQXMrRjN6ckFOazg1K0krYlBCQ050ZUFYVTNkS0xTU0Nx
3754         WmxqdVZlYncKa2QwVzhzMDRPRmdCR2lCM2o2MXBydEZzc1N5WlZkYjNKVDRFRWnpTM1NBbXlHZlFteVF
3755         heEpJWC9RbmIzSGp5NwpHa0ViaVFqT1FLNE9mYlZiU2tKcTh5bHdmNkheQWdnNQkFBR2pVVEJQTUFzR0
3756         ExVWREd1FFQXdJQmhhQVBCZ05WckhSTUJBJjhFQlRBREFRSC9NQjBHQTfVZERNuVdCQlRZkzBtL3dwR
3757         EptaEdmUCTxbHJQcUI2M0t5akRBUUJna3IKQmdFRUFZSTNGUUVFQXdJQkFEQU5CZ2t2taGtpRz13MEJB
3758         UXNGQUFPQ0FRUFZk5EeWVlK1ZSSGhrUEX1Y1pGeQpmTlNEb0d0alZQckl5Q2J3aXMyQUFOL0xYV2J
3759         MVz1YUG1YOWVwSFJQO3Zla1Rfa0RQam1OVWxYF0cwTGUwbnByCmM3bTVrbDhJYTBNaHhkMUhURm1Xbm
3760         tydjdMry80dmt6eUhXR0FwekNTcFlyUEhsS01EaisxU1pmY1VrQ2lWWVQKb2RjL3V3K1A1RTNHa1NjZ
3761         HdaK0RoODRFVURhQ0JHc1I1MzZOMnlaMURjekRTUWg5SHBPATh6b3dYcnFWbzdKcApCYVpsUUNRUG1j
3762         N0hRaE0rS0VLMlVha1J4U1Z2ciszoEJRvysOS9zbUFET1QxN2o0MmxEcHFpdjRBTWd4cUxWCmDXMFR
3763         sc1pwK1FHRnU1TEXjSnVqS3l1T09nM2NYanI3S1lwU0FoOVpWNzFpcFRzL2Q4NzdidWdPYURkL2Yrdl
3764         kKSFE9PQotLS0tLUVORCBDRVJUSUZJQ0FURS0tLS0tCgo=
```

- 3765 7. Created the issuer in Kubernetes using the newly created file.

3766 `kubect1 apply -f tppvenafiissuer.yaml`

- 3767 8. Created a yaml file for the ingress to the nginx service. Note the annotation  
 3768 ‘certmanager.k8s.io/issuer: “tppvenafiissuer”’ in the yaml file. This tells Jetstack Cert-Manager  
 3769 that it should automatically request and install a certificate from this ingress using the issuer we

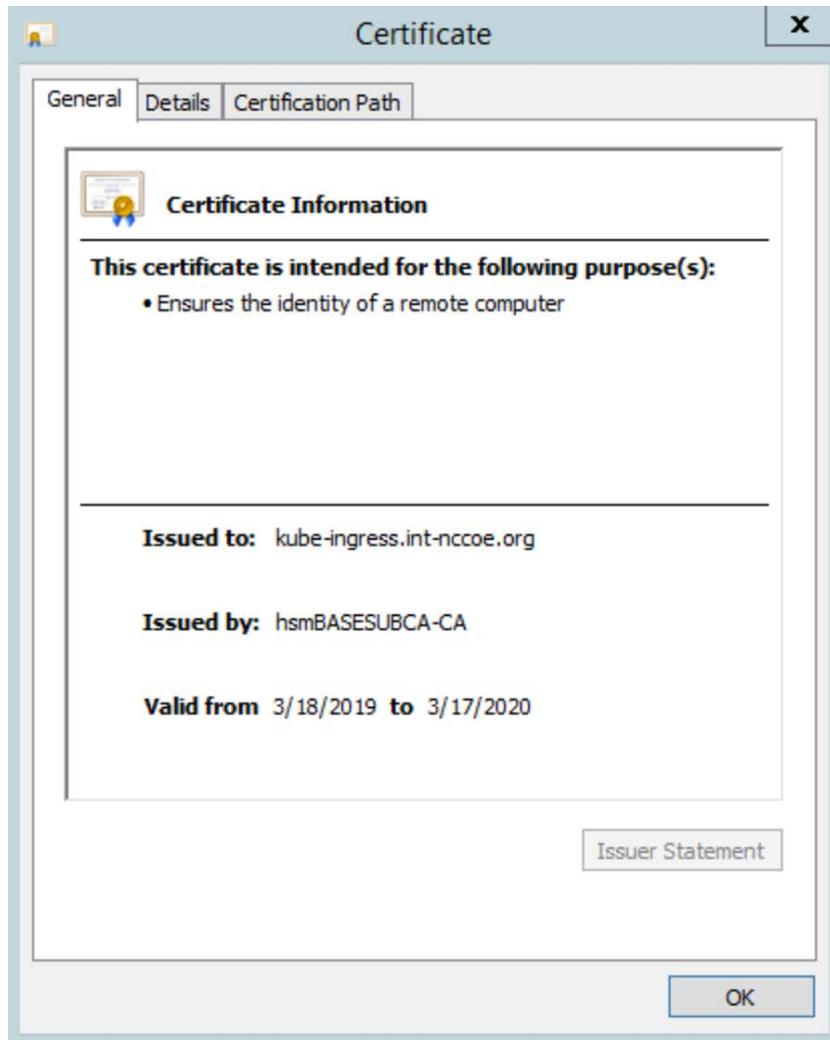
3770 defined earlier. Cert-manager uses the host name under **tls** and **hosts** (kube-ingress.int-  
3771 nccoe.org) for the CN and SAN it submits in the certificate request to Venafi TPP.

```
3772 apiVersion: extensions/v1beta1
3773 kind: Ingress
3774 metadata:
3775   name: nginx-ingress
3776   namespace: cert-manager
3777   annotations:
3778     kubernetes.io/ingress.class: "nginx"
3779     certmanager.k8s.io/issuer: "tppvenafiissuer"
3780
3781 spec:
3782   tls:
3783     - hosts:
3784       - kube-ingress.int-nccoe.org
3785       secretName: nginx-cert
3786   rules:
3787     - host: kube-ingress.int-nccoe.org
3788       http:
3789         paths:
3790           - path: /
3791             backend:
3792               serviceName: nginx
3793               servicePort: 80
```

3794 9. Created the ingress.

```
3795 kubectl create -f nginx-ingress.yaml
```

3796 10. Once the ingress was created, connected with a browser kube-ingress.int-nccoe.org to confirm  
3797 that a certificate was properly issued through Venafi TPP and installed for the ingress.



3798

### 3799 2.6.13.9 Symantec SSL Visibility

3800 In our implementation, we configured Venafi TPP to automatically install TLS certificates and private  
3801 keys used on several of the TLS servers—including IIS and Apache—onto the Symantec SSL Visibility to  
3802 inspect traffic going to those servers.

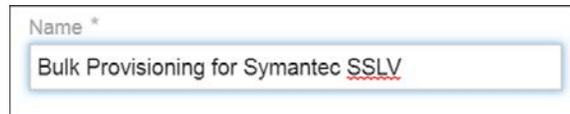
- 3803 1. Device object was created in Venafi TPP with the address and credentials for the Symantec SSL  
3804 Visibility. For instructions on adding a device object, refer to the section titled “Adding Objects”  
3805 in the *Venafi Trust Protection Platform Administration Guide*.

3806 2. To ensure all required certificates and private keys are copied to the TLS inspection device,  
3807 Venafi includes a feature called Bulk Provisioning. We created a bulk provisioning job.



3808

3809 3. We named the job to distinguish it from other bulk provisioning jobs.



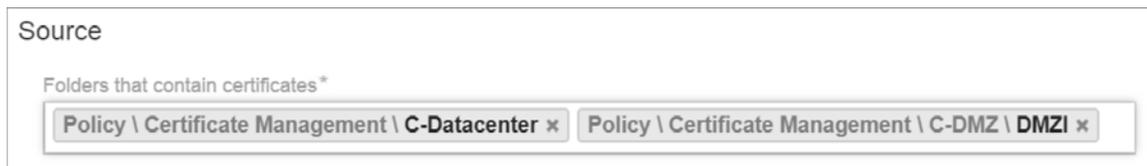
3810

3811 4. We selected the device object created above for the Symantec SSL Visibility Appliance as the  
3812 target to which private keys would be provisioned.



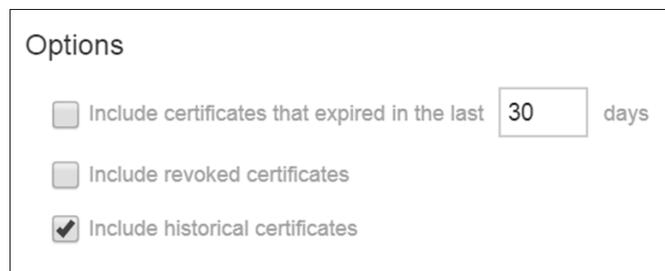
3813

3814 5. Venafi TPP was instructed to provision private keys associated with certificates in two folders:



3815

3816 6. The default options excluded expired and revoked certificates and included historical  
3817 certificates. Historical certificates are certificates that Venafi replaced by Venafi TPP. These  
3818 certificates are still valid (not expired) and active on certain systems, though a new certificate  
3819 was issued. Consequently, it is important to provision them to the TLS inspection appliance to  
3820 ensure all traffic can be decrypted.



3821

3822 7. The bulk provisioning job was configured to run every Sunday at midnight to ensure new  
3823 certificates and private keys are deployed to the TLS inspection device.

Run Time (All times are local)

Frequency \*

On Days \*

Start Time \*

3824

- 3825 8. Venafi TPP uses an adaptable framework for bulk provisioning, so these jobs can be customized  
 3826 based on the environment's requirements. To support bulk provisioning to the Symantec SSL  
 3827 Visibility, the bulk provisioning script has the Venafi TPP copied into the *C:\Program*  
 3828 *Files\Venafi\Scripts\AdaptableBulk* directory. The bulk provisioning job was configured to use  
 3829 this script.

Settings

PowerShell Script\*

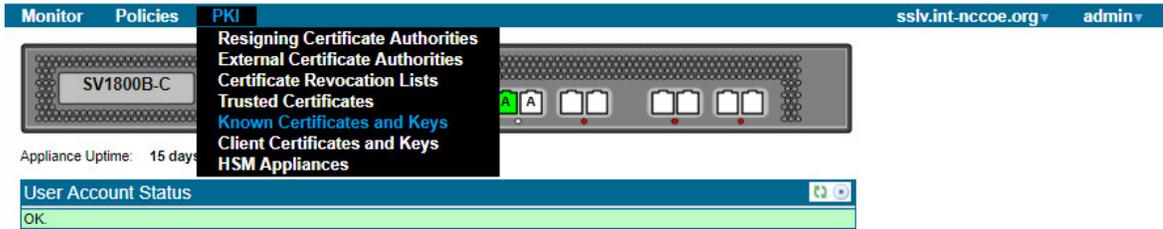
List Name

3830

- 3831 9. The bulk provisioning job will run once it is saved. The private keys were confirmed to be on the  
 3832 device.
- 3833 10. To check if keys are saved in the SSL VISIBILITY, login to the SSL VISIBILITY WebUI by going to  
 3834 *https://192.168.1.95*

3835

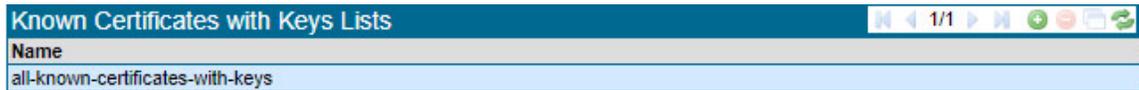
- 3836 11. Go to **PKI > Known Certificates and Keys**.



3837

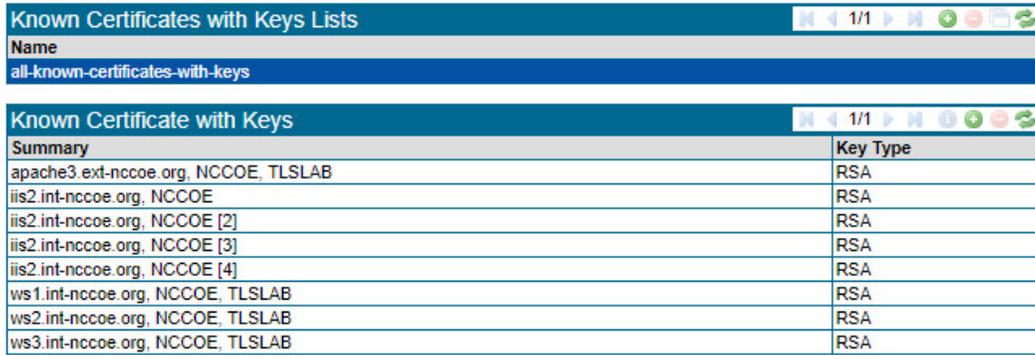
3838 12. In the **Known Certificates with Keys** Lists field, click on the **all-known-certificates-with-keys**

3839 field.



3840

3841 13. The imported certificates and keys are then shown under the Known Certificate with Keys field.



3842

3843 **2.6.14 Continuous Monitoring**

3844 Venafi TPP provides several tools that can continuously monitor TLS certificates within an enterprise,

3845 including scheduled network discovery scanning, monitoring certificates for expiration, and monitoring

3846 the operational status of known certificates.

3847 **2.6.14.1 Regular Network Scanning**

3848 In the lab, Venafi TPP was configured to perform weekly network discovery scans of the Datacenter and

3849 Datacenter Secure networks zones from the Venafi TPP server. The scans were scheduled to run at 2:00

3850 a.m. each Sunday. The lab network was small enough for network scans to complete within a few

3851 minutes. Nonetheless, blackout periods were configured from 6:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m. weekdays to

3852 ensure network scans were not performed during “normal business hours.”

3853 A notification rule was defined to send an alert to the certificate services team upon discovery of either

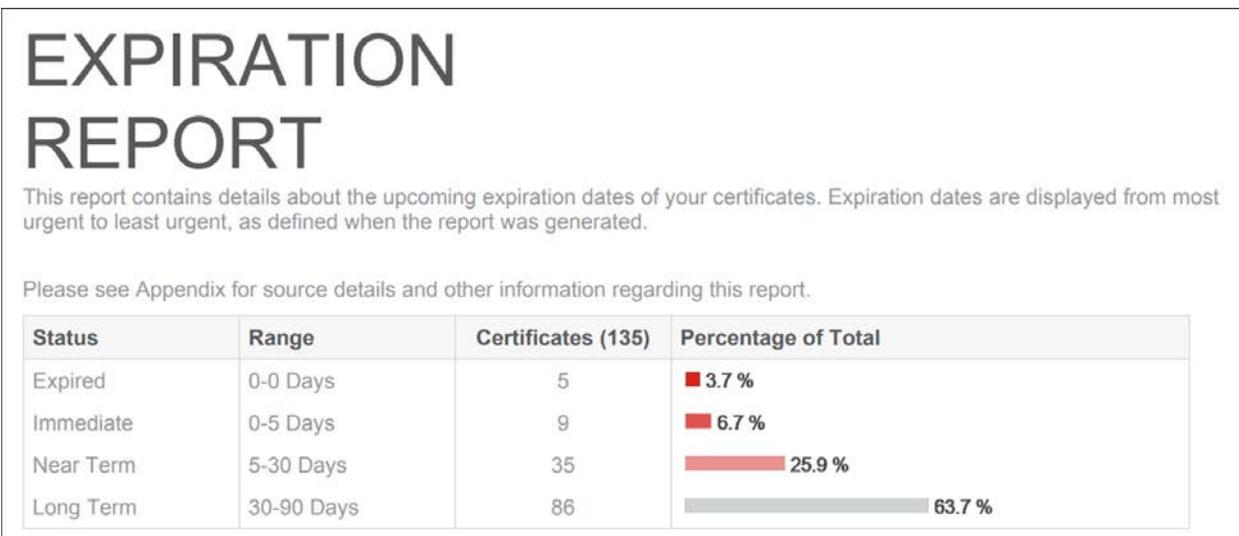
3854 new certificates or previously unknown certificates (indicating they may have been issued and installed

3855 outside of standard processes) installations.

3856 **2.6.14.2 Certificate Expiration Monitoring**

3857 Significant application outages can occur when a certificate expires while in use. Consequently, it is  
3858 critical that certificate owners track certificate expiration dates and replace them. The certificate  
3859 services team can help certificate owners by implementing automated processes that monitor  
3860 certificate expiration dates and notify the owners.

3861 We used Venafi TPP in the lab to monitor certificate expiration dates and notify certificate owners. The  
3862 methodology used in the lab followed the recommendations in *SP 1800-16 Volume B*. A weekly  
3863 expiration report was scheduled giving certificate owners a list of certificates set to expire within the  
3864 next 120 days. The following shows an example expiration report from the lab environment. The top of  
3865 the report summarizes the status of certificates associated with a particular certificate owner.



3866

3867 The expiration report lists all of the applicable certificates.

Common Name	Valid To	Contact	Issuer	Type	Days
<a href="#">9cka1wpk.tls.nccoe.org</a>	2/28/2019	Administrators	hsmBASESUBCA-CA	Prov	0
<a href="#">ck0jb30u.tls.nccoe.org</a>	2/28/2019	Administrators	hsmBASESUBCA-CA	Prov	0
<a href="#">nlc1wv8.tls.nccoe.org</a>	2/28/2019	Administrators	hsmBASESUBCA-CA	Prov	0
<a href="#">4tpbc539.int.nccoe.org</a>	3/1/2019	Administrators	hsmBASESUBCA-CA	Prov	0
<a href="#">-m7pgw09.int.nccoe.org</a>	3/1/2019	Administrators	hsmBASESUBCA-CA	Prov	0
<a href="#">i-8r4ol9.ext.nccoe.org</a>	3/2/2019	Administrators	hsmBASESUBCA-CA	Prov	1
<a href="#">wdw7yww7.ext.nccoe.org</a>	3/2/2019	Administrators	hsmBASESUBCA-CA	Prov	1
<a href="#">owg82h5z.tls.nccoe.org</a>	3/3/2019	Administrators	hsmBASESUBCA-CA	Prov	2
<a href="#">axz8jof2.int.nccoe.org</a>	3/4/2019	Administrators	hsmBASESUBCA-CA	Prov	3

3868

3869 In addition to the reports, notification rules were configured to send emails to the owners of certificates  
3870 expiring within 30 days. These notifications were configured to send daily, until the certificate was  
3871 replaced. For any certificate expiring in less than 20 days, a notification rule was configured to send an  
3872 additional email to escalation contacts, including the person identified as the Biz Owner and an incident  
3873 response team. The objective was to minimize the amount of email that certificate owners received if all  
3874 of their certificates were replaced in a timely fashion—ensuring sufficient alerts were sent for those  
3875 certificates that still needed replacement.

#### 3876 2.6.14.3 Certificate Operation Monitoring

3877 Network discovery scans provide insight into newly installed certificates, however, it's equally important  
3878 to monitor the operational state of known certificates. For example, a certificate owner may get a  
3879 replacement certificate for an installed certificate set to expire. If the certificate isn't installed prior to its  
3880 expiration date, an outage can result. They may install the new certificate on several but not all of the  
3881 systems where the existing certificate is installed, causing the systems that were not updated to fail  
3882 when the existing certificate expires. Finally, they may install the new certificate in all necessary  
3883 locations, but not reset the application so the new certificate is read and use by the application,  
3884 resulting in an outage, because the application is continuing to use the existing certificate that expires.

3885 Venafi TPP provides a service call network certificate validation that automatically checks deployed  
3886 certificates to ensure the correct certificate is installed and operational, thereby addressing the issues  
3887 described above. If a certificate issue is detected, the certificate owner is notified. Network certificate  
3888 validation was enabled on Venafi TPP in the lab.

#### 3889 2.6.14.4 Logging of Certificate-related Security Events

3890 Venafi TPP logs all management operations performed on certificates, including changes that  
3891 administrators make within the user interfaces, changes via API, and all automated operations that are  
3892 performed. Errors are also logged. All logged events are automatically stored in the Venafi TPP database.  
3893 These events can be reviewed in the Venafi TPP console. It also is possible to sort, filter, and export the  
3894 log events.

3895 The following provides an example of several administrative events logged in our implementation,  
3896 created by filtering on specific types of administrative events focused on configuration changes:

Client Time	Sev...	Event	Description
05/01/2019 01:46:42 pm	Info	Admin UI - Object Updated	X509 Server Certificate \VED\Policy\Certificate Management\C-DMZ\DMZE\app1.tls...
05/01/2019 01:46:42 pm	Info	Admin UI - Configuration Changed	User AD+adds1.pturner changed attribute X509 SubjectAltName DNS on object \...
05/01/2019 01:46:42 pm	Info	Admin UI - Renew Now	Certificate renewal for \VED\Policy\Certificate Management\C-DMZ\DMZE\app1.tls...
05/01/2019 01:46:42 pm	Info	Admin UI - Configuration Changed	User AD+adds1.pturner changed attribute {842c5c55-d408-4904-8c26-582bce12f...
05/01/2019 01:46:42 pm	Info	Admin UI - Configuration Changed	User AD+adds1.pturner changed attribute Certificate Authority on object \VED\Polic...
05/01/2019 01:46:42 pm	Info	Admin UI - Configuration Changed	User AD+adds1.pturner changed attribute Organizational Unit on object \VED\Polic...
05/01/2019 01:46:42 pm	Info	Admin UI - Configuration Changed	User AD+adds1.pturner changed attribute X509 Subject on object \VED\Policy\Cert...

3897 Page 1 of 47 Per Page: 25 Displaying 1 - 25 of 1164

3898 In addition to manually reviewing events within the console, it is possible to configure rules that will  
3899 automatically send events. These events can be sent via a variety of different channels, including via  
3900 email, to Splunk, to a syslog server, to an SNMP server, to a file, or to a database. Rules can be defined  
3901 to send events based on specific criteria. For example, it is possible to send alerts prior to certificate  
3902 expiration based on a configured set of days prior to expiration.

3903 In our implementation, we configured Venafi TPP to send all events to the syslog server described in  
3904 Section [1.5.5.6](#).

3905 A syslog channel was created that pointed to the syslog server.

\* Target Host: 192.168.1.12  
Facility: 16 : Local0

3906  
3907 A rule was created to send a range of events from a severity of emergency to debug to the syslog  
3908 channel.

Rules

IF Severity is between Emergency AND Debug

Target Channels

Target Channel: \\VED\Logging\Channels\TLS\_LAB\_SYSLOG\_SERVERS

3909

3910 This approach to sending certificate-related events to an external security information and event  
3911 management (SIEM) system enables all security-related events to be centralized and analyzed  
3912 cohesively.

## 3913 **Appendix A** **Passive Inspection**

3914 The example implementation demonstrates the ability to perform passive inspection of encrypted TLS  
3915 connections. The question of whether or not to perform such an inspection is complex. There are  
3916 important tradeoffs between traffic security and traffic visibility that each organization should consider.  
3917 Some organizations prefer to decrypt internal TLS traffic, so it can be inspected to detect attacks that  
3918 may be hiding within encrypted connections. Such inspection can detect intrusion, malware, and fraud,  
3919 and can conduct troubleshooting, forensics, and performance monitoring. For these organizations, TLS  
3920 inspection may serve as both a standard practice and a critical component of their threat detection and  
3921 service assurance strategies.

3922 The example implementation uses Symantec’s SSL Visibility to perform passive inspection and is one  
3923 example of how to accomplish passive inspection. The implementation demonstrates how to securely  
3924 copy private keys from several different TLS servers to the SSL Visibility Appliance. The SSL Visibility  
3925 Appliance can also securely replace expiring keys on servers—and immediately copy those keys to the  
3926 SSL Visibility Appliance before expiration—manually and via standardized automated certificate  
3927 installation.

3928 This appendix discusses how the SSL Visibility Appliance was configured to support passive inspection.  
3929 The goal was to demonstrate how to provision and revoke TLS certificates in an enterprise environment.  
3930 To verify this is being done, analysis of the traffic between the TLS clients and the TLS servers was  
3931 executed. The SSL Visibility Appliance can inspect traffic while located in line between the TLS clients  
3932 and TLS servers on the network, or it can perform passive observation of all the network traffic between  
3933 all the clients and servers mirrored to a port accessible to the server. The TLS lab configured its switching  
3934 fabric to support passive monitoring of traffic utilizing traffic mirroring.

3935 Mirroring the traffic from the virtual TLS lab environment to its physical appliances presented a few  
3936 challenges. The TLS lab environment is housed within a larger VMWare and physical networking  
3937 architecture. VMWare’s Virtual Distributed Switch Virtual Distributed Switch (VDS) provides a centralized  
3938 interface for the virtual machines’ access switching in the larger NCCoE environment where the TLS lab  
3939 lives as a resident. The TLS lab also has its own physical switching connections several routing hops away  
3940 from the NCCoE datacenter where VMWare resides. The VDS can route traffic internally between  
3941 multiple labs and virtual machines within each lab. However, VDS does not mirror VMWare’s local east-  
3942 west traffic between virtual machines to other physical systems outside of the VDS environment. This  
3943 design limits the traffic that can be mirrored from TLS’ virtual machines that live on VMWare to physical  
3944 switches in the TLS lab.

3945 To remediate this issue, the NCCoE IT team worked with VMWare senior engineers on a solution.  
3946 VMWare advised the NCCoE IT team to configure remote SPAN (RSPAN) on the VDS. The IT team  
3947 mapped the traffic to a RSPAN port that resided in a VLAN on an external switch. This external switch  
3948 connects all the VMWare TLS hosts to the physical TLS lab. An additional RSPAN instance was configured

3949 on the TLS lab external switch, which is a physical NCCoE-managed and controlled device connected to  
3950 all the TLS team-managed and controlled physical internal switches. The external switch was configured  
3951 to carry the RSPAN traffic to the internal physical access switch in the TLS lab. A SPAN was created on  
3952 the internal access switch in the TLS lab and configured as source from the RSPAN VLAN. The destination  
3953 was set to the physical interface connected to the SSL Visibility Appliance.

3954 Network packets captured from VMWare vSphere workloads must be forwarded to the physical remote  
3955 monitoring appliance; the packet must traverse the switch fabric between the VMWare ESXi cluster and  
3956 the physical remote monitoring appliance. Two factors must be considered from a solution feasibility  
3957 perspective:

3958       ▪ **Low end switches**—Have limitations on how many Remote SPAN sessions can be configured to  
3959 run concurrently. The switch fabric must establish a Remote SPAN Session between the  
3960 VMWare ESXi cluster and physical remote monitoring appliance. An alternative solution is to  
3961 deploy a robust network physical tap in lieu of leveraging the switch fabric between the  
3962 VMWare ESXi cluster and physical remote monitoring appliance.

3963       ▪ **VMWare vSphere workloads**—VMWare High Availability Features move from one ESXi host to  
3964 another, as computer resources are monitored and workloads are rescheduled. This requires  
3965 the ESXi cluster to automatically re-route the path that captured packets will take from a given  
3966 VM workload, as it moves from one ESXi host to another when migrated or when rescheduled  
3967 by Distributed Resource Scheduler to run on another host. The captured packets must egress  
3968 the ESXi cluster from the specific ESXi host on which the VM workload is running.

3969 Successful deployment of this use case requires selection of the appropriate VMWare vSphere 6.x Port  
3970 Mirroring configuration option. VMWare vSphere 6.x offers 5 options:

- 3971       ▪ Distributed Port Mirroring
- 3972       ▪ Remote Mirroring Source
- 3973       ▪ Remote Mirroring Destination
- 3974       ▪ Encapsulated Remote Mirroring (L3) Source
- 3975       ▪ Distributed Port Mirroring (Legacy)

3976 This use case that depends on the switch fabric having a Remote SPAN configured to pass traffic  
3977 between the VMWare ESXi cluster and the physical remote monitoring appliance, option 2, Remote  
3978 Mirroring Source, is the appropriate choice. When configured, this option will establish a Remote SPAN  
3979 VLAN that will span the VMWare distributed switch. It also utilizes the physical switch fabric and  
3980 leverages a distributed port group mapped to a pre-selected/pre-configured NIC on each ESXi host in the  
3981 ESXi cluster. Packets are automatically re-routed from captured VM workloads that are transient  
3982 between the ESXi hosts in a VMWare vSphere ESXi cluster. When a VM workload moves, vSphere will  
3983 note the change of the networking state of the VM and automatically re-establish an egress path for  
3984 captured packets on the NIC of the ESXi host on which the VM is running.

## 3985 **Appendix B Hardening Guidance**

3986 Hardening secures systems to reduce their vulnerabilities and minimizes the attack surface, which  
3987 improves security. To harden the systems, the TLS team implemented the Defense Information Agency's  
3988 Security Technical Implementation Guides (STIGs). STIGs are technical configurations applied to systems  
3989 to maintain their security posture. This hardening guidance provides the baseline standard for a variety  
3990 of Operating Systems—see the link below to download the STIG guidance:

3991 <https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/>

3992 NIST's Security Content Automation Protocol (SCAP) is used to generate compliance reports of the  
3993 security health of systems. To further strengthen security of systems, use SCAP in conjunction with  
3994 STIGs. Nessus is another option that can scan for vulnerabilities and misconfigurations.

3995 STIGs are implemented through GPOs that define policy settings for computer and user settings across  
3996 the network. Configure GPOs in AD to comply with STIGs. Refer to the link below to download the  
3997 current DISA STIG GPO Package and select those applicable to your environment.

3998 <https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/gpo/>

3999 Follow the steps below to implement STIGs using GPOs in AD:

4000 1. Open Group Policy Management Console (GPMC):

4001 • Go to **Start > Administrative Tools > Group Policy Management**.

4002 2. Create an OU in the domain:

4003 • Go to **GPMC > right-click on the <YOUR DOMAIN> > click New Organizational Unit**.

4004 • In the Name box on the New OU dialog box, type a descriptive name for the OU > click  
4005 **OK**.

4006 3. Create a GPO in the domain:

4007 • Go to **GPMC > <YOUR DOMAIN> > right-click Group Policy Objects > click New**.

4008 • In **New GPO** dialog box enter a descriptive name > click **OK**.

4009 4. Import DISA GPOs:

4010 • Go to **GPMC > <YOUR DOMAIN> > Group Policy Objects > right-click on the GPO to edit**  
4011 **> click Import Settings**.

4012 • The **Import Settings Wizard** appears > click **Next** > select the folder location of the DISA  
4013 GPO being used. The TLS lab used GPOs for MS Computer, MS User, DC Computer and  
4014 DC User.

4015 Note: To apply desired security configurations edit settings in the specific GPO.

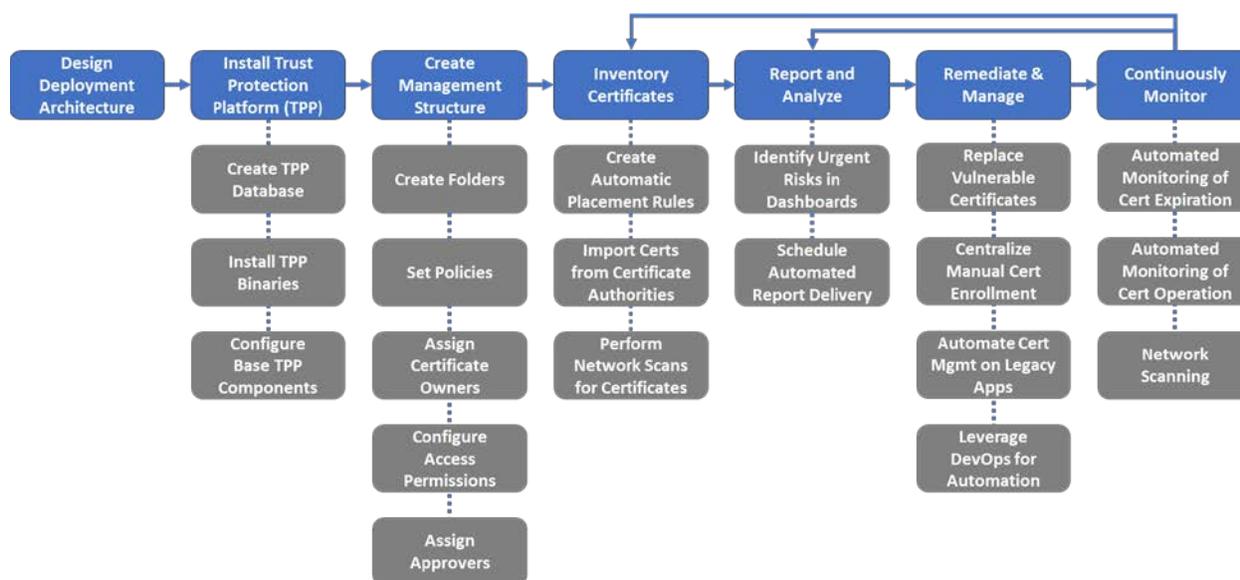
- 4016 5. Edit a GPO in the domain, an OU, or the Group Policy objects folder:
- 4017       • Go to **GPMC > <YOUR DOMAIN>** > select **Group Policy Objects** to display all GPOs in the
- 4018       domain.
- 4019       • Right-click the desired GPO > click **Edit** > the GPO will open in the Group Policy
- 4020       Management Editor (GPME).
- 4021       • In the GPME, edit the Group Policy settings as preferred.
- 4022 6. Link a GPO to a domain or OU:
- 4023       • Go to **GPMC>** right-click **<YOUR DOMAIN>** or OU to link to the GPO > click **Link an**
- 4024       **Existing GPO**.
- 4025       • The **Select GPO** dialog box appears - > select the GPO you want linked to the domain or
- 4026       OU > click **OK**.
- 4027       \*Shortcut: Drag the GPO from the Group Policy Objects folder and drop it onto the OU you
- 4028       want it linked to.
- 4029 7. Optional:
- 4030       • Unlink a GPO from a domain or OU:
- 4031           • Go to **GPMC >** click **<YOUR DOMAIN>** or OU containing the GPO you want to
- 4032           unlink.
- 4033           • Right-click the **GPO** > click **Delete**.
- 4034           • In the Group Policy Management dialog box, confirm deletion and click **OK**.
- 4035           Note: Unlink a GPO when it no longer applies. Unlinking a GPO from a domain or
- 4036           OU does not delete the GPO—it deletes the link. After unlinking the GPO, you
- 4037           can still find it in the Group Policy Objects folder.
- 4038       • Add computer to OU:
- 4039           • Go to **Start > Administrative Tools > Active Directory Users and Computers**.
- 4040           • Click on **<YOUR DOMAIN>** > refresh. The newly added OU will appear.
- 4041           • Go to **Computers** > right-click the desired computer > click **Move**.
- 4042           • Select the desired OU to move the computer to > **click OK**.
- 4043           • To apply new settings > log out and log back in.
- 4044

## 4045 Appendix C Venafi Underlying Concepts

4046 The following background information may help users better understand some of the configurations we  
4047 made in the configuration management databases (CMDBs) implementation of Venafi TPP.

4048 Venafi TPP is one machine identity protection platform that enables enterprises to address TLS server  
4049 certificate security and operational risks. Venafi TPP served as the certificate management platform for  
4050 the TLS lab.

4051 The following diagram illustrates the process of architecting, deploying, configuring, and using Venafi  
4052 TPP to manage certificates and keys in enterprises.



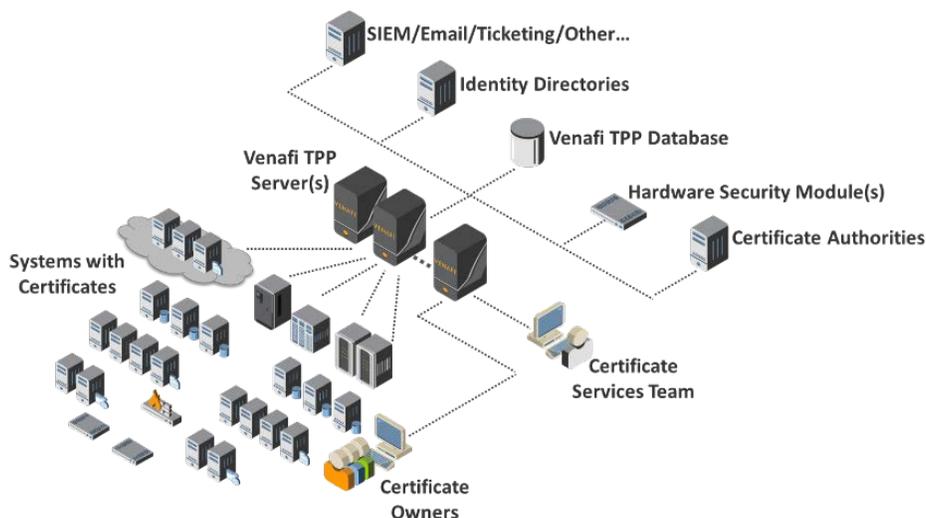
4053

4054 Venafi TPP interfaces with a variety of different types of systems and people/groups, including:

- 4055 1. **Venafi TPP Database:** Venafi TPP requires a database to store certificates, private keys, and  
4056 configuration information (all private keys and credentials are encrypted prior to storage in the  
4057 database). Venafi TPP supports the use of Microsoft SQL Server to host its database.
- 4058 2. **HSM:** Stores and protects the symmetric key used to encrypt private keys and credentials in the  
4059 Venafi TPP database.
- 4060 3. **Identity Directory:** Venafi TPP integrates with identify management systems such as AD, LDAP  
4061 directories, or proprietary directories, and enables the use of existing user accounts and groups.
- 4062 4. **CAs:** Venafi TPP integrates supports direct integration with over two dozen public and private  
4063 CAs for the automated enrollment, renewal, and revocation of certificates.
- 4064 5. **SIEM/Email/Ticketing:** Venafi TPP integrates with SIEM systems to pass certificate and  
4065 cryptographic key event information. It integrates with ticketing systems for the automated

- 4066 creation of change tickets and approvals and with email systems for the notifications to  
 4067 certificate owners for impending expirations or errors.
- 4068 6. **Other Enterprise Systems:** Venafi TPP can be integrated with a variety of other enterprise  
 4069 systems, such as CMDBs, enterprise dashboards, and custom applications.
  - 4070 7. **Systems with Certificates:** Venafi TPP communicates directly with systems with certificates to  
 4071 automatically discover and manage those certificates.
  - 4072 8. **Certificate Services Team:** This team manages the Venafi TPP servers and supports Certificate  
 4073 Owners.
  - 4074 9. **Certificate Owners:** These are groups and individuals responsible for systems where certificates  
 4075 are deployed using Venafi TPP for automating a variety of functions, including scanning,  
 4076 inventory, enrollments, and installation of certificates.

4077 The following diagram is a high-level view of these components.



4078

4079 Depending on an organization’s needs, it’s possible to deploy one or more Venafi TPP servers centrally  
 4080 or distributed in different network zones as well as different geographies. The number and placement of  
 4081 Venafi TPP servers is an important step to create an effective certificate management solution that  
 4082 supports the environmental and operational needs of an enterprise. The criteria driving the number and  
 4083 placement of Venafi TPP servers includes:

- 4084 1. **Venafi TPP Services:** Each Venafi TPP can host one or more services, including network  
 4085 discovery scanning, certificate enrollment, certificate installation, administrative UI, etc.  
 4086 Depending on the size and structure of an organization, these services can be deployed on a  
 4087 single Venafi TPP server or, more likely, across multiple servers. The services that a Venafi TPP  
 4088 server can be configured to perform include:
  - 4089 a. Hosting administrative and user interfaces

- 4090 b. Network discovery scanning
  - 4091 c. Onboard discovery
  - 4092 d. CA import
  - 4093 e. Certificate expiration monitoring
  - 4094 f. Certificate operation monitoring (validation)
  - 4095 g. Automated certificate enrollment
  - 4096 h. Agentless certificate installation
  - 4097 i. Agent management
  - 4098 j. CRL expiration monitoring
  - 4099 k. Revocation status monitoring
  - 4100 l. Report generation
  - 4101 m. Venafi TPP REST API access
  - 4102 n. Log event management and notifications
  - 4103 o. Trust store management
- 4104 2. **Load and Performance Requirements:** The number of certificates and systems that must be  
4105 managed by Venafi TPP plays an important part in the choice of how many Venafi TPP servers to  
4106 deploy. Venafi TPP is based on a load-balanced architecture that enables multiple servers to  
4107 share in the processing of work.
  - 4108 3. **Fault Tolerance:** Due to the critical role of certificate management, deployment architectures  
4109 may include multiple Venafi TPP servers deployed across primary and disaster recovery sites to  
4110 ensure continuous availability of certificate management services.
  - 4111 4. **Network Zones and Boundaries:** Network architectures often place limits on the type of traffic  
4112 that can traverse between network zones (across firewalls). For example, a firewall may limit the  
4113 allowed ports between two network zones, necessitating the placement of a Venafi TPP server  
4114 directly inside a network zone to enable network discovery scans to run.
  - 4115 5. **Geographic Distribution:** Organizations are often distributed across multiple cities, states,  
4116 countries, and continents. Ensuring that network latencies do not negatively impact the  
4117 performance of certificate management services at each geographic location often involves  
4118 distributing Venafi TPP servers near the systems and certificates being managed.

## 4119 C.1 Venafi TPP Object Model

4120 To understand how Venafi TPP maintains inventory information, first review the Venafi TPP data model.  
4121 Venafi TPP uses an object-based storage model where configuration information for certificates,  
4122 associated devices, and applications are stored as objects and attributes in the Venafi TPP database.  
4123 Several different object types exist in Venafi TPP—each of which includes associated attributes that  
4124 store data relevant to the object. For example, a certificate object includes attributes for issuer, key  
4125 length, common name, organization, etc.

4126 The object types in Venafi TPP include:

- 4127  
4128  
4129  
4130  
4131  
4132  
4133  
4134  
4135  
4136  
4137  
4138  
4139  
4140  
4141  
4142  
4143  
4144  
4145  
4146  
4147  
4148  
4149  
4150
1. **Folder:** Folders are containers that facilitate the hierarchical organization certificates, devices, applications, and other objects within Venafi TPP.
  2. **Certificate:** These objects hold configuration data for certificates managed by Venafi TPP, including certificate authority (CA), key length, certificate owner, approver, and other information. A certificate object can have one or more applications objects—each indicating a location where the certificate is installed.
  3. **Device:** These objects hold configuration information about the systems where certificates are deployed, including the network address and port, authentication credentials, and other information for the system.
  4. **Application:** These objects hold information about the specific application (e.g., Apache, F5, Java, etc.) that uses a certificate on a device. Each device may have one or more applications that use certificates. The attributes and information stored in an application object depends on the type of application. For example, an F5 application object stores information such as the SSL profile, virtual server, and partition for the associated certificate on the F5 device.
  5. **Workflow:** Workflow objects store the rules that are enforced for workflow gates within Venafi TPP. They include the stage of the certificate lifecycle where approval is needed, the required approvers, and even actions that may be automatically perform when the workflow gate is triggered.
  6. **CA Template:** These objects store information about CAs from which Venafi TPP requests certificates and the specific certificate templates that the CAs will use.
  7. **Credential:** These objects hold credential information that Venafi TPP uses to authenticate to other systems, including CAs, systems where certificates are managed via agentless management, etc. Passwords and private keys used in credentials are stored in encrypted form in the Venafi TPP database.

## 4151 C.2 Certificate Metadata in Venafi TPP

4152 Certificates are stored in Venafi TPP in binary form (i.e., the DER encoded version of the certificate). In  
4153 addition, the individual X.509 fields and extensions of each certificate are parsed and stored in unique  
4154 database fields, to enable rapid searching and filtering. The certificate fields parsed and stored for rapid  
4155 searching in Venafi TPP include:

- 4156
- **X.509 Version:** V1, V2, or V3
  - **Serial Number:** A unique identifier assigned by the issuing certificate authority
  - **Issuer Distinguished Name:** The full X.500 distinguished name of the issuing-CA.
  - **Valid From:** The date and time from which the certificate was issued. This is commonly referred to as an issue date.
  - **Valid To:** The date and time after which the certificate should no longer be considered valid. This is commonly referred to as the expiration date.
- 4157  
4158  
4159  
4160  
4161  
4162

- 4163      ▪   **Subject Distinguished Name (SAN):** The full X.500 distinguished name for the subject of the  
4164      certificate (the entity to which the certificate was issued)—for example: “CN = iis2.int-nccoe.org,  
4165      O = NCCOE, L = Gaithersburg, S = Maryland, C = US”.
- 4166      ▪   **Subject Alternative Names:** One or more identifiers for the subject of the certificate (the entity  
4167      to which the certificate was issued). There could be additional DNS host names (e.g., server1.int-  
4168      nccoe.org), IP address, or other types of identifiers.
- 4169      ▪   **Signature Algorithm:** The asymmetric and hashing algorithms that sign the certificate (e.g.,  
4170      sha256RSA).
- 4171      ▪   **Subject Key Identifier:** A unique identifier for the public key within the certificate. Because the  
4172      public and private key are inextricably associated, this identifier applies to both of them.
- 4173      ▪   **Authority Key Identifier:** A unique identifier for the public/private key that the certificate  
4174      authority uses to sign the certificate.
- 4175      ▪   **CRL Distribution Points:** One or more addresses where the CRL for the CA that issued the  
4176      certificate can be retrieved.
- 4177      ▪   **AIA:** The location(s) where information and services, such as where to retrieve the CA certificate  
4178      chain or access online certificate status protocol for the CA that issued the certificate.
- 4179      ▪   **Key Usage:** Defines the purposes for which the key within the certificate can be used, including  
4180      digital signature, key encipherment, and key agreement.
- 4181      ▪   **Enhanced Key Usage:** Defines the purposes for which the certified public key within the  
4182      certificate may be used, including server authentication, client authentication, and code signing.
- 4183      ▪   **Basic Constraints:** Defines whether the subject of the certificate is a CA and the maximum depth  
4184      of certification path (number of CAs below this CA allowed).
- 4185      ▪   **Policy:** Policies defined within the certificate.
- 4186      ▪   **Key Size:** The length of the public key in the certificate.

4187   In addition to certificate field and extension information, Venafi TPP stores other metadata relevant to  
4188   each certificate, including:

- 4189      ▪   **Certificate Owner(s):** Groups and/or individual assigned to manage and receive notifications  
4190      (e.g., expiration notices, processing errors, etc.) for the certificate
- 4191      ▪   **Approver(s):** Groups and/or individuals assigned to approve operations for the certificate
- 4192      ▪   **Processing Status:** Indicates whether the certificate processing is proceeding normally, is in  
4193      error, or has completed
- 4194      ▪   **Processing Stage:** The current stage of processing (e.g., creating CSR, retrieving certificate from  
4195      CA, installing certificate) for the certificate

- 4196       ▪ **Last Network Validation Time & Date:** The last date and time a network validation was  
4197           performed to determine the operational status of the certificate
- 4198       ▪ **Network Validation Status:** The result of last network validation
- 4199       ▪ **Installation Location(s):** The devices and applications where the certificate is installed
- 4200       ▪ **CA Chain:** The chain of CA certificates from the root to the TLS server certificate
- 4201       ▪ **Management Method:** Determines if the certificate should be automatically enrolled and  
4202           installed, or manually enrolled and installed
- 4203       ▪ **Log Information:** Logs of all administrative changes and automated operations performed on  
4204           the certificate via Venafi TPP

## 4205    C.3 Custom Fields

4206    With thousands of certificates, it is critical that organizationally-relevant information—such as cost  
4207    center, application identifiers, business unit, and applicable regulations—can be associated with  
4208    certificates. As a result, searches and reporting can return the certificates most relevant to a particular  
4209    group or business function. Venafi TPP supports the definition of “custom fields” that can be assigned to  
4210    certificates. The value of the custom fields (e.g., Cost Center = “B123”) can be assigned to individual  
4211    certificates or folders, thereby flowing down and applying to all subordinate certificates. It should be  
4212    noted that custom fields can be assigned to other assets such as devices associated with certificates.

### 4213    C.3.1 Organizing Certificate Inventory

4214    Many large enterprises have thousands or tens of thousands of certificates, often with hundreds of  
4215    certificate owners across many different groups. To help effectively manage certificates across these  
4216    broad environments, Venafi TPP enables the creation of a hierarchical folder structure where certificates  
4217    and associated system configuration information can be placed.

4218    The design of a Venafi TPP folder hierarchy for the organization of certificates is dependent on the  
4219    needs and requirements of an enterprise—similar to having multiple approaches to create folder  
4220    hierarchies when organizing files. However, through experience in working with many large enterprises,  
4221    Venafi professional services has developed a set of guidelines, including:

- 4222       ▪ **Certificate Ownership:** The primary factor for designing a Venafi TPP hierarchy is based on the  
4223           organization of certificate owners. Once a folder is assigned to a certificate owner, certificates  
4224           and other assets placed within the folder automatically inherit the permissions, contacts, and  
4225           approvers, so that ownership does not need to be managed on individual certificates (though  
4226           ownership information can be managed on individual certificates in Venafi TPP, if necessary).
- 4227       ▪ **Policies:** Policies such as allowed key lengths, signing algorithms, and CAs are an important  
4228           consideration in the organization of Venafi TPP folders.

- 4229       ▪ **Workflow and Approvals:** Workflow rules are assigned at the folder level in Venafi TPP. If an  
4230       enterprise applies different workflow rules across their organizational groups, the design of the  
4231       folder hierarchy may be adjusted to easily assign those rules as needed.

### 4232   C.3.2 Policy Enforcement

4233   Venafi TPP supports the enforcement of written policies through the assignment of policies to any folder  
4234   within the hierarchy. It is possible to define Venafi TPP policies for a broad set of areas, including  
4235   allowed CAs, allowable domains, certificate contents (e.g., key length), approvers, and application  
4236   configurations.

4237   Policies set on a folder flow down to subordinate folders and objects within the folders. This makes it  
4238   possible to configure group-specific policies on folders assigned to those groups and policies with  
4239   broader applicability to higher level folders, so that they apply to all certificates, devices, applications  
4240   across subordinate folders. Policies can be set as suggested, to provide a default value that users are  
4241   able to change if desired, or enforced, where users are required to use the set value.

## 4242   C.4 Domain Whitelisting

4243   Because certificates serve as trusted credentials, they should only be issued for authorized domains. To  
4244   aid in this, Venafi TPP supports the whitelisting of domains that can be used in certificates. For example,  
4245   it is possible to only allow common names (CNs) and subject alternative names (SANs) that have the  
4246   suffix “.int-nccoe.org”, which only allow CNs and SANs such as server1.int-nccoe.org and server2.ops.int-  
4247   nccoe.org.

### 4248   C.4.1 Certificate Owner Assignment

4249   The assignment and maintenance of certificate ownership is critical to prevent outages and respond to  
4250   security incidents. Depending on the size of groups and the number certificates they manage, certificate  
4251   management responsibilities may be assigned to one person or distributed among several different  
4252   individuals. For larger groups managing greater numbers of certificates across a broad set of systems,  
4253   the roles may vary for each team member. For example, a core group of technical people may be  
4254   responsible for managing the configuration of certificates. That same group plus a manager may need to  
4255   receive alerts and reports. To accommodate these differences in roles, Venafi TPP enables the  
4256   assignment of permissions and contact information (for sending alerts) at the certificate or folder level.

### 4257   C.4.2 Permissions

4258   In Venafi TPP, groups and individual users can be granted permissions to folders and individual objects  
4259   (e.g., certificates). Venafi TPP can assign the following permissions:

- 4260     ▪ **View:** See an object in a folder and select it (but not see its configuration parameters). For  
4261     example, an administrator with view rights to an application can associate that application to a  
4262     certificate for which they are responsible.
- 4263     ▪ **Read:** Read an object’s configuration parameters and status.
- 4264     ▪ **Write:** Edit an object’s configuration parameters.
- 4265     ▪ **Create:** Create new objects under the object to which the Create permission is assigned. Applies  
4266     only to objects that contain other objects.
- 4267     ▪ **Delete:** Delete the specified object or objects contained within it (unless blocked below).
- 4268     ▪ **Rename:** Rename the object.
- 4269     ▪ **Revoke:** Revoke a certificate. This only applies to certificates only but can be set on policies,  
4270     devices, or applications for any certificates contained under them.
- 4271     ▪ **Associate:** Associate a certificate to one or more applications from within that certificate object.
- 4272     ▪ **Admin:** Grant users or groups permissions to the object.
- 4273     ▪ **Private-Key Read:** Retrieve the private-key for a certificate only applies to certificates but can be  
4274     set on policies, devices, or applications for any certificates contained under them.
- 4275     ▪ **Private-Key Write:** Upload or overwrite the private-key for a certificate. This only applies to  
4276     certificates but can be set on policies, devices, or applications for any certificates contained  
4277     within them. The private-key write privilege is required for an administrator to extract a private-  
4278     key and certificate from an application to be stored in the Venafi TPP database.
- 4279     ▪ **Permissions:** Permissions assigned to a folder are inherited subordinate objects and folders.  
4280     Wherever possible, it’s a best practice to assign permissions to groups to quickly grant a new  
4281     team member the needed permissions simply by being added to the group. It is also best to  
4282     assign permissions at the folder level, applying to all subordinate certificates. When a new  
4283     system and certificate are needed, they can be added within the folder and the permissions  
4284     automatically apply.

### 4285    C.4.3   Contacts

4286    Effectively managing certificates in an enterprise requires the ability to automatically notify the  
4287    certificate owners of impending expirations, errors, or other events that affect their certificates. It’s  
4288    possible to assign one or more groups or individuals as “contacts” to folders or individual objects in  
4289    Venafi TPP. Contact assignment to folders are inherited by the objects below them.

## Appendix D List of Acronyms

<b>ACME</b>	Automated Certificate Management Environment
<b>AD</b>	Active Directory
<b>ADCS</b>	Active Directory Certificate Services
<b>ADS</b>	Active Directory Services
<b>AIA</b>	Authority Information Access
<b>API</b>	Application Programming Interface
<b>CA</b>	Certificate Authority
<b>CAPI</b>	Cryptographic Application Programming Interface (also known variously as CryptoAPI, Microsoft Cryptography API, MS-CAPI or simply CAPI)
<b>CDP</b>	CRL Distribution Point
<b>CEP</b>	Certificate Enrollment Policy
<b>CES</b>	Certificate Enrollment Service
<b>CMDB</b>	Configuration Management Database
<b>CN</b>	Common Name
<b>CNG</b>	Cryptography API: Next Generation
<b>CPU</b>	Central Processing Units
<b>CRL</b>	Certificate Revocation List
<b>CSR</b>	Certificate Signing Request
<b>DB</b>	Database
<b>DC</b>	Domain Controller
<b>DevOps</b>	Development Operations
<b>DMZ</b>	Demilitarized Zone
<b>DNS</b>	Domain Name System
<b>EULA</b>	End User License Agreement

<b>EV</b>	Extended Validation
<b>FIPS</b>	Federal Information Processing Standards
<b>FQDN</b>	Fully Qualified Domain Name
<b>GPMC</b>	Group Policy Management Console
<b>GPO</b>	Group Policies Objects
<b>HSM</b>	Hardware Security Module
<b>HTML</b>	Hypertext Markup Language
<b>http</b>	Hypertext Transfer Protocol
<b>https</b>	Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure
<b>IdP</b>	Identity Provider
<b>IETF</b>	Internet Engineering Task Force
<b>IIS</b>	Internet Information Server (Microsoft Windows)
<b>IMAP</b>	Internet Message Access Protocol
<b>IP</b>	Internet Protocol
<b>IT</b>	Information Technology
<b>ITL</b>	Information Technology Laboratory
<b>KSP</b>	Key Storage Provider
<b>LDAP</b>	Lightweight Directory Access Protocol
<b>LTM</b>	Local Traffic Manager (F5)
<b>MSQL</b>	Microsoft SQL
<b>MTA</b>	Mail Transfer Agent
<b>MUA</b>	Mail User Agent
<b>NAT</b>	Network Address Translation
<b>NCCoE</b>	National Cybersecurity Center of Excellence
<b>NIST</b>	National Institute of Standards and Technology

<b>NTL</b>	Network Trust Link
<b>NTLS</b>	Network Trust Link Service
<b>OS</b>	Operating System
<b>OVA</b>	Open Virtualization Appliance
<b>OVF</b>	Open Virtualization Format
<b>PCI-DSS</b>	Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard
<b>PED</b>	PIN Entry Device
<b>PIN</b>	Personal Identification Number
<b>PKI</b>	Public Key Infrastructure
<b>PSCP</b>	PuTTY Secure Copy Protocol
<b>RA</b>	Registration Authority
<b>RAM</b>	Random Access Memory
<b>REST</b>	Representational State Transfer (API)
<b>RHEL</b>	Red Hat Enterprise Linux
<b>RMF</b>	Risk Management Framework
<b>RSA</b>	Rivest, Shamir, & Adleman (public key encryption algorithm)
<b>RSPAN</b>	Remote Switched Port Analyzer
<b>SafeNet AT</b>	SafeNet Assured Technologies
<b>SAN</b>	Subject Alternative Name
<b>SCAP</b>	Security Content Automation Protocol
<b>SCEP</b>	Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol
<b>SCP</b>	Secure Copy Protocol
<b>SIEM</b>	Security Information and Event Management
<b>SMTP</b>	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol
<b>SOAP</b>	Simple Object Access Protocol

<b>SP</b>	Special Publication
<b>SPAN</b>	Switched Port Analyzer
<b>SQL</b>	Structured Query Language
<b>SSL</b>	Secure Socket Layer (protocol)
<b>SSL VISIBILITY</b>	SSL Visibility (Symantec Appliance)
<b>STIGs</b>	Security Technical Implementation Guides
<b>TCP</b>	Transmission Control Protocol
<b>TLS</b>	Transport Layer Security (protocol)
<b>TMSH</b>	Traffic Management Shell
<b>TPP</b>	Trust Protection Platform (Venafi)
<b>UCS</b>	User Configuration Set
<b>UDP</b>	User Datagram Protocol
<b>UPN</b>	User Principal Name
<b>URL</b>	Uniform Resource Locator
<b>VDS</b>	Virtual Distributed Switch
<b>VE</b>	Virtual Edition
<b>VLAN</b>	Virtual Local Area Network
<b>WinRM</b>	Windows Remote Management

4291

## Appendix E Glossary

<b>Active Directory</b>	A Microsoft directory service for the management of identities in Windows domain networks.
<b>Application</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. The system, functional area, or problem to which information technology (IT) is applied. The application includes related manual procedures as well as automated procedures. Payroll, accounting, and management information systems are examples of applications. (<a href="#">NIST SP 800-16</a>)</li><li>2. A software program hosted by an information system. (<a href="#">NIST SP 800-137</a>)</li></ol>
<b>Authentication</b>	Verifying the identity of a user, process, or device, often as a prerequisite to allowing access to a system's resources. ( <a href="#">NIST SP 800-63-3</a> )
<b>Automated Certificate Management Environment</b>	A protocol defined in IETF RFC 8555 that provides for the automated enrollment of certificates.
<b>Certificate</b>	A set of data that uniquely identifies an entity, contains the entity's public key and possibly other information, and is digitally signed by a trusted party, thereby binding the public key to the entity. Additional information in the certificate could specify how the key is used and its validity period. ( <a href="#">NIST SP 800-57 Part 1 Rev. 4</a> under Public-key certificate) (Certificates in this practice guide are based on <a href="#">IETF RFC 5280</a> .)
<b>Certificate Authority</b>	A trusted entity that issues and revokes public key certificates. ( <a href="#">NISTIR 8149</a> )
<b>Certificate Chain</b>	An ordered list of certificates that starts with an end-entity certificate, includes one or more certificate authority (CA) certificates, and ends with the end-entity certificate's Root CA certificate, where each certificate in the chain is the certificate of the CA that issued the previous certificate. By checking to see if each certificate in the chain was issued by a trusted CA, the receiver of an end-user certificate can determine whether it should trust the end-entity certificate by verifying the signatures in the chain of certificates.

<b>Certificate Management</b>	Process whereby certificates (as defined above) are generated, stored, protected, transferred, loaded, used, and destroyed. ( <a href="#">CNSSI 4009-2015</a> ) (In the context of this practice guide, it also includes inventory, monitoring, enrolling, installing, and revoking.)
<b>Certificate Revocation List</b>	A list of digital certificates that have been revoked by an issuing CA before their scheduled expiration date and should no longer be trusted.
<b>Certificate Signing Request</b>	A request sent from a certificate requester to a CA to apply for a digital identity certificate. The certificate signing request contains the public key as well as other information to be included in the certificate and is signed by the private key corresponding to the public key.
<b>Client</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. A machine or software application that accesses a cloud over a network connection, perhaps on behalf of a consumer. (<a href="#">NIST SP 800-146</a>)</li> <li>2. A function that uses the PKI to obtain certificates and validate certificates and signatures. Client functions are present in CAs and end entities. Client functions may also be present in entities that are not certificate holders. That is, a system or user that verifies signatures and validation paths is a client, even if it does not hold a certificate itself. (<a href="#">NIST SP 800-15</a>)</li> </ol>
<b>Cloud Computing</b>	A model for enabling ubiquitous, convenient, on-demand network access to a shared pool of configurable computing resources (e.g., networks, servers, storage, applications, and services) that can be rapidly provisioned and released with minimal management effort or service provider interaction. ( <a href="#">NIST SP 800-145</a> )
<b>Common Name</b>	An attribute type commonly found within a Subject Distinguished Name in an X.500 directory information tree. When identifying machines, it is composed of a fully qualified domain name or IP address.
<b>Configuration Management</b>	A collection of activities focused on establishing and maintaining the integrity of IT products and information systems, through control of processes for initializing, changing, and monitoring the configurations of those products and systems throughout the system development life cycle. ( <a href="#">NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4</a> )

<b>Container</b>	A method for packaging and securely running an application within an application virtualization environment. Also known as an application container or a server application container. ( <a href="#">NIST SP 800-190</a> )
<b>Cryptographic Application Programming Interface</b>	An application programming interface (API) included with Microsoft Windows operating systems that provides services to enable developers to secure Windows-based applications using cryptography. While providing a consistent API for applications, the Cryptographic Application Programming Interface (CAPI) allows for specialized cryptographic modules (cryptographic service providers) to be provided by third parties, such as Hardware Security Module (HSM) manufacturers. This enables applications to leverage the additional security of HSMs while using the same APIs they use to access built-in Windows cryptographic service providers. (Also known variously as CryptoAPI, Microsoft Cryptography API, MS-CAPI or simply CAPI)
<b>Cryptography API: Next Generation</b>	The long-term replacement for the CAPI.
<b>Demilitarized Zone</b>	A perimeter network or screened subnet separating a more-trusted internal network from a less-trusted external network.
<b>Development Operations (DevOps)</b>	A set of practices for automating the processes between software development and IT operations teams, so they can build, test, and release software faster and more reliably. The goal is to shorten the systems development life cycle and improve reliability while delivering features, fixes, and updates frequently in close alignment with business objectives.
<b>Digital Certificate</b>	Certificate (as defined above).
<b>Digital Signature</b>	The result of a cryptographic transformation of data that, when properly implemented, provides origin authentication, assurance of data integrity and signatory non-repudiation. ( <a href="#">NIST SP 800-133</a> )
<b>Digital Signature Algorithm</b>	A Federal Information Processing Standard for digital signatures, based on the mathematical concept of modular exponentiations and the discrete logarithm problem. (FIPS 186-4)
<b>Directory Service</b>	A distributed database service capable of storing information, such as certificates and CRLs, in various nodes or servers distributed across a network. ( <a href="#">NIST SP 800-15</a> ) (In the context of this practice

guide, a directory services stores identity information and enables the authentication and identification of people and machines.)

<b>Distinguished Name</b>	An identifier that uniquely represents an object in the X.500 directory information tree. ( <a href="#">RFC 4949 Ver 2</a> )
<b>Domain</b>	A distinct group of computers under a central administration or authority.
<b>Domain Name</b>	A label that identifies a network domain using the Domain Naming System.
<b>Domain Name System</b>	The system by which Internet domain names and addresses are tracked and regulated as defined by <a href="#">IETF RFC 1034</a> and other related RFCs.
<b>Extended Validation (EV) Certificate</b>	A certificate used for https websites and software that includes identity information, subjected to an identity verification process standardized by the CA Browser Forum in its <a href="#">Baseline Requirements</a> , which verifies the identified owner of the website for which the certificate has been issued has exclusive rights to use the domain; exists legally, operationally, and physically; and has authorized the issuance of the certificate.
<b>Federal Information Processing Standards (FIPS)</b>	A standard for adoption and used by federal departments and agencies that has been developed within the Information Technology Laboratory (ITL) and published by the National Institute of Standards and Technology, a part of the U.S. Department of Commerce. A FIPS covers some topic in IT to achieve a common level of quality or some level of interoperability. ( <a href="#">NIST SP 800-161</a> )
<b>Hardware Security Module (HSM)</b>	A physical computing device that provides tamper-evident and intrusion-resistant safeguarding and management of digital keys and other secrets, as well as crypto-processing. <a href="#">FIPS 140-2</a> specifies requirements for HSMs.
<b>Host Name</b>	Host names are most commonly defined and used in the context of DNS. The host name of a system typically refers to the fully qualified DNS domain name of that system.
<b>Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP)</b>	A standard method for communication between clients and Web servers. (NISTIR 7387)

<b>Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)</b>	The internet standards organization made up of network designers, operators, vendors, and researchers that defines protocol standards (e.g., IP, TCP, DNS) through process of collaboration and consensus.
<b>Internet Message Access Protocol</b>	A method of communication used to read electronic mail stored in a remote server. (NISTIR 7387)
<b>Internet Protocol (IP)</b>	The IP, as defined in <a href="#">IETF RFC 6864</a> , is the principal communications protocol in the IETF Internet protocol suite for specifying system address information when relaying datagrams across network boundaries.
<b>Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP)</b>	The LDAP is a directory access protocol. In this document, LDAP refers to the protocol defined by RFC 1777, which is also known as LDAP V2. LDAP V2 describes unauthenticated retrieval mechanisms. ( <a href="#">NIST SP 800-15</a> )
<b>Microservice</b>	A set of containers that work together to compose an application. ( <a href="#">NIST SP 800-190</a> )
<b>Organization</b>	An entity of any size, complexity, or positioning within an organizational structure (e.g., a federal agency or, as appropriate, any of its operational elements). ( <a href="#">NIST SP 800-39</a> ) This publication is intended to provide recommendations for organizations that manage their own networks (e.g., that have a chief information officer).
<b>Outage</b>	A period when a service or an application is not available or when equipment is not operational.
<b>Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard</b>	An information security standard administered by the Payment Card Industry Security Standards Council that is for organizations that handle branded credit cards from the major card schemes.
<b>PIN Entry Device</b>	An electronic device used in a debit, credit or smart card-based transaction to accept and encrypt the cardholder's personal identification number.
<b>Post Office Protocol</b>	A mailbox access protocol defined by IETF RFC 1939. POP is one of the most commonly used mailbox access protocols. ( <a href="#">NIST SP 800-45 Version 2</a> )

<b>Private Key</b>	The secret part of an asymmetric key pair that is used to digitally sign or decrypt data. ( <a href="#">NIST SP 800-63-3</a> )
<b>Public CA</b>	A trusted third party that issues certificates as defined in IETF RFC 5280. A CA is considered public if its root certificate is included in browsers and other applications by the developers of those browsers and applications. The CA/Browser Forum defines the requirements public CAs must follow in their operations.
<b>Public Key</b>	The public part of an asymmetric key pair that is used to verify signatures or encrypt data. ( <a href="#">NIST SP 800-63-3</a> )
<b>Public Key Cryptography</b>	Cryptography that uses separate keys for encryption and decryption; also known as asymmetric cryptography. ( <a href="#">NIST SP 800-77</a> )
<b>Public Key Infrastructure (PKI)</b>	The framework and services that provide for the generation, production, distribution, control, accounting, and destruction of public key certificates. Components include the personnel, policies, processes, server platforms, software, and workstations used for the purpose of administering certificates and public-private key pairs, including the ability to issue, maintain, recover, and revoke public key certificates. ( <a href="#">NIST SP 800-53 Rev. 4</a> )
<b>Registration Authority</b>	An entity authorized by the certification authority system (CAS) to collect, verify, and submit information provided by potential Subscribers which is to be entered into public key certificates. The term RA refers to hardware, software, and individuals that collectively perform this function. ( <a href="#">CNSSI 4009-2015</a> )
<b>Representational State Transfer (REST)</b>	A software architectural style that defines a common method for defining APIs for web services.
<b>Risk Management Framework</b>	The Risk Management Framework (RMF), presented in <a href="#">NIST SP 800-37</a> , provides a disciplined and structured process that integrates information security and risk management activities into the system development life cycle.
<b>Rivest, Shamir, &amp; Adleman (RSA)</b>	An algorithm approved in [FIPS 186] for digital signatures and in [SP 800-56B] for key establishment. ( <a href="#">NIST SP 800-57 Part 1 Rev. 4</a> )
<b>Root certificate</b>	A self-signed certificate, as defined by <a href="#">IETF RFC 5280</a> , issued by a root certificate authority. A root certificate is typically securely

installed on systems, so they can verify end-entity certificates they receive.

**Root certificate authority**

In a hierarchical public key infrastructure (PKI), the CA whose public key serves as the most trusted datum (i.e., the beginning of trust paths) for a security domain. ([NIST SP 800-32](#))

**Subject Alternative Name**

A field in an X.509 certificate that identifies one or more fully qualified domain names, IP addresses, email addresses, URIs, or UPNs to be associated with the public key contained in a certificate.

**Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP)**

A protocol defined in an IETF [internet](#) draft specification that is used by numerous manufacturers of network equipment and software who are developing simplified means of handling certificates for large-scale implementation to everyday users, as well as referenced in other industry standards.

**Secure Hash Algorithm 256**

A hash algorithm that can be used to generate digests of messages. The digests are used to detect whether messages have been changed since the digests were generated. ([FIPS 180-4 \[March 2012\]](#))

**Secure Transport**

Transfer of information using a transport layer protocol that provides security between applications communicating over an IP network.

**Server**

A computer or device on a network that manages network resources. Examples include file servers (to store files), print servers (to manage one or more printers), network servers (to manage network traffic), and database servers (to process database queries). ([NIST SP 800-47](#))

**Service Provider**

A provider of basic services or value-added services for operation of a network; generally refers to public carriers and other commercial enterprises. ([NISTIR 4734](#))

**Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP)**

The primary protocol used to transfer electronic mail messages on the internet. (NISTIR 7387)

**Special Publication**

A type of publication issued by NIST. Specifically, the Special Publication 800-series reports on the ITL's research, guidelines, and outreach efforts in computer security, and its collaborative activities

with industry, government, and academic organizations. The 1800 series reports the results of NCCoE demonstration projects.

**System Administrator**

Individual responsible for the installation and maintenance of an information system, providing effective information system utilization, adequate security parameters, and sound implementation of established Information Assurance policy and procedures. ([CNSSI 4009-2015](#))

**Team**

A number of persons associated together in work or activity. (Merriam Webster) As used in this publication, a team is a group of individuals assigned by an organization's management the responsibility to carry out a defined function or set of defined functions. Designations for teams as used in this publication are simply descriptive. Different organizations may have different designations for teams that carry out the functions described herein.

**Transport Layer Security (TLS)**

An authentication and security protocol widely implemented in browsers and web servers. TLS is defined by [RFC 5246](#) and [RFC 8446](#).

**Trust Protection Platform (TPP)**

The Venafi Machine Identity Protection platform used in the example implementation described in this practice guide.

**User Principal Name**

In Windows Active Directory, this is the name of a system user in email address format, i.e., a concatenation of username, the "@" symbol, and domain name.

**Validation**

The process of determining that an object or process is acceptable according to a pre-defined set of tests and the results of those tests. ([NIST SP 800-152](#))

**Web Browser**

A software program that allows a user to locate, access, and display web pages.

## 4294 **Appendix F** **References**

- 4295 U.S. Department of Commerce, *Security Requirements for Cryptographic Modules*, Federal Information  
4296 Processing Standards (FIPS) Publication 140-2, (including change notices as of 12-03-2002)
- 4297 Joint Task Force Transformation Initiative, *Risk Management Framework for Information Systems and*  
4298 *Organizations: A System Life Cycle Approach for Security and Privacy*, NIST SP 800-37 Revision 2, December  
4299 2018. <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/SpecialPublications/NIST.SP.800-37r2.pdf>
- 4300 NIST Computer Security Resource Center Risk Management Framework guidance [Website],  
4301 <https://csrc.nist.gov/projects/risk-management/risk-management-framework-quick-start-guides>
- 4302 Joint Task Force Transformation Initiative, *Security and Privacy Controls for Information Systems and*  
4303 *Organizations*, Draft NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-53 Revision 5, August 2017.  
4304 <https://csrc.nist.gov/CSRC/media//Publications/sp/800-53/rev-5/draft/documents/sp800-53r5-draft.pdf>
- 4305 E. Barker, *Recommendation for Key Management: Part 1: General*, NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-57  
4306 Part 1, Revision 4, January 2016. <http://doi.org/10.6028/NIST.SP.800-57pt1r4>.
- 4307 P. Grassi, M. Garcia, J Fenton; *Digital Identity Guidelines*, NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-63-3, June  
4308 2017. <https://csrc.nist.gov/publications/detail/sp/800-63/3/final>
- 4309 S. Frankel et al., *Guide to IPsec VPNs*, NIST Special Publication (SP) 800-77, Dec. 2005.  
4310 <http://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/Legacy/SP/nistspecialpublication800-77.pdf>
- 4311 *Framework for Improving Critical Infrastructure Cybersecurity*, Version 1.1, National Institute of Standards  
4312 and Technology, April 16, 2018. See <https://nvlpubs.nist.gov/nistpubs/CSWP/NIST.CSWP.04162018.pdf>
- 4313 T. Dierks, E. Rescorla, *The Transport Layer Security (TLS) Protocol Version 1.2*, RFC 5246, Internet  
4314 Engineering Task Force, August 2008. <https://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc5246.txt>
- 4315 E. Rescorla, *The Transport Layer Security (TLS) Protocol Version 1.3*, draft-ietf-tls-tls13-21, Internet  
4316 Engineering Task Force, April 2006. <https://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc4346.txt>

## 4317 **Appendix G Supplemental Architecture Configurations**

### 4318 **G.1 Mail Server Configuration Files**

4319 The Postfix mail server and Dovecot mail client were both used to create an alert and administrative  
4320 email server for all alerts received from the various TLS security components used in the TLS lab. The  
4321 main.cf is the primary configuration file for Postfix and the dovecot.conf is used to configure the  
4322 Dovecot mail user agent. Links to both files used in the TLS lab are provided below as a quick start to  
4323 setting up the same mail server and client used in the TLS lab. The main.cf and dovecot.conf files are  
4324 stored in the same repository as this Volume D document on the NCCoE web page.

4325       ▪ <https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/sites/default/files/library/supplemental-files/sp1800-16/main.cf>

4326

4327       ▪ [https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/sites/default/files/library/supplemental-files/sp1800-](https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/sites/default/files/library/supplemental-files/sp1800-16/dovecote.conf)

4328       [16/dovecote.conf](https://www.nccoe.nist.gov/sites/default/files/library/supplemental-files/sp1800-16/dovecote.conf)